MEDIEVAL LATIN SERIES · VOLUME 45

Gildas, Nennius, and Asser

Gildas · Nennius · Asser

De Excidio et Conquestu Britanniae
Historia Brittonum
De Rebus Gestis Ælfredi

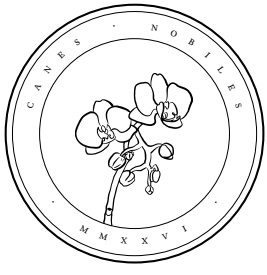
Gildas, Nennius, and Asser

The Ruin of Britain, the History of the Britons,
and the Life of King Alfred

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

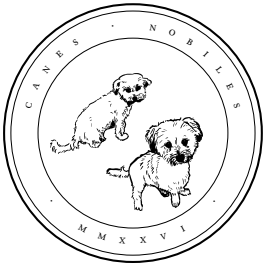


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 45 of the Canes Nobiles Medieval Latin interlinear texts

The Medieval Latin text follows Theodor Mommsen's edition of Gildas and the Historia Brittonum (Berlin, 1898) and W. H. Stevenson's of Asser (Oxford, 1904)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

GILDAS

1–2 · Why Gildas Writes 11
3–4 · The Island and Its Ingratitude 20
5–7 · Rome Subdues Britain 24
8–12 · Christ Comes to Britain; the Martyrs 27
13–18 · Maximus and the Two Walls 32
19–21 · The Picts and Scots Return 38
22–26 · The Saxons Invited 44
27–32 · The Five Tyrants 53
33–36 · Maglocunus 62
37–38 · The Prophets Against the Kings 71
39–43 · Kings Punished in Scripture 75
44–49 · Isaiah and Jeremiah 84
50–56 · The Minor Prophets 95
57–62 · Zechariah to Solomon 103

GILDAS

(continued)

63–65 · The Turn to the Clergy 113
66–69 · Britain's Bad Priests 117
70–73 · The Old Testament Saints 126
74–76 · Ignatius, Polycarp, Basil 134
77–80 · The Prophets Against the Priests 140
81–85 · Jeremiah, Joel, Hosea, Amos 147
86–92 · Micah, Zephaniah, Zechariah, Malachi, Ezekiel 153
93–97 · The Gospel Against the Priests 167
98–102 · Paul to the Romans and Corinthians 175
103–106 · The Readings of Ordination 180
107–110 · The Ordination Charge 187

NENNIUS

1–6 · The Six Ages of the World 199
7–10 · Britain and Brutus 200
11–18 · The Peoples Arrive 204
19–30 · The Roman Emperors in Britain 212
31–35 · Vortigern and Germanus 221
36–39 · Hengist's Daughter 226
40–49 · The Dragons and Vortigern's End 231
50–55 · The Life of Patrick 243
56 · Arthur's Twelve Battles 248

NENNIUS

(continued)

57–66 · The Kings and the Reckonings 250
66a · The Cities of Britain 259
67–73 · The Wonders of Britain 260
74–76 · The Wonders of Wales and Ireland 267

ASSER

1–12 · Alfred's Birth and Lineage 273
13–20 · Queen Eadburh and Æthelwulf's Will 283
21–29 · Alfred's Youth 292
30–37 · Nottingham and Reading 299
38–45 · Ashdown and Alfred's Accession 304
46–53 · Repton to Athelney 311
54–63 · Edington and Guthrum's Baptism 316
64–72 · Wars at Sea and in Francia 322
73–76 · Alfred's Illness and Children 327
77–80 · Alfred's Scholars and Asser 337
81–87 · Asser at Court 344
88–90 · The King's Handbook 350
91–98 · The King's Burdens and Monasteries 355
99–102 · The Division of the Revenues 366
103–106 · The Candles and the Judges 371

GILDAS

De Excidio et Conquestu Britanniae

The Ruin of Britain

§§ 1–2

1–2 · WHY GILDAS WRITES

Gildas explains that he writes in grief, not scorn, after ten years of silence. Scripture's examples of God's punishment of Israel and of its priests and kings, and Christ's warnings, drove him at last to speak, as Balaam's ass spoke. He lists what he will treat: Britain's situation, its rebellion and servitude, its faith and persecution, heresies, tyrants, two ravaging nations, the plague, and the final victory.

In hac epistola quicquid deflendo potius quam declamando,
in this letter whatever by-lamenting rather than by-declaiming
vili licet stilo, tamen benigno, fuero prosecutus,
in-a-poor though style yet kindly I-shall-have pursued
ne quis me, affectu cunctos spernentis omnibusve
lest anyone me with-the-feeling all of-one-despising or-than-all
melioris, quippe qui commune bonorum dispendium
better as-one who the-common of-the-good loss
malorumque cumulum lacrimosis querelis defleam, sed
and-of-the-evil heap with-tearful complaints should-lament but
condolentis patriae incommoditatibus miseriisque eius
of-one-grieving-with of-the-fatherland with-the-misfortunes and-miseries its
ac remediis condelectantis edicturum putet, quia non
and in-the-remedies rejoicing-with about-to-declare should-think because not
tam fortissimorum militum enuntiare trucis belli pericula
so-much of-the-bravest of-soldiers to-tell of-savage war the-dangers
mihi statutum est quam desidiosorum. silui, fateor, cum
for-me decided it-is as of-the-slothful I-kept-silent I-confess with
inmenso cordis dolore, ut mihi renum scrutator testis
immense of-heart grief as to-me of-the-reins the-searcher witness
est dominus, spatio bilustri temporis vel eo amplius
is the-Lord for-a-space of-ten-years of-time or by-that more

praetereuntis imperitia sic ut et nunc, una cum vilibus
passing through-inexperience so as also now together with poor
me meritis inhibentibus, ne qualemcumque admonitiunculam
me merits restraining lest any-kind-of little-admonition
scriberem. legebam nihilominus admirandum legislatorem ob
I-should-write I-read nonetheless the-admirable lawgiver for
unius verbi dubitationem terram desiderabilem non introiisse:
of-one word doubt the-land desirable not to-have-entered
filios sacerdotis alienum admovendo altari ignem cito
the-sons of-the-priest strange by-bringing to-the-altar fire quickly
exitu periisse: populum verborum dei praevaricatorem
by-death to-have-perished the-people of-the-words of-God transgressor
sexcentorum milium duobus exceptis veracibus et quidem
of-six-hundred thousands two excepted truthful and indeed
deo carissimum, quippe cui iter levissime stratum
to-God most-dear as-one to-whom the-way most-smoothly laid
profundi glarea maris rubri, cibus caelestis panis, potus
of-the-deep with-the-gravel of-the-sea Red food heavenly bread drink
novus ex rupe viator, acies invicta manuum sola intensa
new from the-rock traveler battle-line unconquered of-hands only stretched
erectio fuerit, bestiis ferro igni per Arabiae deserta sparsim
raising had-been by-beasts by-sword by-fire through of-Arabia the-deserts scattered
cecidisse: post ingressum ignotae ac si Iordanis portae
to-have-fallen after the-entry unknown as if of-Jordan of-a-gate
urbisque adversa moenia solis tubarum clangoribus iussu
and-of-the-city opposing walls by-the-mere of-trumpets blasts by-order
dei subruta: palliolum aurique parum de anathemate
of-God overthrown a-little-cloak and-of-gold a-little from the-accursed-thing
praesumptum multos stravisse: Gabaonitarum irritum foedus,
presumed many to-have-laid-low of-the-Gibeonites void the-treaty
calliditate licet extortum, nonnullis intulisse exitium, ob
by-cunning though extorted on-some to-have-brought destruction for

peccata hominum querulas sanctorum prophetarum voces
the-sins of-men complaining of-the-holy prophets the-voices
et maxime Hieremiae ruinam civitatis suae quadruplici
and most-of-all of-Jeremiah the-ruin of-city his in-a-fourfold
plangentis alphabeto. videbamque etiam nostro tempore, ut
lamenting alphabet and-I-saw also in-our time as
ille defleverat: 'solam sedisse urbem viduam, antea populis
he had-lamented alone to-have-sat the-city widowed before with-peoples
plenam, gentium dominam, principem provinciarum, sub
full of-nations mistress princess of-provinces under
tributo fuisse factam', id est ecclesiam, 'obscuratum aurum
tribute to-have-been made that is the-church darkened the-gold
coloremque optimum mutatum', quod est verbi dei
and-the-color best changed which is of-the-word of-God
splendorem. 'filios Sion', id est sanctae matris ecclesiae,
the-splendor the-sons of-Zion that is of-holy mother church
'inclitos et amictos auro primo, amplexatos fuisse stercora.'
renowned and clothed in-gold first embraced to-have dung
et quod illi intolerabiliter utpote praecipuo mihi quoque
and what to-him unbearably as to-one-eminent to-me also
licet abiecto, utcumque ad cumulum doloris crescebat, dum
though cast-down somehow to the-heap of-grief grew while
ita eosdem statu prospero viventes egregios luxerat, ut
so the-same in-state prosperous living outstanding he-had-mourned as
diceret: 'candidiores Nazaraei eius nive, rubicundiores ebore
to-say whiter the-Nazirites her than-snow ruddier than-ivory
antiquo, sapphiro pulchriores'. ista ego et multa alia
old than-sapphire more-beautiful these I and many other-things
veluti speculum quoddam vitae nostrae in scripturis veteribus
as-it-were a-mirror certain of-life our in the-scriptures old
intuens convertebar etiam ad novas et ibi legebam clarius,
beholding I-turned also to the-new and there I-read more-clearly

quae mihi forsitan antea obscura fuerant, cessante umbra
what to-me perhaps before obscure had-been ceasing the-shadow
ac veritate firmius inlucescente. legebam, inquam, dominum
and the-truth more-firmly dawning I-read I-say the-Lord
dixisse: 'non veni nisi ad oves perditas domus Israel'.
to-have-said not I-came except to the-sheep lost of-the-house of-Israel
et e contrario: 'filii autem regni huius eicientur
and on the-contrary the-sons but of-the-kingdom this shall-be-cast-out
in tenebras exteriores, ibi erit fletus et stridor dentium'.
into darkness outer there shall-be weeping and gnashing of-teeth
et iterum: 'non est bonum tollere panem filiorum et
and again not is good to-take the-bread of-the-children and
mittere canibus'. itemque: 'vae vobis, scribae et Pharisaei
to-throw to-the-dogs and-likewise woe to-you O-scribes and Pharisees
hypocritae'. audiebam: 'multi ab oriente et occidente venient
hypocrites I-heard many from the-east and the-west shall-come
et recumbent cum Abraham, Isaac et Iacob in regno
and shall-recline with Abraham Isaac and Jacob in the-kingdom
caelorum'; et e diverso: 'et tunc dicam eis: discedite
of-the-heavens and on the-other-side and then I-shall-say to-them depart
a me, operarii iniquitatis'. legebam: 'beatae steriles et
from me O-workers of-iniquity I-read blessed the-barren and
ubera quae non lactaverunt'; et e contrario: 'quae paratae
the-breasts which not have-given-suck and on the-contrary who ready
erant, intraverunt cum eo ad nuptias, postea venerunt et
were entered with him to the-wedding afterward came also
reliquae virgines dicentes: domine, domine, aperi nobis;
the-remaining virgins saying O-Lord Lord open to-us
quibus responsum fuerat: non novi vos'. audiebam sane: 'qui
to-whom answered it-had-been not I-know you I-heard truly who
crediderit et baptizatus fuerit, salvus erit, qui autem
shall-have-believed and baptized shall-have-been saved shall-be who but

non crediderit, condemnabitur'. legebam apostoli voce
not shall-have-believed shall-be-condemned I-read of-the-apostle by-the-voice
oleastri ramum bonae olivae insertum fuisse, sed a
of-the-wild-olive the-branch of-the-good olive grafted to-have-been but from
societate radicis pinguedinis eiusdem, si non timuisset, sed
the-fellowship of-the-root of-the-fatness of-the-same if not it-had-feared but
alta saperet, excidendum. sciebam misericordiam domini,
high-things savored to-be-cut-off I-knew the-mercy of-the-Lord
sed et iudicium timebam; laudabam gratiam, sed redditionem
but also the-judgment I-feared I-praised grace but the-repayment
unicuique secundum opera sua verebar; oves unius ovilis
to-each-one according-to works his I-dreaded the-sheep of-one fold
dissimiles cernens merito beatissimum dicebam Petrum ob
unlike seeing deservedly most-blessed I-called Peter for
Christi integram confessionem, at Iudam infelicissimum
of-Christ whole confession but Judas most-unhappy
propter cupiditatis amorem, Stephanum gloriosum ob martyrii
because-of of-greed the-love Stephen glorious for of-martyrdom
palmam, sed Nicolaum miserum propter immundae haereseos
the-palm but Nicolas wretched because-of of-unclean heresy
notam. legebam certe: 'erant illis omnia communia'; sed et
the-brand I-read surely were to-them all-things common but also
quod dictum est: 'quare convenit vobis temptare spiritum
what said was why has-it-been-agreed by-you to-tempt the-spirit
dei?' videbam e regione, quantum securitatis hominibus
of-God I-saw on the-other-side how-much of-security to-men
nostri temporis, ac si non esset quod timeretur, increverat.
of-our time as if not there-were what should-be-feared had-grown
haec igitur et multo plura, quae brevitatis causa
these-things therefore and much more which of-brevity for-the-sake
omittenda decrevimus, cum qualicumque cordis compunctione
to-be-omitted we-have-decided with whatever of-heart compunction

attonita mente saepius volvens, si, inquam, peculiari
with-astonished mind often turning-over if I-say to-the-peculiar
ex omnibus nationibus populo, semini regali gentique
out-of all nations people to-the-seed royal and-to-the-nation
sanctae, ad quam dixerat: 'primogenitus meus Israel', eiusque
holy to which he-had-said firstborn my Israel and-its
sacerdotibus, prophetis, regibus, per tot saecula apostolo
to-priests to-prophets to-kings through so-many ages to-the-apostle
ministro membrisque illius primitivae ecclesiae dominus non
(his)-minister and-to-the-members of-that primitive church the-Lord not
pepercit, cum a recto tramite deviarint, quid tali huius
spared when from the-right path they-strayed what to-such of-this
atramento aetatis facturus est? cui praeter illa nefanda
blackness of-age about-to-do is to-which besides those unspeakable
immaniaque peccata, quae communiter cum omnibus mundi
and-monstrous sins which in-common with all of-the-world
sceleratis agit, accedit etiam illud veluti ingenitum quid
wicked it-does is-added also that as-it-were inborn something
et indelebile insipientiae pondus et levitatis ineluctabile.
and indelible of-folly weight and of-fickleness inescapable
quid? mihimet aio tibine, miser, veluti conspicuo ac summo
what to-myself I-say to-you O-wretch as-if to-a-conspicuous and highest
doctori talis cura committitur, ut obstes ictibus tam
teacher such care is-entrusted that you-should-withstand the-blows of-so
violenti torrentis, et contra hunc inolitorum scelerum funem
violent torrent and against this of-ingrown crimes rope
per tot annorum spatia interrupte lateque protractum
through so-many of-years spaces without-break and-widely drawn-out
serves depositum tibi creditum et taceas? alioquin
you-should-keep the-deposit to-you entrusted and be-silent otherwise
hoc est dixisse pedi: speculare et manui: fare. habet
this is to-have-said to-the-foot watch and to-the-hand speak has

Britannia rectores, habet speculatores. quid tu nugando
Britain rulers it-has watchmen why you by-trifling
mutire disponis? habet, inquam, habet, si non ultra, non
to-mutter arrange it-has I-say it-has if not beyond not
citra numerum. sed quia inclinati tanto pondere sunt
short-of the-number but because bent by-so-great weight they-are
pressi, idcirco spatium respirandi non habent. praeoccupabant
pressed therefore space of-breathing not they-have they-forestalled
igitur se mutuo talibus obiectionibus vel multo his
therefore themselves mutually with-such objections or much than-these
mordacioribus, veluti condebitores sensus mei. hi non parvo,
more-biting as-if co-debtors senses my these not small
ut dixi, tempore, cum legerim 'tempus esse loquendi
as I-have-said for-a-time though I-have-read a-time to-be of-speaking
et tacendi', et in quadam ac si angusta timoris porticu
and of-being-silent and in a-certain as if narrow of-fear portico
luctabantur. obtinuit vicitque tandem aliquando creditor,
they-wrestled prevailed and-conquered at-last at-length the-creditor
si non es, inquiens, talis audaciae, ut inter veridicas
if not you-are saying of-such boldness that among truth-telling
rationalis secundae a nuntiis derivationis creaturas
rational second from the-messengers of-derivation creatures
non pertimescas libertatis aureae decenti nota inuri,
not you-should-fear of-freedom golden with-the-fitting mark to-be-branded
affectum saltem intellegibilis asinae eatenus elinguis non
the-disposition at-least of-the-understanding she-ass until-then tongueless not
refugito spiritu dei afflatae, nolentis se vehiculum fore
flee by-the-spirit of-God breathed-upon unwilling herself the-vehicle to-be
tiarati magi devoturi populum dei, quae in angusto
of-the-tiaraed magus about-to-curse the-people of-God who in the-narrow
maceriae vinearum resolutum eius attrivit pedem, ob id
of-the-wall of-the-vineyards loosened his crushed the-foot for that

licet verbera hostiliter senserit, cuique angelum caelestem
although blows hostilely she-felt and-to-whom the-angel heavenly
ensem vacuum vagina habentem atque contrarium, quem ille
a-sword empty of-sheath having and opposed whom he
cruda stoliditate caecatus non viderat, digito quodammodo,
by-raw stupidity blinded not had-seen with-a-finger in-a-way
quamquam ingrato ac furibundo, et innoxia eius latera
although to-the-ungrateful and raging and harmless her flanks
contra ius fasque caedenti demonstravit. in zelo igitur
against right and-law beating pointed-out in the-zeal therefore
domus domini sacrae legis seu cogitatuum rationibus vel
of-the-house of-the-Lord of-the-sacred law or of-thoughts by-the-reasons or
fratrum religiosis precibus coactus nunc persolvo debitum
of-brothers by-the-pious prayers compelled now I-pay-off the-debt
multo tempore antea exactum, vile quidem, sed fidele,
by-much time before exacted poor indeed but faithful
ut puto, et amicale quibusque egregiis Christi tironibus,
as I-think and friendly to-all excellent of-Christ recruits
grave vero et importabile apostatis insipientibus. quorum
heavy but and unbearable to-the-apostates foolish of-whom
priores, ni fallor, cum lacrimis forte, quae ex dei
the-former unless I-am-deceived with tears perhaps which from of-God
caritate profluunt, alii enim atque cum tristitia, sed quae
love flow-forth the-others for and with sadness but which
de indignatione et pusillanimitate deprehensae conscientiae
from indignation and faintheartedness of-a-detected conscience
extorquetur, illud excipient.
is-wrung-out that shall-receive
Sed ante promissum deo volente pauca de situ,
but before the-promise God willing a-few-things about the-situation
de contumacia, de subiectione, de rebellione, item de
about obstinacy about subjection about rebellion likewise about

subiectione ac diro famulatu, de religione, de persecutione,
subjection and dire servitude about religion about persecution
de sanctis martyribus, de diversis haeresibus, de tyrannis,
about the-holy martyrs about various heresies about the-tyrants
de duabus gentibus vastatricibus, de defensione itemque
about two nations ravaging about the-defense and-likewise
vastatione, de secunda ultione tertiaque vastatione, de
devastation about the-second vengeance and-the-third devastation about
fame, de epistolis ad Agitium, de victoria, de sceleribus,
the-famine about the-letters to Agitius about the-victory about the-crimes
de nuntiatis subito hostibus, de famosa peste, de consilio,
about announced suddenly enemies about the-famous plague about the-council
de saeviore multo primis hoste, de urbium subversione,
about the-fiercer much than-the-first enemy about of-cities overthrow
de reliquis, de postrema patriae victoria, quae
about the-remnants about the-last of-the-fatherland victory which
temporibus nostris dei nutu donata est, dicere conamur.
in-times our of-God by-the-nod granted was to-say we-try

§§ 3–4

3–4 · THE ISLAND AND ITS INGRATITUDE

Gildas describes Britain: its size, its two great rivers, its twenty-eight cities, its plains, hills, springs, and lakes. Since it was first inhabited the island has risen up ungrateful to God, to its own citizens, and to kings and subjects from overseas. Passing over its pagan idols, he will tell its history from foreign accounts, since its own records were burned or carried into exile.

Brittannia insula in extremo ferme orbis limite circium
Britain the-island in the-farthest almost of-the-world boundary north-west
occidentemque versus divina, ut dicitur, statera terrae totius
and-west towards by-the-divine as is-said balance of-the-earth whole
ponderatrice librata ab Africo boriali propensius tensa
weigher poised from the-southwest to-the-north more-slopingly stretched
axi, octingentorum in longo milium, ducentorum in lato
to-the-axis of-eight-hundred in length thousands of-two-hundred in breadth
spatium, exceptis diversorum prolixioribus promontoriorum
a-space excepted of-the-various longer of-the-promontories
tractibus, quae arcuatis oceani sinibus ambiuntur, tenens,
tracts which by-the-curved of-ocean bays are-encircled holding
cuius diffusiore et, ut ita dicam, intransmeabili undique
of-which by-the-wider and as so I-may-say impassable on-all-sides
circulo absque meridianae freto plagae, quo ad Galliam
circle except of-the-southern by-the-strait region by-which to Gaul
Belgicam navigatur, vallata duorum ostiis nobilium
Belgic one-sails walled of-two by-the-mouths of-noble
fluminum Tamesis ac Sabrinae veluti brachiis, per
rivers of-the-Thames and of-the-Severn as-if by-arms through
quae eidem olim transmarinae deliciae ratibus vehebantur,
which to-it once from-overseas delights in-boats were-carried

aliorumque minorum meliorata, bis denis bisque quaternis
and-of-others lesser enhanced by-twice ten and-twice four
civitatibus ac nonnullis castellis, murorum turrium serratarum
cities and some forts of-walls of-towers toothed
portarum domorum, quarum culmina minaci proceritate
of-gates of-houses of-which the-roofs in-menacing height
porrecta in edito forti compage pangebantur, molitionibus
stretched-out on high in-strong joining were-fixed with-works
non improbabiliter instructis decorata; campis late pansis
not unacceptably constructed adorned with-plains widely spread
collibusque amoeno situ locatis, praepollenti culturae
and-with-hills in-pleasant situation placed for-surpassing cultivation
aptis, montibus alternandis animalium pastibus maxime
fit with-mountains for-alternating of-animals for-pastures most-of-all
convenientibus, quorum diversorum colorum flores humanis
suited of-which of-various colors the-flowers by-human
gressibus pulsati non indecentem ceu picturam eisdem
steps struck not unbecoming as-it-were a-picture on-them
imprimebant, electa veluti sponsa monilibus diversis ornata,
impressed chosen as-if a-bride with-necklaces various adorned
fontibus lucidis crebris undis niveas veluti glareas pellentibus
with-springs clear with-frequent waves snowy as-it-were pebbles driving
pernitidisque rivis leni murmure serpentibus ipsorumque
and-with-very-bright streams with-gentle murmur gliding and-of-them
in ripis accubantibus suavis soporis pignus praetendentibus, et
on banks for-those-reclining of-sweet sleep a-pledge holding-out and
lacubus frigidum aquae torrentem vivae exundantibus irrigua.
with-lakes cold of-water a-torrent living overflowing watered
Haec erecta cervice et mente, ex quo inhabitata est,
this with-raised neck and mind from when inhabited it-was
nunc deo, interdum civibus, nonnumquam etiam transmarinis
now to-God sometimes to-citizens sometimes even from-overseas

regibus et subiectis ingrata consurgit. quid enim deformius
to-kings and subjects ungrateful rises-up what for more-misshapen
quidque iniquius potest humanis ausibus vel esse vel intromitti
and-what more-unjust can by-human daring either be or be-brought-in
negotium, quam deo timorem, bonis civibus caritatem,
a-business than to-God fear to-good citizens love
in altiore dignitate positis absque fidei detrimento
in higher dignity to-those-placed without of-faith loss
debitum denegare honorem et frangere divino sensui
due to-deny honor and to-break with-divine sense
humanoque fidem, et abiecto caeli terraeque metu propriis
and-human faith and cast-off of-heaven and-of-earth fear by-their-own
adinventionibus aliquem et libidinibus regi? igitur omittens
inventions anyone and lusts to-be-ruled therefore omitting
priscos illos communesque cum omnibus gentibus errores,
ancient those and-common with all nations errors
quibus ante adventum Christi in carne omne humanum genus
by-which before the-coming of-Christ in the-flesh all human race
obligabatur astrictum, nec enumerans patriae portenta
was-bound fast nor enumerating of-the-fatherland the-portents
ipsa diabolica paene numero Aegyptiaca vincentia, quorum
themselves devilish almost in-number the-Egyptian surpassing of-which
nonnulla liniamentis adhuc deformibus intra vel extra deserta
some with-features still misshapen within or without the-deserted
moenia solito more rigentia torvis vultibus intuemur,
walls in-the-usual manner stiff with-grim faces we-behold
neque nominatim inclamitans montes ipsos aut colles
nor by-name calling-out the-mountains themselves or the-hills
vel fluvios olim exitiabiles, nunc vero humanis usibus utiles,
or the-rivers once destructive now but for-human uses useful
quibus divinus honor a caeco tunc populo cumulabatur, et
to-which divine honor by the-blind then people was-heaped and

tacens vetustos immanium tyrannorum annos, qui in aliis
keeping-silent the-old of-monstrous tyrants years who in other
longe positis regionibus vulgati sunt, ita ut Porphyrius
far placed regions made-known have-been so that Porphyry
rabidus orientalis adversus ecclesiam canis dementiae suae ac
the-rabid eastern against the-church dog of-madness his and
vanitatis stilo hoc etiam adnecteret: 'Britannia', inquiens,
of-vanity with-the-pen this also added Britain saying
'fertilis provincia tyrannorum', illa tantum proferre conabor
a-fertile province of-tyrants those only to-bring-forth I-shall-try
in medium, quae temporibus imperatorum Romanorum et
into the-open which in-the-times of-the-emperors Roman both
passa est et aliis intulit civibus et longe positis mala;
suffered it-has and on-others inflicted citizens and far placed evils
quantum tamen potuero, non tam ex scriptis patriae
as-far-as yet I-shall-be-able not so-much from the-writings of-the-fatherland
scriptorumve monimentis, quippe quae, vel si qua fuerint,
or-of-writers from-the-monuments since which or if any there-were
aut ignibus hostium exusta aut civium exilii classe
either by-the-fires of-the-enemy burned or of-the-citizens of-exile in-the-fleet
longius deportata non compareant, quam transmarina relatione,
farther carried-off not appear as from-the-overseas account
quae crebris inrupta intercapedinibus non satis claret.
which by-frequent interrupted gaps not enough is-clear

§§ 5–7

5–7 · ROME SUBDUES BRITAIN

Rome subdues the unwarlike and faithless Britons by threats rather than arms. When they revolt under the treacherous lioness and slaughter the Roman governors, the senate sends an army; the Britons offer their backs and their hands to be bound, and Britain becomes a proverb: neither brave in war nor faithful in peace. Rome keeps it with the whip.

Etenim reges Romanorum cum orbis imperium obtinuissent
for the-kings of-the-Romans when of-the-world the-empire had-obtained
subiugatisque finitimis quibusque regionibus vel insulis orientem
and-subjugated neighboring all regions or islands the-east
versus primam Parthorum pacem Indorum confinium, qua
towards the-first of-the-Parthians peace of-the-Indians the-border by-which
peracta in omni paene terra tum cessavere bella, potioris famae
completed in all almost the-earth then ceased wars of-greater fame
viribus firmassent, non acies flammae quodammodo
by-the-strength had-made-firm not the-battle-line of-flame in-a-way
rigidi tenoris ad occidentem caeruleo oceani torrente potuit
of-rigid course to the-west by-the-blue of-ocean torrent could
vel cohiberi vel extingui, sed transfretans insulae parendi
either be-checked or be-extinguished but crossing-the-strait to-the-island of-obeying
leges nullo obsistente advexit imbellemque populum, sed
the-laws no-one resisting brought and-the-unwarlike people but
infidelem non tam ferro igne machinis, ut alias gentes,
faithless not so-much by-sword by-fire by-engines as other nations
quam solis minis vel iudiciorum concussionibus, in
as by-the-mere threats or of-judgments by-the-shakings on

superficie tantum vultus presso in altum cordis dolore
the-surface only of-the-face pressed into the-depth of-the-heart grief
sui oboedientiam proferentem edictis subiugavit.
its obedience offering to-the-edicts subjugated
Quibus statim Romam ob inopiam, ut aiebant, cespitis
these at-once to-Rome for want as they-said of-turf
repedantibus et nihil de rebellione suspicantibus rectores
returning and nothing about rebellion suspecting the-governors
sibi relictos ad enuntianda plenius vel confirmanda
for-themselves left for declaring more-fully or confirming
Romani regni molimina leaena trucidavit dolosa. quibus
of-the-Roman kingdom the-designs the-lioness slaughtered treacherous which
ita gestis cum talia senatui nuntiarentur et propero
so done when such-things to-the-senate were-announced and with-a-hastened
exercitu vulpeculas ut fingebat subdolas ulcisci festinaret,
army the-little-foxes as it-imagined deceitful to-avenge hastened
non militaris in mari classis parata fortiter dimicare pro
not military on the-sea fleet prepared bravely to-fight for
patria nec quadratum agmen neque dextrum cornu aliive
the-fatherland nor square column nor right wing or-other
belli apparatus in litore conseruntur, sed terga pro scuto
of-war apparatus on the-shore are-joined but backs for a-shield
fugantibus dantur et colla gladiis, gelido per ossa tremore
to-those-routing are-given and necks to-swords chilly through the-bones shuddering
currente, manusque vinciendae muliebriter protenduntur, ita
running and-hands to-be-bound womanishly are-stretched-out so
ut in proverbium et derisum longe lateque efferretur, quod
that into a-proverb and mockery far and-wide it-was-spread that
Britanni nec in bello fortes sint nec in pace fideles.
the-Britons neither in war brave are nor in peace faithful

Itaque multis Romani perfidorum caesis, nonnullis ad
and-so many the-Romans of-the-faithless slain some for
servitutem, ne terra penitus in solitudinem redigeretur,
slavery lest the-land utterly into wilderness be-reduced
mancipalibus reservatis, patria vini oleique experte relicta
as-bondsmen reserved the-fatherland of-wine and-of-oil devoid left
Italiam petunt, suorum quosdam relinquentes praepositos
Italy seek of-their some leaving as-overseers
indigenarum dorsis mastigias, cervicibus iugum, solo
of-the-natives for-the-backs whips for-the-necks the-yoke to-the-soil
nomen Romanae servitutis haerere facturos ac non tam
the-name of-Roman slavery to-cling about-to-make and not so-much
militari manu quam flagris callidam gentem maceraturos
by-military hand as by-scourges the-cunning nation about-to-wear-down
et, si res sic postulavisset, ensem, ut dicitur, vagina
and if the-matter so had-demanded a-sword as is-said of-sheath
vacuum lateri eius accommodaturos, ita ut non Britannia,
empty to-side its about-to-fit so that not Britain
sed Romania censeretur et quicquid habere potuisset
but Romania it-should-be-reckoned and whatever to-have it-could
aeris argenti vel auri imagine Caesaris notaretur.
of-bronze of-silver or of-gold with-the-image of-Caesar should-be-marked

§§ 8–12

8–12 · CHRIST COMES TO BRITAIN; THE MARTYRS

Christ's precepts reach the island under Tiberius and are received lukewarmly. Diocletian's persecution destroys the churches, but God kindles the martyrs Alban, Aaron, and Julius; Alban crosses the Thames dry-shod and converts his executioner. After the persecution the churches are rebuilt, until the Arian heresy and every other heresy spread into the fatherland.

Interea glaciali frigore rigenti insulae et velut longiore
meanwhile with-glacial cold to-the-stiff island and as-if by-the-longer
terrarum secessu soli visibili non proximae verus ille
of-the-lands withdrawal to-the-sun visible not near true that
non de firmamento solum temporali, sed de summa etiam
not from the-firmament only temporal but from the-highest also
caelorum arce tempora cuncta excedente universo orbi
of-the-heavens citadel times all surpassing to-the-whole world
praefulgidum sui coruscum ostendens, tempore, ut scimus,
very-bright his flashing showing in-the-time as we-know
summo Tiberii Caesaris, quo absque ullo impedimento eius
highest of-Tiberius Caesar in-which without any hindrance his
propagabatur religio, comminata senatu nolente a principe
was-spread religion threatened the-senate unwilling by the-prince
morte delatoribus militum eiusdem, radios suos primum
death to-the-informers of-soldiers of-the-same rays his first
indulget, id est sua praecepta, Christus.
grants that is his precepts Christ
Quae, licet ab incolis tepide suscepta sunt, apud
which although by the-inhabitants lukewarmly received were among
quosdam tamen integre et alios minus usque ad
some yet wholly and others less all-the-way to

persecutionem Diocletiani tyranni novennem, in qua subversae
the-persecution of-Diocletian the-tyrant nine-year in which overthrown
per totum mundum sunt ecclesiae et cunctae sacrae
through whole the-world were the-churches and all sacred
scripturae, quae inveniri potuerunt, in plateis exustae et
scriptures which to-be-found could in the-streets burned and
electi sacerdotes gregis domini cum innocentibus ovibus
the-chosen priests of-the-flock of-the-Lord with the-innocent sheep
trucidati, ita ut ne vestigium quidem, si fieri potuisset,
slaughtered so that not a-trace even if to-happen it-could
in nonnullis provinciis Christianae religionis appareret,
in some provinces of-the-Christian religion should-appear
permansere. tunc quantae fugae, quantae strages, quantae
remained then how-great flights how-great slaughters how-great
diversarum mortium poenae, quantae apostatarum ruinae,
of-various deaths punishments how-great of-apostates ruins
quantae gloriosorum martyrum coronae, quanti persecutorum
how-great of-glorious martyrs crowns how-great of-persecutors
rabidi furores, quantae e contrario sanctorum patientiae fuere,
rabid furies how-great on the-contrary of-the-saints patiences there-were
ecclesiastica historia narrat, ita ut agmine denso certatim
ecclesiastical history relates so that in-a-column dense eagerly
relictis post tergum mundialibus tenebris ad amoena caelorum
left behind back worldly darkness to the-pleasant of-the-heavens
regna quasi ad propriam sedem tota festinaret ecclesia.
kingdoms as-if to its-own seat whole hastened the-church
Magnificavit igitur misericordiam suam nobiscum deus
magnified therefore mercy his with-us God
volens omnes homines salvos fieri et vocans non minus
wishing all men saved to-be-made and calling not less
peccatores quam eos, qui se putant iustos. qui gratuito
sinners than those who themselves think just who by-a-free

munere, supra dicto ut conicimus persecutionis tempore, ne
gift above said as we-conjecture of-persecution in-the-time lest
penitus crassa atrae noctis caligine Britannia obfuscaretur,
utterly by-the-thick of-black night darkness Britain should-be-darkened
clarissimos lampades sanctorum martyrum nobis accendit,
most-bright lamps of-holy martyrs for-us kindled
quorum nunc corporum sepulturae et passionum loca, si
of-whom now of-the-bodies the-burials and of-the-sufferings the-places if
non lugubri divortio barbarorum quam plurima ob scelera
not by-a-mournful separation of-the-barbarians very many for crimes
nostra civibus adimerentur, non minimum intuentium
our from-the-citizens were-taken-away not the-least of-those-beholding
mentibus ardorem divinae caritatis incuterent: sanctum
in-the-minds the-ardor of-divine love would-strike holy
Albanum Verolamiensem, Aaron et Iulium Legionum urbis
Alban of-Verulamium Aaron and Julius of-the-Legions of-the-city
cives ceterosque utriusque sexus diversis in locis summa
citizens and-the-others of-each sex various in places with-the-highest
magnanimitate in acie Christi perstantes dico.
greatness-of-soul in the-battle-line of-Christ standing-firm I-mean
Quorum prior postquam caritatis gratia confessorem
of-whom the-first after of-love for-the-sake a-confessor
persecutoribus insectatum et iam iamque comprehendendum,
by-persecutors pursued and now just-now to-be-seized
imitans et in hoc Christum animam pro ovibus ponentem,
imitating and in this Christ (his)-soul for the-sheep laying-down
domo primum ac mutatis dein mutuo vestibus occuluit et
in-house first and changed then mutually the-clothes hid and
se discrimini in fratris supra dicti vestimentis libenter
himself to-the-danger in of-the-brother above said in-the-garments willingly
persequendum dedit, ita deo inter sacram confessionem
to-be-pursued gave so to-God amid the-sacred confession

cruoremque coram impiis Romana tum stigmata cum
and-the-blood before the-impious Roman then the-standards with
horribili fantasia praeferentibus placens signorum miraculis
horrible display bearing-before pleasing of-signs with-miracles
mirabiliter adornatus est, ut oratione ferventi illi Israeliticae
wonderfully adorned was that by-prayer fervent to-that of-Israel
arenti viae minusque tritae, stante diu arca prope glareas
dry way and-less trodden standing long the-ark near the-gravel
testamenti in medio Iordanis canali, simile iter ignotum,
of-the-covenant in the-middle of-Jordan channel similar a-way unknown
trans Tamesis nobilis fluvii alveum, cum mille viris sicco
across of-the-Thames the-noble river the-bed with a-thousand men with-dry
ingrediens pede suspensis utrimque modo praeruptorum
entering foot suspended on-both-sides in-the-manner of-precipitous
fluvialibus montium gurgitibus aperiret et priorem carnificem
with-river of-mountains whirlpools he-opened and the-first executioner
tanta prodigia videntem in agnum ex lupo mutaret et una
such prodigies seeing into a-lamb from a-wolf changed and together
secum triumphalem martyrii palmam sitire vehementius
with-himself the-triumphal of-martyrdom palm to-thirst-for more-vehemently
et excipere fortius faceret. ceteri vero sic diversis cruciatibus
and to-receive more-bravely made the-others but so with-various tortures
torti sunt et inaudita membrorum discerptione lacerati,
twisted were and with-unheard-of of-limbs tearing-apart lacerated
ut absque cunctamine gloriosi in egregiis Ierusalem veluti
that without hesitation glorious in the-outstanding of-Jerusalem as-it-were
portis martyrii sui trophaea defigerent. nam qui superfuerant
in-the-gates of-martyrdom their the-trophies fixed for who had-survived
silvis ac desertis abditisque speluncis se occultavere,
in-woods and deserts and-hidden caves themselves hid

expectantes a iusto rectore omnium deo carnificibus
awaiting from the-just ruler of-all God for-the-executioners
severa quandoque iudicia, sibi vero animarum tutamina.
severe sometime judgments for-themselves but of-souls protections
Igitur bilustro supra dicti turbinis necdum ad integrum
therefore the-ten-years above said of-the-whirlwind not-yet to the-full
expleto emarcescentibusque nece suorum auctorum nefariis
fulfilled and-withering by-the-death of-their authors the-wicked
edictis, laetis luminibus omnes Christi tirones quasi post
edicts with-glad eyes all of-Christ the-recruits as-if after
hiemalem ac prolixam noctem temperiem lucemque serenam
the-wintry and long night the-mildness and-light serene
aurae caelestis excipiunt. renovant ecclesias ad solum
of-the-air heavenly receive they-renew the-churches to the-ground
usque destructas; basilicas sanctorum martyrum fundant
all-the-way destroyed basilicas of-the-holy martyrs they-found
construunt perficiunt ac velut victricia signa passim
they-build they-complete and as-it-were victorious standards everywhere
propalant, dies festos celebrant, sacra mundo corde
they-display festival days they-celebrate the-sacraments with-clean heart
oreque conficiunt, omnes exultant filii gremio ac si
and-mouth they-perform all exult the-sons in-the-bosom as if
matris ecclesiae confoti. mansit namque haec Christi capitis
of-mother church warmed remained for this of-Christ the-head
membrorumque consonantia suavis, donec Arriana perfidia,
and-of-the-members harmony sweet until the-Arian perfidy
atrox ceu anguis, transmarina nobis evomens venena fratres
savage as-if a-serpent from-overseas on-us vomiting poisons brothers
in unum habitantes exitiabiliter faceret seiungi, ac sic
in one dwelling destructively should-make to-be-separated and so
quasi via facta trans oceanum omnes omnino bestiae ferae
as-if a-way made across the-ocean all altogether beasts wild

mortiferum cuiuslibet haereseos virus horrido ore vibrantes
the-deadly of-any-kind-of heresy venom with-horrid mouth brandishing
letalia dentium vulnera patriae novi semper aliquid
deadly of-teeth wounds into-the-fatherland new always something
audire volenti et nihil certe stabiliter optinenti infigebant.
to-hear wishing and nothing surely steadfastly holding fixed

§§ 13–18

13–18 · MAXIMUS AND THE TWO WALLS

The tyrant Maximus takes Britain's soldiers to Gaul and never returns, leaving the island to the Scots and Picts. The Britons beg Rome for help: a legion drives out the enemy and orders a wall of turf, which fails; a second expedition routs them again, helps build a stone wall, leaves patterns of arms, and departs for good.

Itemque tandem tyrannorum virgultis crescentibus et in
and-likewise at-last of-tyrants the-thickets growing and into
immanem silvam iam iamque erumpentibus insula, nomen
a-monstrous forest now just-now bursting-out the-island the-name
Romanum nec tamen morem legemque tenens, quin potius
Roman nor yet the-custom and-law holding but rather
abiciens germen suae plantationis amarissimae, ad Gallias
casting-off a-shoot of-its planting most-bitter to the-Gauls
magna comitante satellitum caterva, insuper etiam imperatoris
with-a-great accompanying of-satellites band besides also of-an-emperor
insignibus, quae nec decenter usquam gessit, non legitime,
with-the-insignia which neither fittingly ever he-bore not lawfully
sed ritu tyrannico et tumultuante initiatum milite, Maximum
but by-rite tyrannical and by-the-rioting initiated soldiery Maximus
mittit. qui callida primum arte potius quam virtute finitimos
sends who by-cunning first art rather than by-valor neighboring

quosque pagos vel provincias contra Romanum statum per
all districts or provinces against the-Roman state through
retia periurii mendaciique sui facinoroso regno adnectens, et
the-nets of-perjury and-of-lying his to-the-criminal kingdom joining and
unam alarum ad Hispaniam, alteram ad Italiam extendens
one of-the-wings to Spain the-other to Italy extending
et thronum iniquissimi imperii apud Treveros statuens
and the-throne of-most-iniquitous empire at Trier setting-up
tanta insania in dominos debacchatus est, ut duos
with-such madness against (his)-lords raged he-has that two
imperatores legitimos, unum Roma, alium religiosissima
emperors lawful one from-Rome the-other from-most-religious
vita pelleret. nec mora tam feralibus vallatus audaciis
life he-drove nor delay by-so deadly hemmed by-daring-deeds
apud Aquileiam urbem capite nefando caeditur, qui decorata
at Aquileia the-city with-head unspeakable is-cut who the-adorned
totius orbis capita regni quodammodo deiecerat.
of-the-whole world heads of-the-kingdom in-a-way had-cast-down
Exin Britannia omni armato milite, militaribus copiis, rectoribus
thence Britain of-every armed soldier of-military forces of-rulers
licet immanibus, ingenti iuventute spoliata, quae comitata
though monstrous of-huge youth despoiled which having-accompanied
vestigiis supra dicti tyranni domum nusquam ultra rediit,
the-footsteps above said of-the-tyrant home nowhere further returned
et omnis belli usus ignara penitus, duabus primum gentibus
and of-every of-war use ignorant utterly by-two first nations
transmarinis vehementer saevis, Scotorum a circione,
from-overseas exceedingly savage of-the-Scots from the-north-west
Pictorum ab aquilone calcabilis, multos stupet gemitque annos.
of-the-Picts from the-north trampled many is-stunned and-groans years

ob quarum infestationem ac dirissimam depressionem
because-of whose harassment and most-dire oppression
legatos Romam cum epistolis mittit, militarem manum ad se
envoys to-Rome with letters sends a-military hand for itself
vindicandam lacrimosis postulationibus poscens et subiectionem
to-be-avenged with-tearful demands asking and the-subjection
sui Romano imperio continue tota animi virtute, si
of-itself to-the-Roman empire continually with-whole of-mind strength if
hostis longius arceretur, vovens. cui mox destinatur legio
the-enemy farther should-be-kept-off vowing to-which soon is-dispatched a-legion
praeteriti mali immemor, sufficienter armis instructa, quae
of-past evil unmindful sufficiently with-arms equipped which
ratibus trans oceanum in patriam advecta et cominus cum
in-boats across the-ocean into the-fatherland brought and hand-to-hand with
gravibus hostibus congressa magnamque ex eis multitudinem
the-grievous enemies having-engaged and-a-great from them multitude
sternens et omnes e finibus depulit et subiectos cives
laying-low and all out-of the-borders drove and the-subject citizens
tam atroci dilaceratione ex imminenti captivitate liberavit.
from-so atrocious tearing from impending captivity freed
quos iussit construere inter duo maria trans insulam murum,
whom it-ordered to-build between two seas across the-island a-wall
ut esset arcendis hostibus turba instructus terrori
that it-might-be for-keeping-off the-enemies by-the-crowd built a-terror
civibusque tutamini; qui vulgo irrationabili absque
and-to-the-citizens a-protection which by-the-common-people irrational without
rectore factus non tam lapidibus, quam cespitibus non profuit.
a-director made not so-much of-stones as of-turfs not was-of-use
Illa domum cum triumpho magno et gaudio repedante illi
that-legion home with triumph great and joy returning those
priores inimici ac si ambrones, lupi profunda fame rabidi, siccis
former enemies as if Ambrones wolves with-deep hunger rabid with-dry

faucibus ovile transilientes non comparente pastore, alis
jaws the-sheepfold leaping-over not appearing the-shepherd by-the-wings
remorum remigumque brachiis ac velis vento sinuatis
of-oars and-of-the-rowers by-the-arms and by-sails by-the-wind bellied
vecti, terminos rumpunt caeduntque omnia et quaeque
carried the-boundaries burst and-they-cut-down all and whatever
obvia maturam ceu segetem metunt calcant transeunt.
in-the-way ripe as-if grain they-reap they-trample they-pass-over
Itemque mittuntur queruli legati, scissis, ut dicitur, vestibus,
and-likewise are-sent complaining envoys torn as is-said garments
opertisque sablone capitibus, inpetrantes a Romanis auxilia ac
and-covered with-sand heads begging from the-Romans help and
veluti timidi pulli patrum fidissimis alis succumbentes, ne
as-it-were timid chicks of-the-fathers to-the-most-faithful wings yielding lest
penitus misera patria deleretur nomenque Romanorum,
utterly the-wretched fatherland should-be-destroyed and-the-name of-the-Romans
quod verbis tantum apud eos auribus resultabat, vel exterarum
which in-words only among them in-the-ears resounded or of-foreign
gentium opprobrio obrosum vilesceret. at illi, quantum
nations by-the-reproach gnawed should-grow-cheap but they as-far-as
humanae naturae possibile est, commoti tantae historia
of-human nature possible is moved of-so-great by-the-story
tragoediae, volatus ceu aquilarum equitum in terra, nautarum in
tragedy the-flights as-if of-eagles of-horsemen on land of-sailors on
mari cursus accelerantes inopinatos primum, tandem terribiles
sea the-courses hastening unexpected first at-last terrible
inimicorum cervicibus infigunt mucronum ungues casibusque
of-the-enemies on-the-necks fix of-swords the-claws and-to-the-falls
foliorum tempore certo adsimilandam hisdem peragunt stragem,
of-leaves in-time fixed to-be-likened on-them carry-out a-slaughter
ac si montanus torrens crebris tempestatum rivulis auctus
as if a-mountain torrent with-frequent of-storms by-rivulets swollen

sonoroque meatu alveos exundans ac sulcato dorso
and-with-sounding course the-channels overflowing and furrowed back
fronteque acra, erectis, ut aiunt, ad nebulas undis (luminum
and-brow with-keen raised as they-say to the-clouds with-waves of-the-eyes
quibus pupilli, persaepe licet palpebrarum convolatibus
by-which the-pupils very-often although of-the-eyelids by-the-meetings
innovati, adiunctis rimarum rotarum lineis fuscantur) mirabiliter
renewed joined of-cracks of-wheels by-lines are-darkened wonderfully
spumans, ast uno obiectas sibi evincit gurgite moles. ita
foaming but with-one cast-against it overcomes whirlpool the-masses so
aemulorum agmina auxiliares egregii, si qua tamen evadere
of-the-rivals the-columns the-auxiliaries outstanding if any yet to-escape
potuerant, praepropere trans maria fugaverunt, quia anniversarias
had-been-able too-hastily across the-seas put-to-flight because yearly
avide praedas nullo obsistente trans maria exaggerabant.
greedily plunder no-one resisting across the-seas they-heaped-up
Igitur Romani, patriae denuntiantes nequaquam se
therefore the-Romans to-the-fatherland announcing by-no-means themselves
tam laboriosis expeditionibus posse frequentius vexari
by-so laborious expeditions to-be-able more-frequently to-be-harassed
et ob imbelles erraticosque latrunculos Romana stigmata,
and for unwarlike and-roving little-robbers the-Roman standards
tantum talemque exercitum, terra ac mari fatigari; sed ut
so-great and-such an-army by-land and by-sea to-be-wearied but that
potius sola consuescendo armis ac viriliter dimicando terram
rather alone by-growing-used to-arms and manfully by-fighting land
substantiolam coniuges liberos et, quod his maius est,
little-substance wives children and what than-these greater is
libertatem vitamque totis viribus vindicaret et gentibus
freedom and-life with-all strength it-should-defend and to-nations
nequaquam sibi fortioribus, nisi segnitia et torpore
by-no-means than-itself stronger unless by-sloth and torpor

dissolveretur, inermes vinculis vinciendas nullo modo, sed
it-were-dissolved unarmed with-chains to-be-bound by-no means but
instructas peltis ensibus hastis et ad caedem promptas
equipped with-shields swords spears and for slaughter ready
protenderet manus, suadentes, quia et hoc putabant
it-should-stretch-out hands persuading because also this they-thought
aliquid derelinquendo populo commodi adcrescere, murum
something to-be-left to-the-people of-advantage to-add a-wall
non ut alterum, sumptu publico privatoque adiunctis secum
not like the-other at-expense public and-private joined with-them
miserabilibus indigenis, solito structurae more, tramite a
the-wretched natives in-the-usual of-building manner in-a-line from
mari usque ad mare inter urbes, quae ibidem forte ob metum
sea all-the-way to sea between the-cities which there perhaps for fear
hostium collocatae fuerant, directo librant; fortia formidoloso
of-the-enemies placed had-been straight they-level brave to-the-fearful
populo monita tradunt, exemplaria instituendorum armorum
people counsels they-hand-over patterns to-be-made of-arms
relinquunt. in litore quoque oceani ad meridianam plagam,
they-leave on the-shore also of-the-ocean to the-southern region
quo naves eorum habebantur, quia et inde barbaricae
where ships their were-kept because also from-there the-barbarian
ferae bestiae timebantur, turres per intervalla ad prospectum
wild beasts were-feared towers at intervals for a-view
maris collocant, et valedicunt tamquam ultra non reversuri.
of-the-sea they-place and say-farewell as-if further not about-to-return

§§ 19–21

19–21 · THE PICTS AND SCOTS RETURN

The Scots and Picts land and seize the north as far as the wall, while its garrison trembles on the ramparts; the citizens flee and turn on one another. The Britons write to Agitius, thrice consul, that the barbarians drive them to the sea and the sea to the barbarians. Famine follows, then plenty, and with it every vice.

Itaque illis ad sua remeantibus emergunt certatim de curucis,
and-so they to their returning emerge eagerly from the-coracles
quibus sunt trans Tithicam vallem evecti, quasi in alto Titane
in-which they-were across the-Tithican valley carried as-if in high the-sun
incalescenteque caumate de artissimis foraminum caverniculis
and-growing-hot the-heat from the-narrowest of-holes little-caverns
fusci vermiculorum cunei, tetri Scottorum Pictorumque greges,
dark of-little-worms wedges foul of-Scots and-of-Picts the-herds
moribus ex parte dissidentes, sed una eademque sanguinis
in-customs in part differing but by-one and-the-same of-blood
fundendi aviditate concordes furciferosque magis vultus
of-shedding greed agreeing and-gallows-worthy more faces
pilis quam corporum pudenda pudendisque proxima
with-hair than of-the-bodies the-shameful-parts and-to-the-shameful-parts nearest
vestibus tegentes cognitaque condebitorum reversione et
with-clothes covering and-learned of-the-co-debtors the-return and
reditus denegatione solito confidentiores omnem aquilonalem
of-return the-refusal than-usual more-confident all the-northern
extremamque terrae partem pro indigenis muro tenus
and-farthest of-the-land part instead-of the-natives the-wall as-far-as
capessunt. statuitur ad haec in edito arcis acies,
they-seize is-stationed against these on the-height of-the-citadel a-battle-line
segnis ad pugnam, inhabilis ad fugam, trementibus praecordiis
sluggish for fighting unfit for flight with-trembling hearts

inepta, quae diebus ac noctibus stupido sedili marcebat.
unsuited which by-days and nights on-a-stupid seat wasted-away
interea non cessant uncinata nudorum tela, quibus
meanwhile not cease the-hooked of-the-naked the-weapons by-which
miserrimi cives de muris tracti solo allidebantur. hoc
the-most-wretched citizens from the-walls dragged on-the-ground were-dashed this
scilicet eis proficiebat immaturae mortis supplicium, qui
namely to-them was-of-profit of-untimely death the-punishment who
tali funere rapiebantur, quo fratrum pignorumque suorum
by-such death were-snatched by-which of-brothers and-of-pledges their
miserandas imminentes poenas cito exitu devitabant. quid
the-pitiable impending punishments by-quick end they-avoided what
plura? relictis civitatibus muroque celso iterum civibus
more left the-cities and-the-wall high again for-the-citizens
fugae, iterum dispersiones solito desperabiliores, iterum ab
flights again dispersals than-usual more-desperate again from
hoste insectationes, iterum strages accelerantur crudeliores;
the-enemy pursuits again slaughters are-hastened more-cruel
et sicut agni a lanionibus, ita deflendi cives ab inimicis
and as lambs by butchers so to-be-wept the-citizens by the-enemies
discerpuntur, ut commoratio eorum ferarum assimilaretur
are-torn-apart so-that the-dwelling their of-beasts was-likened
agrestium. nam et ipsos mutuo, perexigui victus brevi
wild for also themselves mutually of-very-scanty food by-the-brief
sustentaculo miserrimorum civium, latrocinando temperabant:
support of-the-most-wretched citizens by-robbing they-sustained
et augebantur externae clades domesticis motibus, quod
and were-increased external disasters by-domestic disturbances so-that
huiuscemodi tam crebris direptionibus vacuaretur omnis regio
by-such so frequent plunderings was-emptied every region
totius cibi baculo, excepto venatoriae artis solacio.
of-all food of-the-staff excepted of-the-hunting art by-the-solace

Igitur rursum miserae mittentes epistolas reliquiae ad Agitium
therefore again wretched sending letters the-remnants to Agitius
Romanae potestatis virum, hoc modo loquentes: 'Agitio ter
of-Roman power a-man in-this way speaking to-Agitius thrice
consuli gemitus Britannorum;' et post pauca querentes:
consul the-groans of-the-Britons and after a-few-words complaining
'repellunt barbari ad mare, repellit mare ad barbaros; inter
drive-back the-barbarians to the-sea drives-back the-sea to the-barbarians between
haec duo genera funerum aut iugulamur aut mergimur;'
these two kinds of-deaths either we-are-slaughtered or we-are-drowned
nec pro eis quicquam adiutorii habent. interea famis dira
nor for them anything of-help they-have meanwhile famine dire
ac famosissima vagis ac nutabundis haeret, quae
and most-notorious to-the-wandering and tottering clings which
multos eorum cruentis compulit praedonibus sine dilatione
many of-them to-the-bloody compelled robbers without delay
victas dare manus, ut pauxillum ad refocillandam animam
conquered to-give hands so-that a-little for refreshing the-soul
cibi caperent, alios vero nusquam: quin potius de ipsis
of-food they-might-take others but nowhere but rather from the-very
montibus, speluncis ac saltibus, dumis consertis continue
mountains caves and forests with-thickets interwoven continually
rebellabant. et tum primum inimicis per multos annos
rebelled and then first on-the-enemies through many years
praedas in terra agentibus strages dabant, non fidentes in
plunders in the-land driving slaughters they-inflicted not trusting in
homine, sed in deo, secundum illud Philonis: 'necesse est
man but in God according-to that of-Philo necessary it-is
adesse divinum, ubi humanum cessat auxilium'. quievit
to-be-present the-divine where the-human ceases help rested

parumper inimicorum audacia nec tamen nostrorum malitia;
for-a-little-while of-the-enemies the-boldness nor yet of-ours the-malice
recesserunt hostes a civibus nec cives a suis sceleribus.
withdrew the-enemies from the-citizens nor the-citizens from their crimes
Moris namque continui erat genti, sicut et nunc est, ut
of-custom for continual it-was to-the-nation as also now it-is that
infirma esset ad retundenda hostium tela et fortis esset
weak it-was for blunting of-the-enemies the-weapons and strong it-was
ad civilia bella et peccatorum onera sustinenda, infirma,
for civil wars and of-sins the-burdens to-be-borne weak
inquam, ad exequenda pacis ac veritatis insignia et fortis ad
I-say for carrying-out of-peace and of-truth the-standards and strong for
scelera et mendacia. revertuntur ergo impudentes grassatores
crimes and lies return therefore the-shameless prowlers
Hiberni domos, post non longum temporis reversuri. Picti in
the-Irish home after not long of-time about-to-return the-Picts in
extrema parte insulae tunc primum et deinceps requieverunt,
the-farthest part of-the-island then first and thereafter rested
praedas et contritiones nonnumquam facientes. in talibus itaque
plunderings and devastations sometimes making in such and-so
indutiis desolato populo saeva cicatrix obducitur. fame alia
truces for-the-desolate people the-savage scar is-closed-over famine another
virulentiore tacitus pullulante, quiescente autem vastitate
more-virulent silently sprouting resting moreover the-devastation
tantis abundantiarum copiis insula affluebat, ut nulla habere
with-such of-abundances plenty the-island overflowed that no to-have
tales retro aetas meminisset, cum quibus omnimodis et luxuria
such past age remembered with which in-every-way also luxury
crescit. crevit etenim germine praepollenti, ita ut competenter
grows it-grew for with-a-shoot surpassing so that fittingly
eodem tempore diceretur: ‘omnino talis auditur fornicatio,
at-the-same time it-was-said altogether such is-heard fornication

qualis nec inter gentes'. non solum vero hoc vitium, sed et
as not among the-gentiles not only but this vice but also
omnia, quae humanae naturae accidere solent, et praecipue,
all which to-human nature to-befall are-wont and especially
quod et nunc quoque in ea totius boni evertit statum,
what also now also in it of-all good overturns the-state
odium veritatis cum assertoribus amorque mendacii cum suis
hatred of-truth with (its)-asserters and-the-love of-falsehood with its
fabricatoribus, susceptio mali pro bono, veneratio nequitiae
fabricators acceptance of-evil for good veneration of-wickedness
pro benignitate, cupido tenebrarum pro sole, exceptio Satanae
for kindness desire of-darkness for the-sun reception of-Satan
pro angelo lucis. ungebantur reges non per deum, sed qui
for an-angel of-light were-anointed kings not through God but who
ceteris crudeliores exstarent, et paulo post ab unctoribus
than-the-others more-cruel stood-out and a-little after by the-anointers
non pro veri examinatione trucidabantur aliis electis
not for of-the-truth examination were-slaughtered others chosen
trucioribus. si quis vero eorum mitior et veritati aliquatenus
more-savage if anyone but of-them milder and to-the-truth somewhat
propior videretur, in hunc quasi Britanniae subversorem
nearer seemed against this-one as-if of-Britain the-overthrower
omnium odia telaque sine respectu contorquebantur, et
of-all the-hatreds and-weapons without regard were-hurled and
omnia quae displicuerunt deo et quae placuerunt, aequali
all which displeased God and which pleased in-equal
saltem lance pendebantur, si non gratiora fuissent displicentia;
at-least scale were-weighed if not more-pleasing had-been the-displeasing
ita ut merito patriae illud propheticum, quod veterno illi
so that deservedly to-the-fatherland that prophetic which to-the-aged that
populo denuntiatum est, potuerit aptari. filii, inquiens, sine
people announced was could to-be-fitted O-sons saying without

lege dereliquistis deum, et ad iracundiam provocastis sanctum
law you-have-forsaken God and to anger provoked the-holy-one
Israel. ‘quid adhuc percutiemini apponentes iniquitatem? omne
of-Israel why still shall-you-be-struck adding iniquity every
caput languidum et omne cor maerens: a planta pedis
head languid and every heart grieving from the-sole of-the-foot
usque ad verticem non est in eo sanitas.’ sicque agebant
all-the-way to the-crown not there-is in it soundness and-so they-did
cuncta, quae saluti contraria fuerint, ac si nihil mundo
all-things which to-salvation contrary were as if nothing to-the-world
medicinae a vero omnium medico largiretur. et non solum
of-medicine from the-true of-all physician were-bestowed and not only
haec saeculares viri, sed et ipse grex domini eiusque
these-things secular men but also the-very flock of-the-Lord and-its
pastores, qui exemplo esse omni plebi debuerint,
shepherds who an-example to-be to-all the-common-people ought
ebrietate quam plurimi quasi vino madidi torpebant
with-drunkenness very many as-if with-wine soaked were-torpid
resoluti et animositatum tumore, iurgiorum contentione,
loosened and of-animosities with-the-swelling of-quarrels by-the-contention
invidiae rapacibus ungulis, indiscreto boni malique iudicio
of-envy with-rapacious claws with-undiscerning of-good and-evil judgment
carpebantur, ita ut perspicue, sicut et nunc est, effundi
were-carped-at so that plainly as also now it-is to-be-poured-out
videretur contemptio super principes seduci vanis
it-seemed contempt upon princes to-be-led-astray by-the-vanities
eorum et errore, in invio et non in via.
their and by-error in the-pathless and not in the-way

§§ 22–26

22–26 · THE SAXONS INVITED

Rumor of a new invasion and a plague do not amend the people. The proud tyrant and his council invite the Saxons to repel the northern nations; three keels come, then more, and complain of their pay until they break the treaty and burn the island from sea to sea. Ambrosius Aurelianus leads the survivors to victory, and after Badon hill the cities lie deserted.

Interea volente deo purgare familiam suam et tanta malorum
meanwhile wishing God to-purge household his and with-such of-evils
labe infectam auditu tantum tribulationis emendare, non
stain infected by-the-hearing only of-tribulation to-amend not
ignoti rumoris penniger ceu volatus arrectas omnium
unknown of-rumor feathered as-if flight the-pricked-up of-all
penetrat aures iamiamque adventus veterum volentium
penetrates ears now-already the-coming of-the-old-(enemies) wishing
penitus delere et inhabitare solito more a fine usque ad
utterly to-destroy and to-inhabit in-the-usual manner from end all-the-way to
terminum regionem. nequaquam tamen ob hoc proficiunt, sed
boundary the-region by-no-means yet for this they-profit but
comparati iumentis insipientibus strictis, ut dicitur, morsibus
compared to-beasts foolish tightened as is-said with-bites
rationis frenum offirmantes, per latam diversorum vitiorum
of-reason the-bridle making-firm through the-broad of-various vices
morti proclive ducentem, relicto salutari licet arto itinere,
to-death sloping leading left the-saving though narrow road
discurrebant viam. dum ergo, ut Salomon ait, 'servus durus non
they-ran-about the-way while therefore as Solomon says a-servant hard not
emendatur verbis', flagellatur stultus et non sentit, pestifera
is-amended by-words is-scourged the-fool and not feels pestilential

namque lues feraliter insipienti populo incumbit, quae in brevi
for plague deadly on-the-foolish people falls which in short
tantam eius multitudinem remoto mucrone sternit, quantam
so-great its multitude removed with-sword lays-low as-great-as
ne possint vivi humare. sed ne hac quidem emendantur,
not can the-living to-bury but not by-this even are-they-amended
ut illud Esaiae prophetae in eo quoque impleretur dicentis:
so-that that of-Isaiah the-prophet in it also was-fulfilled saying
'et vocavit deus ad planctum et ad calvitium et ad
and called God to lamentation and to baldness and to
cingulum sacci: ecce vitulos occidere et iugulare arietes,
the-girdle of-sackcloth behold calves to-kill and to-slaughter rams
ecce manducare et bibere et dicere: manducemus et
behold to-eat and to-drink and to-say let-us-eat and
bibamus, cras enim moriamur'. appropinquabat siquidem
let-us-drink tomorrow for we-may-die was-approaching since
tempus, quo eius iniquitates, ut olim Amorrhaeorum,
the-time in-which its iniquities as once of-the-Amorites
complerentur. initur namque consilium, quid optimum quidve
should-be-filled-up is-entered for counsel what best or-what
saluberrimum ad repellendas tam ferales et tam crebras supra
most-healthful for driving-back so deadly and so frequent above
dictarum gentium irruptiones praedasque decerni deberet.
said of-nations the-incursions and-plunderings to-be-decreed ought
Tum omnes consiliarii una cum superbo tyranno caecantur,
then all the-counselors together with the-proud tyrant are-blinded
adinvenientes tale praesidium, immo excidium patriae,
devising such a-defense or-rather a-ruin for-the-fatherland
ut ferocissimi illi nefandi nominis Saxones deo
that the-most-ferocious those of-unspeakable name Saxons to-God
hominibusque invisi, quasi in caulas lupi, in insulam ad
and-to-men hateful as-if into the-folds wolves into the-island for

retundendas aquilonales gentes intromitterentur. quo utique
driving-back the-northern nations should-be-let-in than-which certainly
nihil ei usquam perniciosius nihilque amarius factum est.
nothing to-it ever more-pernicious and-nothing more-bitter done was
o altissimam sensus caliginem! o desperabilem crudamque
O deepest of-sense darkness O desperate and-crude
mentis hebetudinem! quos propensius morte, cum abessent,
of-mind dullness whom more-strongly than-death when they-were-absent
tremebant, sponte, ut ita dicam, sub unius tecti
they-feared of-their-own-accord as so I-may-say under of-one roof
culmine invitabant. 'stulti principes', ut dictum est, 'Taneos
the-top they-invited foolish princes as said it-is of-Zoan
dantes Pharaoni consilium insipiens'. tum erumpens grex
giving to-Pharaoh counsel foolish then bursting-out a-flock
catulorum de cubili leaenae barbarae, tribus, ut lingua
of-whelps from the-lair of-the-lioness barbarian in-three as in-the-tongue
eius exprimitur, cyulis, nostra longis navibus, secundis
its is-expressed keels in-ours long ships with-favorable
velis, omine auguriisque, quibus vaticinabatur, certo apud
sails with-omen and-auguries by-which it-was-prophesied by-sure among
eum praesagio, quod ter centum annis patriam, cui
them presage that for-three hundred years the-fatherland to-which
proras librabat, insideret, centum vero quinquaginta, hoc
the-prows it-poised it-should-occupy a-hundred but fifty that
est dimidio temporis, saepius vastaret, evectus, primum in
is for-half of-the-time oftener should-lay-waste carried first in
orientali parte insulae iubente infausto tyranno terribiles
the-eastern part of-the-island ordering the-ill-starred tyrant terrible
infixit ungues quasi pro patria pugnaturus, sed eam
fixed claws as-if for the-fatherland about-to-fight but it
certius impugnaturus. cui supradicta genetrix, comperiens
more-surely about-to-attack to-which the-above-said mother learning

primo agmini fuisse prosperatum, item mittit satellitum
to-the-first column to-have-been prospered likewise sends of-satellites
canumque prolixiorem catastam, quae ratibus advecta adunatur
and-of-dogs a-longer display which in-boats brought is-united
cum manipularibus spuriis. inde germen iniquitatis, radix
with the-comrades bastard thence the-shoot of-iniquity the-root
amaritudinis, virulenta plantatio nostris condigna meritis, in
of-bitterness the-virulent planting to-our worthy deserts in
nostro cespite, ferocibus palmitibus pampinisque pullulat. igitur
our turf with-fierce branches and-tendrils sprouts therefore
intromissi in insulam barbari, veluti militibus et magna,
let-in into the-island the-barbarians as-if for-soldiers and great
ut mentiebantur, discrimina pro bonis hospitibus subituris,
as they-lied dangers for good hosts about-to-undergo
impetrant sibi annonas dari: quae multo tempore
obtain for-themselves provisions to-be-given which for-much time
impertitae clauserunt, ut dicitur, canis faucem. item queruntur
bestowed closed as is-said of-the-dog the-jaw likewise they-complain
non affluenter sibi epimenia contribui, occasiones
not abundantly to-them the-monthly-allowances to-be-contributed occasions
de industria colorantes, et ni profusior eis munificentia
on purpose coloring and unless more-lavish on-them munificence
cumularetur, testantur se cuncta insulae rupto foedere
were-heaped they-testify themselves all of-the-island broken the-treaty
depopulaturos. nec mora minas effectibus prosequuntur.
about-to-lay-waste nor delay the-threats with-deeds they-follow-up
Confovebatur namque ultionis iustae praecedentium scelerum
was-kindled for of-vengeance just of-preceding crimes
causa de mari usque ad mare ignis orientali sacrilegorum
by-reason from sea all-the-way to sea the-fire by-the-eastern of-the-sacrilegious
manu exaggeratus et finitimas quasque civitates agrosque
hand heaped-up and neighboring all cities and-fields

populans non quievit accensus, donec cunctam paene exurens
ravaging not rested kindled until all almost burning
insulae superficiem rubra occidentalem trucique oceanum
of-the-island the-surface the-red western and-with-savage the-ocean
lingua delamberet. in hoc ergo impetu Assyrio olim in
tongue it-licked in this therefore assault to-the-Assyrian once in
Iudaeam comparando completur quoque in nobis secundum
Judea to-be-compared is-fulfilled also in us according-to
historiam, quod propheta deplorans ait: 'incenderunt igni
the-history what the-prophet lamenting says they-have-burned with-fire
sanctuarium tuum in terra, polluerunt tabernaculum nominis
sanctuary your on earth they-have-polluted the-tabernacle of-name
tui'. et iterum: 'deus, venerunt gentes in hereditatem tuam;
your and again O-God have-come the-gentiles into inheritance your
coinquinarunt templum sanctum tuum', et cetera. ita ut
they-have-defiled temple holy your and the-rest so that
cunctae coloniae crebris arietibus omnesque coloni cum
all the-colonies with-frequent rams and-all the-settlers with
praepositis ecclesiae, cum sacerdotibus ac populo, mucronibus
the-overseers of-the-church with the-priests and the-people with-swords
undique micantibus ac flammis crepitantibus, simul solo
on-all-sides flashing and flames crackling together on-the-ground
sternerentur et miserabili visu in medio platearum ima
were-laid-low and in-pitiable sight in the-middle of-the-squares the-bottoms
turrium edito cardine evulsarum murorumque celsorum
of-towers from-the-lofty hinge torn-out and-of-walls high
saxa, sacra altaria, cadaverum frusta, crustis ac si gelantibus
stones sacred altars of-corpses fragments with-crusts as if congealing
purpurei cruoris tecta, velut in quodam horrendo torculari
of-purple blood covered as-if in a-certain horrible winepress
mixta viderentur, et nulla esset omnimodis praeter domorum
mixed were-seen and no there-was in-every-way except of-houses

ruinas, bestiarum volucrumque ventres in medio sepultura,
the-ruins of-beasts and-of-birds the-bellies in the-midst burial
salva sanctarum animarum reverentia, si tamen multae inventae
saving of-the-holy souls the-reverence if yet many found
sint, quae arduis caeli id temporis a sanctis angelis
were which to-the-heights of-heaven at-that of-time by the-holy angels
veherentur. ita enim degeneraverat tunc vinea illa olim bona in
were-carried so for had-degenerated then vineyard that once good into
amaritudinem, uti raro, secundum prophetam, videretur quasi
bitterness that rarely according-to the-prophet there-was-seen as-it-were
post tergum vindemiatorum aut messorum racemus vel spica.
after the-back of-the-grape-gatherers or of-the-reapers a-cluster or an-ear
Itaque nonnulli miserarum reliquiarum in montibus deprehensi
and-so some of-the-wretched remnants in the-mountains caught
acervatim iugulabantur: alii fame confecti accedentes manus
in-heaps were-slaughtered others by-famine worn-out approaching hands
hostibus dabant in aevum servituri, si tamen non continuo
to-the-enemies gave for ever about-to-serve if yet not at-once
trucidarentur, quod altissimae gratiae stabat loco: alii
they-were-slaughtered which of-highest grace stood in-place others
transmarinas petebant regiones cum ululatu magno ceu
overseas sought regions with wailing great as-if
celeumatis vice hoc modo sub velorum sinibus cantantes:
of-a-boat-song in-place in-this way under of-the-sails the-bellies singing
‘dedisti nos tamquam oves escarum et in gentibus
you-have-given us as-if sheep for-food and among the-nations
dispersisti nos’: alii montanis collibus minacibus praeruptis
you-have-scattered us others in-mountainous hills threatening precipitous
vallatis et densissimis saltibus marinisque rupibus vitam
walled and in-the-densest forests and-sea cliffs life
suspecta semper mente credentes, in patria licet trepidi
with-suspicious always mind entrusting in the-fatherland though fearful

perstabant. tempore igitur interveniente aliquanto, cum
remained in-time therefore intervening some when
recessissent domum crudelissimi praedones, roborante deo
had-withdrawn home the-most-cruel robbers strengthening God
reliquiae, quibus confugiunt undique de diversis locis
the-remnants to-whom flee from-all-sides from various places
miserrimi cives, tam avide quam apes alvearii procella
the-most-wretched citizens as eagerly as bees of-the-hive the-storm
imminente, simul deprecantes eum toto corde et, ut dicitur:
impending together entreating him with-whole heart and as is-said
'innumeris onerantes aethera votis', ne ad internicionem
with-countless loading the-air with-vows lest to destruction
usque delerentur, duce Ambrosio Aureliano viro
utterly they-be-destroyed under-the-leadership of-Ambrosius Aurelianus a-man
modesto, qui solus forte Romanae gentis tantae tempestatis
modest who alone perhaps of-the-Roman nation of-so-great storm
collisione occisis in eadem parentibus purpura nimirum indutis
by-the-shock slain in the-same the-parents with-purple surely clothed
superfuerat, cuius nunc temporibus nostris suboles magnopere
had-survived whose now in-times our offspring greatly
avita bonitate degeneravit, vires capessunt, victores
from-the-ancestral goodness has-degenerated strength they-take-up the-victors
provocantes ad proelium: quis victoria domino annuente cessit.
challenging to battle to-whom victory the-Lord nodding fell
Ex eo tempore nunc cives, nunc hostes, vincebant,
from that time now the-citizens now the-enemies conquered
ut in ista gente experiretur dominus solito more
that in that nation might-test the-Lord in-the-usual manner
praesentem Israelem, utrum diligat eum an non; usque
the-present Israel whether it-loves him or not all-the-way
ad annum obsessionis Badonici montis, novissimaeque ferme
to the-year of-the-siege of-Badon hill and-of-the-last almost

de furciferis non minimae stragis, quique quadragesimus
of the-gallows-birds not least of-slaughter and-which forty
quartus ut novi orditur annus mense iam uno emenso,
fourth as I-know begins the-year a-month already one passed
qui et meae nativitatis est. sed ne nunc quidem, ut antea,
which also of-my birth is but not now even as before
civitates patriae inhabitantur; sed desertae dirutaeque
the-cities of-the-fatherland are-inhabited but deserted and-ruined
hactenus squalent, cessantibus licet externis bellis, sed
up-to-now they-lie-squalid ceasing although external wars but
non civilibus. haesit etenim tam desperati insulae excidii
not civil it-clung for of-so desperate of-the-island ruin
insperatique mentio auxilii memoriae eorum, qui utriusque
and-of-unhoped-for the-mention of-help to-the-memory of-those who of-each
miraculi testes extitere: et ob hoc reges, publici, privati,
miracle witnesses stood-forth and for this kings public-men private-men
sacerdotes, ecclesiastici, suum quique ordinem servarunt. at
priests churchmen his each order kept but
illis decedentibus cum successisset aetas tempestatis illius
they departing when had-succeeded an-age of-storm that
nescia et praesentis tantum serenitatis experta ita cuncta
ignorant and of-the-present only of-calm having-experienced so all
veritatis ac iustitiae moderamina concussa ac subversa sunt,
of-truth and of-justice the-controls shaken and overturned were
ut earum non dicam vestigium, sed ne monimentum quidem
that of-them not I-shall-say a-trace but not a-monument even
in supra dictis propemodum ordinibus appareat, exceptis paucis
in above said almost orders appears excepted few
et valde paucis, qui ob amissionem tantae multitudinis, quae
and very few who for the-loss of-so-great multitude which
cotidie prona ruit ad tartara, tam brevis numerus habentur,
daily headlong rushes to Tartarus so short a-number are-held

ut eos quodammodo venerabilis mater ecclesia in suo
that them in-a-way the-venerable mother church in her
sinu recumbentes non videat, quos solos veros filios habet.
bosom reclining not sees whom alone as-true sons she-has
quorum ne quis me egregiam vitam omnibus admirabilem
of-whom lest anyone me the-outstanding life to-all admirable
deoque amabilem carpere putet, quibus nostra infirmitas in
and-to-God lovable to-carp-at think by-whom our weakness in
sacris orationibus ut non penitus conlabatur, quasi columnis
holy prayers that not utterly it-collapse as-if by-pillars
quibusdam ac fulcris saluberrimis sustentatur, si qua liberius
certain and props most-healthful is-supported if anything more-freely
de his, immo lugubrius, cumulo malorum conpulsus, qui
about these or-rather more-mournfully by-the-heap of-evils compelled who
serviunt non solum ventri, sed diabolo potius quam Christo,
serve not only the-belly but the-devil rather than Christ
qui est benedictus in saecula deus, non tam disceptavero,
who is blessed for ages God not so-much I-shall-have-disputed
quam deflevero, quippe quid celabunt cives, quae non
as I-shall-have-lamented since what shall-conceal the-citizens which not
solum norunt, sed exprobrant iam in circuitu nationes?
only they-know but reproach already in the-circuit the-nations

§§ 27–32

27–32 · THE FIVE TYRANTS

Britain has kings, but tyrants. Gildas rebukes Constantine of Dumnonia, who killed two royal boys at the altar under an abbot's cloak; Aurelius Caninus, given to parricide and civil war; Vortipor of the Demetae, grown gray in adultery; and Cuneglasus, the tawny butcher, who drove out his wife for her sister. He urges each to repent before death and judgment.

Reges habet Britannia, sed tyrannos; iudices habet, sed impios;
kings has Britain but tyrants judges it-has but impious
saepe praedantes et concutientes, sed innocentes; vindicantes
often plundering and harassing but the-innocent avenging
et patrocinantes, sed reos et latrones; quam plurimas
and protecting but the-guilty and robbers very many
coniuges habentes, sed scortas et adulterantes; crebro
wives having but harlots and committing-adultery often
iurantes, sed periurantes; voventes, sed continuo propemodum
swearing but perjuring vowing but continually almost
mentientes; belligerantes, sed civilia et iniusta bella agentes;
lying waging-war but civil and unjust wars waging
per patriam quidem fures magnopere insectantes et eos,
through the-fatherland indeed thieves greatly pursuing and those
qui secum ad mensam sedent, non solum amantes, sed
who with-them at table sit not only loving but
et munerantes, eleemosynas largiter dantes, sed e regione
also rewarding alms lavishly giving but on the-other-side
inmensum montem scelerum exaggerantes; in sede arbitraturi
an-immense mountain of-crimes heaping-up in the-seat about-to-judge
sedentes, sed raro recti iudicii regulam quaerentes; innoxios
sitting but rarely of-right judgment the-rule seeking the-harmless

humilesque despicientes, sanguinarios superbos parricidas
and-humble despising the-bloodthirsty the-proud parricides
commanipulares et adulteros dei inimicos, si sors, ut
comrades and adulterers of-God enemies if chance as
dicitur, tulerit, qui cum ipso nomine certatim delendi
is-said shall-have-brought who with the-very name eagerly to-be-destroyed
erant, ad sidera, prout possunt, efferentes; vinctos plures in
were to the-stars as they-can exalting the-bound many in
carceribus habentes, quos dolo sui potius quam merito
prisons having whom by-the-guile their rather than by-desert
proterunt catenis onerantes, inter altaria iurando demorantes
they-crush with-chains loading among the-altars by-swearing lingering
et haec eadem ac si lutulenta paulo post saxa despicientes.
and these same as if muddy a-little after stones despising
Cuius tam nefandi piaculi non ignarus est inmundae leaenae
of-which so unspeakable crime not ignorant is of-the-unclean lioness
Damnoniae tyrannicus catulus Constantinus. hoc anno,
of-Dumnonia the-tyrannical whelp Constantine this year
post horribile sacramentum iuramenti, quo se devinxit
after the-horrible sacrament of-the-oath by-which himself he-bound
nequaquam dolos civibus, deo primum iureque iurando,
by-no-means deceits to-the-citizens to-God first and-by-oath swearing
sanctorum demum choris et genetrice comitantibus fretis,
of-the-saints finally by-the-choirs and the-mother accompanying supported
facturum, in duarum venerandis matrum sinibus, ecclesiae
about-to-make in of-two venerable of-mothers the-bosoms of-the-church
carnalisque, sub sancti abbatis amphibalo, latera regiorum
and-of-the-fleshly under of-the-holy abbot the-cloak the-flanks of-royal
tenerrima puerorum vel praecordia crudeliter duum totidemque
most-tender boys or the-hearts cruelly of-two and-as-many
nutritorum — quorum brachia nequaquam armis, quae nullus
of-guardians of-whom the-arms by-no-means to-arms which no

paene hominum fortius hoc eis tempore tractabat, sed
almost of-men more-bravely at-this for-them time handled but
deo altarique protenta in die iudicii ad tuae civitatis
to-God and-to-the-altar stretched-out on the-day of-judgment at your of-the-city
portas, Christe, veneranda patientiae ac fidei suae vexilla
the-gates O-Christ venerable of-patience and of-faith their standards
suspendent — inter ipsa, ut dixi, sacrosancta altaria
shall-hang among the-very as I-have-said most-holy altars
nefando ense hastaque pro dentibus laceravit, ita ut
with-unspeakable sword and-spear for teeth he-tore so that
sacrificii caelestis sedem purpurea ac si coagulati cruoris
of-the-sacrifice heavenly the-seat purple as if of-clotted blood
pallia attingerent. et hoc ne post laudanda quidem merita
cloaks should-touch and this not after praiseworthy even merits
egit, nam multis ante annis crebris alternatisque faetoribus
did-he for many before years with-frequent and-alternating stenches
adulteriorum victus legitima uxore contra Christi magistrique
of-adulteries overcome (his)-lawful wife against of-Christ and-of-the-master
gentium interdictum depulsa dicentium: ‘quod Deus coniunxit,
of-the-gentiles prohibition driven-out saying what God has-joined
homo non separet’ et ‘viri, diligite uxores vestras’.
man not should-separate and O-men love wives your
amarissima enim quoddam de vite Sodomorum in cordis
the-most-bitter for a-certain from of-the-vine of-the-Sodomites in of-heart
sui infructuosa bono semini gleba surculamen incredulitatis
his unfruitful to-good seed the-clod a-shoot of-unbelief
et insipientiae plantaverat, quod vulgatis domesticisque
and of-folly he-had-planted which by-public and-domestic
impietatibus velut quibusdam venenatis imbribus irrigatum et
impieties as-if by-certain poisoned showers watered and
ad dei offensam avidius se erigens parricidii sacrilegiique
to of-God the-offense more-greedily itself raising of-parricide and-of-sacrilege

crimen produxit in medium. sed nec adhuc priorum
the-crime brought into the-open but not yet of-former
retibus malorum expeditus priscis recentia auget malis.
from-the-nets of-evils freed to-the-old new he-adds evils
Age iam (quasi praesentem arguo, quem adhuc superesse
come now as-if present I-accuse whom still to-survive
non nescio) quid stupes, animae carnifex propriae?
not I-am-unaware why are-you-stunned of-soul O-executioner your-own
quid tibi flammas inferni voluntarie accendis nequaquam
why for-yourself the-flames of-hell willingly do-you-kindle by-no-means
defecturas? quid inimicorum vice propriis te confodis
about-to-fail why of-the-enemies in-place-of with-your-own yourself do-you-stab
sponte ensibus hastis? an ne ipsa quidem virulenta
of-your-own-accord swords spears or not the-very even virulent
scelerum ac si pocula pectus tuum satiare quiverunt? respice,
of-crimes as if cups breast your to-satisfy have-been-able look-back
quaeso, et veni ad Christum, siquidem laboras et inmenso
I-beg and come to Christ since you-labor and by-immense
pondere curvaris, et ipse te, ut dixit, requiescere faciet; veni
weight you-are-bent and he you as he-said to-rest shall-make come
ad eum, qui non vult peccatoris mortem, sed ut convertatur
to him who not wishes of-the-sinner the-death but that he-turn
et vivat; dissolve secundum prophetam vincula colli tui, fili
and live loose according-to the-prophet the-chains of-neck your O-son
Sion; redi, rogo, e longinquis licet peccatorum recessibus
of-Zion return I-ask from far though of-sins recesses
ad piissimum patrem, qui despicienti porcorum sordidos
to the-most-loving father who to-him-despising of-the-swine the-filthy
cibos ac pertimescenti dirae famis mortem, et revertenti
foods and dreading of-dire famine the-death and returning
sibi laetus occidere consuevit vitulum filio saginatum
to-himself glad to-kill is-wont the-calf for-the-son fattened

et proferre primam erranti stolam et regium anulum,
and to-bring-out the-first for-the-wanderer robe and the-royal ring
et tum spei caelestis ac si saporem praegustans senties,
and then of-hope heavenly as if the-savor foretasting you-shall-feel
quam suavis est dominus. nam si haec contempseris,
how sweet is the-Lord for if these-things you-shall-have-despised
scias te inextricabilibus tenebrosisque ignium torrentibus
know yourself in-inextricable and-dark of-fires torrents
iam iamque inferni rotandum urendumque.
now just-now of-hell to-be-whirled and-to-be-burned
Quid tu quoque, ut propheta ait, catule leonine, Aureli Canine,
why you also as the-prophet says O-whelp of-the-lion Aurelius Caninus
agis? nonne eodem, quo supra dictus, si non exitiabiliore
do-you-do not by-the-same as above said if not more-destructive
parricidiorum fornicationum adulteriorumque caeno velut
of-parricides of-fornications and-of-adulteries by-the-mire as-if
quibusdam marinis irruentibus tibi voraris feraliter
by-certain sea rushing for-you you-are-devoured deadly
undis? nonne pacem patriae mortiferum ceu serpentem
by-waves not the-peace of-the-fatherland deadly as-if a-serpent
odiens civiliaque bella et crebras iniuste praedas sitiens
hating and-civil wars and frequent unjustly plunderings thirsting-for
animae tuae caelestis portas pacis ac refrigerii praecludis?
of-soul your of-heavenly the-gates of-peace and of-refreshment you-shut
relictus, quaeso, iam solus ac si arbor in medio campo
left I-beg now alone as if a-tree in the-middle of-a-field
arescens recordare patrum fratrumque tuorum supervacuam
withering remember of-fathers and-of-brothers your the-vain
fantasiam, iuvenilem inmaturamque mortem. num centennis
fantasy youthful and-untimely death is-it-that hundred-year-old
tu ob religiosa merita vel coaevus Mathusalae exceptus paene
you for religious merits or coeval of-Methuselah excepted almost

omni prole servaberis? nequaquam. sed nisi citius, ut
from-all offspring shall-you-be-preserved by-no-means but unless sooner as
psalmista ait, conversus fueris ad dominum, ensem
the-psalmist says turned you-shall-have-been to the-Lord the-sword
in te vibrabit in brevi suum rex ille, qui per prophetam
against you shall-brandish in short his that king who through the-prophet
'ego', inquit, 'occidam et ego vivere faciam; percutiam
I says shall-kill and I to-live shall-make I-shall-strike
et ego sanabo, et non est, qui de manu mea possit
and I shall-heal and not there-is who from hand my can
eruere'. quam ob rem 'excutere de faetido pulvere' tuo et
to-rescue for which reason shake-yourself from the-fetid dust your and
convertere ad eum toto corde, qui creavit te, ut cum
turn to him with-whole heart who created you so-that when
exarserit in brevi ira 'eius, beatus sis sperans in
shall-have-blazed in short the-wrath his blessed you-may-be hoping in
eum, sin alias, aeternae te manebunt poenae conterendum
him but-if otherwise eternal you shall-await punishments to-be-crushed
saeva continue et nequaquam absumendum tartari fauce'.
by-the-savage continually and by-no-means to-be-consumed of-Tartarus jaw
Quid tu quoque, pardo similis moribus et nequitiis
why you also to-a-leopard like in-morals and in-wickednesses
discolor, canescente iam capite, in throno dolis pleno et
spotted growing-white already the-head on a-throne of-guile full and
ab imis vertice tenus diversis parricidiis et adulteriis
from the-lowest to-the-crown as-far-as with-various parricides and adulteries
constuprato, boni regis nequam fili, ut Ezechiae Manasses,
defiled of-a-good king wicked O-son as of-Hezekiah Manasseh
Demetarum tyranne Vortipori, stupide riges? quid te
of-the-Demetae O-tyrant Vortipor stupidly are-you-stiff why you
tam violenti peccatorum gurgites, quos ut vinum optimum
so violent of-sins the-whirlpools which as wine best

sorbes, immo tu ab eis voraris, appropinquante sensim
you-drink-down or-rather you by them are-devoured approaching gradually
vitae limite non satiant? quid quasi culminis malorum
of-life the-limit not satisfy why as-if of-the-summit of-evils
omnium stupro, propria tua amota coniuge eiusdemque
all by-the-rape your-own your removed wife and-of-her-the-same
honesta morte, impudentis filiae quodam ineluctabili pondere
honorable death of-the-shameless daughter with-a-certain inescapable weight
miseram animam oneras? ne consumas, quaeso, dierum quod
wretched soul you-load not consume I-beg of-days what
reliquum est in dei offensam, quia nunc tempus acceptabile
remaining is for of-God the-offense because now the-time acceptable
et dies salutis vultibus paenitentium lucet, in quo bene
and the-day of-salvation on-the-faces of-the-penitent shines in which well
operari potes, ne fiat fuga tua hieme vel sabbato. 'diverte'
to-work you-can lest be flight your in-winter or on-the-sabbath turn-aside
secundum psalmistam 'a malo et fac bonum, inquire
according-to the-psalmist from evil and do good seek
pacem bonam et sequere eam, quia oculi domini super te
peace good and follow it because the-eyes of-the-Lord over you
bona agentem et aures eius erunt in preces tuas et non
good-things doing and the-ears his shall-be to prayers your and not
perdet de terra viventium memoriam tuam.' clamabis
he-shall-destroy from the-land of-the-living memory your you-shall-cry
et 'exaudiet te et ex omnibus tribulationibus tuis eruet
and he-shall-hear you and from all tribulations your shall-rescue
te.' cor siquidem contritum et humiliatum timore eius
you a-heart since contrite and humbled by-the-fear of-him
nusquam Christus spernit. alioquin vermis tortionis tuae
never Christ spurns otherwise the-worm of-torture your
non morietur et ignis ustionis tuae non extinguetur.
not shall-die and the-fire of-burning your not shall-be-extinguished

Ut quid in nequitiae tuae volveris vetusta faece et tu
to what in of-wickedness your are-you-rolled the-old dregs and you
ab adolescentiae annis, Urse multorum sessor aurigaque
from of-youth the-years O-Bear of-many the-rider and-charioteer
currus receptaculi Ursi, dei contemptor sortisque eius
of-the-chariot of-the-stronghold of-the-Bear of-God despiser and-of-lot his
depressor, Cuneglase, Romana lingua lanio fulve? quare
oppressor Cuneglasus in-the-Roman tongue O-butcher tawny why
tantum certamen tam hominibus quam deo praestas?
so-great a-contest as-much to-men as to-God do-you-offer
hominibus, civibus scilicet, armis specialibus, deo infinitis
to-men to-citizens namely with-arms special to-God with-infinite
sceleribus? quid praeter innumerabiles casus propria uxore
crimes why besides innumerable falls your-own wife
pulsa furciferam germanam eius, perpetuam deo viduitatis
driven-out the-gallows-worthy sister her perpetual to-God of-widowhood
castimoniam promittentem, ut poeta ait, summam ceu
chastity promising as the-poet says the-highest as-it-were
teneritudinem caelicolarum, tota animi veneratione, vel
tenderness of-the-heaven-dwellers with-whole of-mind veneration or
potius hebetudine nympharum contra interdictum apostoli
rather dullness of-the-nymphs against the-prohibition of-the-apostle
denegantis posse adulteros regni caelestis esse municipes,
denying to-be-able adulterers of-the-kingdom heavenly to-be citizens
suspicis? quid gemitus atque suspiria sanctorum propter
do-you-look-up-to why the-groans and sighs of-the-saints for
te corporaliter versantium, vice immanis leaenae dentium
you bodily dwelling in-place-of of-a-monstrous lioness of-the-teeth
ossa tua quandoque fracturae, crebris instigas iniuriis?
bones your sometime about-to-break with-frequent do-you-provoke injuries
Desine, quaeso, ut propheta ait, ab ira, et derelinque
cease I-beg as the-prophet says from wrath and forsake

exitiabilem ac temetipsum maceraturum, quem caelo ac
the-destructive and yourself about-to-waste whom to-heaven and
terrae, hoc est deo gregique eius, spiras, furorem. fac eos
to-earth that is to-God and-to-flock his you-breathe fury make them
potius mutatis pro te orare moribus, quibus suppetit supra
rather changed for you to-pray in-morals to-whom is-available above
mundum alligandi, cum in mundo reos alligaverint, et
the-world of-binding when in the-world the-guilty they-shall-have-bound and
solvendi, cum paenitentes solverint, potestas. noli, ut ait
of-loosing when the-penitent they-shall-have-loosed the-power do-not as says
apostolus, superbe sapere vel sperare in incerto divitiarum,
the-apostle proudly be-wise or hope in the-uncertainty of-riches
sed in deo, qui praestat tibi multa abunde, ut per
but in God who grants you many-things abundantly so-that through
emendationem morum thesaurizes tibi fundamentum
the-amendment of-morals you-may-treasure-up for-yourself a-foundation
bonum in futurum et habeas veram vitam, perennem
good for the-future and may-have true life perennial
profecto, non deciduam; alioquin scies et videbis etiam
surely not falling otherwise you-shall-know and you-shall-see even
in hoc saeculo, quam malum et amarum est reliquisse te
in this age how evil and bitter it-is to-have-forsaken you
dominum deum tuum et non esse timorem eius apud te
the-Lord God your and not to-be the-fear of-him with you
et in futuro taetro ignium globo aeternorum te exuri
and in the-future in-the-foul of-fires ball eternal you to-be-burned
nec tamen ullo modo mori. siquidem tam sceleratorum sint
nor yet in-any way to-die since as-much of-the-wicked are
perpeti immortales igni animae quam sanctorum laetitiae.'
perpetually immortal for-fire the-souls as of-the-saints for-joy

§§ 33–36

33–36 · MAGLOCUNUS

Gildas turns on Maglocunus, the dragon of the island, who killed his uncle the king and his soldiers, then vowed himself a monk only to return to his vomit. He has killed his wife and his nephew to marry the nephew's widow. Gildas sets the prophets against him, reminds him of his teacher, and warns that delay of repentance leads to Tartarus.

Quid tu enim, insularis draco, multorum tyrannorum
why you for O-island dragon of-many tyrants
depulsor tam regno quam etiam vita supra
the-expeller as-much from-kingdom as also from-life of-those-above
dictorum, novissime stilo, prime in malo, maior multis
said last in-pen first in evil greater than-many
potentia simulque malitia, largior in dando, profusior
in-power and-at-the-same-time in-malice more-generous in giving more-lavish
in peccato, robuste armis, sed animae fortior excidiis,
in sin robustly in-arms but of-the-soul stronger in-destructions
Maglocune, in tam vetusto scelerum atramento, veluti madidus
Maglocunus in so old of-crimes ink as-if soaked
vino de Sodomitana vite expresso, stolide volutaris? quare
with-wine from the-Sodomite vine pressed stupidly are-you-rolled why
tantas peccaminum regiae cervici sponte, ut ita
such of-sins to-the-royal neck of-your-own-accord as so
dicam, ineluctabiles, celsorum ceu montium, innectis moles?
I-may-say inescapable of-lofty as-if mountains do-you-bind masses
quid te non ei regum omnium regi, qui te cunctis
why yourself not to-him of-kings all the-king who you than-all
paene Brittanniae ducibus tam regno fecit quam status
almost of-Britain the-leaders as-much in-kingdom made as of-stature

liniamento editiorem, exhibes ceteris moribus meliorem,
in-outline more-lofty do-you-show than-the-others in-morals better
sed versa vice deteriorem? quorum indubitatam aequanimiter
but turned in-turn worse of-which undoubted calmly
conviciorum auscultato parumper adstipulationem, omissis
of-reproaches listen a-little-while the-attestation omitted
domesticis levioribusque, si tamen aliqua sunt levia, palata
the-domestic and-lighter if yet any are light-things the-published
solum longe lateque per auras admissa testaturam. nonne in
alone far and-wide through the-airs admitted about-to-testify not in
primis adolescentiae tuae annis avunclum regem cum fortissimis
the-first of-youth your years (your)-uncle the-king with the-bravest
propemodum militibus, quorum vultus non catulorum leonis
almost soldiers of-whom the-faces not of-whelps of-the-lion
in acie magnopere dispares visebantur, acerrime ense
in the-battle-line greatly unlike were-seen most-fiercely by-sword
hasta igni oppressisti? parum cogitans propheticum dictum:
by-spear by-fire you-crushed little thinking of-the-prophetic the-saying
'viri', inquiens, 'sanguinum et doli non dimidiabunt dies
O-men saying of-bloods and of-guile not shall-halve days
suos.' quid pro hoc solo retributionis a iusto iudice
their what for this alone of-retribution from the-just judge
sperares, etsi non talia sequerentur, quae secuta sunt,
would-you-hope even-if not such-things should-follow as followed have
itidem dicente per prophetam: 'vae tibi, qui praedaris,
likewise saying through the-prophet woe to-you who plunder
nonne et ipse praedaberis? et qui occidis, nonne et ipse
not also yourself shall-you-be-plundered and who kill not also yourself
occideris? et cum desineris praedari, tunc cades?'
shall-you-be-killed and when you-shall-have-ceased to-plunder then you-shall-fall

Nonne postquam tibi ex voto violenti regni fantasia
not after to-you from (your)-wish of-the-violent kingdom the-fantasy
cessit, cupiditate inlectus ad viam revertendi rectam, diebus
fell-out by-desire enticed to the-way of-returning right by-days
ac noctibus id temporis, conscientia forte peccaminum
and nights at-that of-time the-conscience perhaps of-sins
remordente, de deifico tenore monachorumque decretis sub
biting about the-godly course and-of-the-monks the-decrees under
dente primum multa ruminans, dein popularis aurae cognitioni
the-tooth first much chewing then of-the-popular breeze to-the-knowledge
proferens, monachum sine ullo infidelitatis, ut aiebas, respectu
bringing-forth a-monk without any of-unfaithfulness as you-said regard
coram omnipotente Deo, angelicis vultibus humanisque, ruptis,
before the-almighty God the-angelic faces and-human broken
ut putabatur, capacissimis illis, quibus praecipitanter involvi
as was-thought the-most-capacious those in-which headlong to-be-entangled
solent pingues tauri moduli tui, retibus, omnis regni
are-wont fat bulls of-the-pattern your by-the-nets of-all kingdom
auri argenti et quod his maius est, propriae voluntatis
of-gold of-silver and what than-these greater is of-your-own will
distentionibus ruptis, perpetuo vovisti et tete, ac si stridulo
by-the-distractions broken forever you-vowed and yourself as if with-a-shrill
cavum lapsu aerem valide secantem saevosque rapidi
hollow by-a-glide the-air strongly cutting and-the-savage of-the-swift
harpagones accipitris sinuosis flexibus vitantem ad sanctorum
the-grappling-hooks of-the-hawk in-winding turns avoiding to of-the-saints
tibi magnopere fidas speluncas refrigeriaque salubriter
to-you greatly trustworthy the-caves and-refreshments wholesomely
rapuisti ex corvo columbam? o quanta ecclesiae matri
you-snatched from a-raven a-dove O how-great for-the-church mother
laetitia, si non te cunctorum mortalium hostis de sinu
joy if not you of-all mortals the-enemy from the-bosom

quodammodo eius lugubriter abstraxisset, foret! o quam
in-a-way her mournfully had-drawn-away it-would-be O how
profusus spei caelestis fomes desperatorum cordibus, te in
lavish of-hope heavenly the-kindling of-the-desperate in-the-hearts you in
bonis permanente, inardesceret! o qualia quantaque animam
good-things remaining would-blaze-up O what-kind and-how-great soul
tuam regni Christi praemia in die iudicii manerent,
your of-the-kingdom of-Christ rewards on the-day of-judgment would-await
si non lupus callidus ille agnum ex lupo factum te ab ovili
if not the-wolf cunning that the-lamb from a-wolf made you from the-fold
dominico, non vehementer invitum, facturus lupum ex agno
of-the-Lord's not greatly unwilling about-to-make a-wolf from a-lamb
sibi similem, rapuisset! o quantam exultationem pio
to-himself like had-snatched O how-great exultation to-the-holy
omnium patri deo sanctorum tua salus servanda praestaret, si
of-all father God of-the-saints your salvation to-be-kept would-afford if
non te cunctorum perditorum infaustus pater, veluti magnarum
not you of-all the-lost the-ill-starred father as-if of-great
aquila alarum unguiumque daemon, infelici filiorum suorum
an-eagle wings and-claws the-demon to-the-unhappy of-sons his
agmini contra ius fasque rapuisset! ne multa, tantum gaudii
column against right and-law had-snatched not much so-much of-joy
ac suavitatis tum caelo terraeque tua ad bonam frugem
and of-sweetness then to-heaven and-to-earth your to good fruit
conversio, quantum nunc maeroris ac luctus ministravit
conversion as-much-as now of-sorrow and of-mourning has-furnished
ad horribilem, more molossi aegri, vomitum nefanda
to the-horrible in-the-manner of-a-mastiff sick vomit the-unspeakable
reversio. qua peracta exhibentur membra arma iniquitatis
return which done are-shown the-limbs weapons of-iniquity
peccato ac diabolo, quae oportuerat salvo sensu avide exhiberi
to-sin and to-the-devil which it-behooved safe the-sense greedily to-be-shown

arma iustitiae deo. arrecto aurium auscultantur captu
weapons of-justice to-God with-the-raised of-the-ears are-listened-to capacity
non dei laudes canora Christi tironum voce suaviter
not of-God the-praises by-the-melodious of-Christ of-the-recruits voice sweetly
modulante neumaque ecclesiasticae melodiae, sed propriae,
modulating and-the-neum of-church melody but your-own
quae nihil sunt, furciferorum referto mendaciis simulque
which nothing are of-the-gallows-birds filled with-lies and-at-the-same-time
spumanti flegmate proximos quosque roscidaturo, praeconum
with-foaming phlegm the-neighbors all about-to-bedew of-the-heralds
ore ritu bacchantium concrepante, ita ut vas,
by-the-mouth in-the-rite of-bacchants resounding so that the-vessel
dei quondam in ministerio praeparatum vertatur in zabuli
of-God once in the-ministry prepared is-turned into of-the-devil
organum, quodque honore caelesti putabatur dignum, merito
an-organ and-what by-honor heavenly was-thought worthy deservedly
proiciatur in tartari barathrum.
is-cast into of-Tartarus the-abyss
Nec tamen tantis malorum offendiculis tuus hebetatus
nor yet by-such of-evils stumbling-blocks your dulled
insipientiae cumulo sensus velut quodam obice tardatur, sed
of-folly by-the-heap sense as-if by-a-certain barrier is-slowed but
fervidus ac si pullus, amoena quaeque inperagrata putans,
fiery as if a-colt pleasant all-things untraversed thinking
per extensos scelerum campos inrevocabili furore raptatur,
through the-extended of-crimes fields by-unrecallable fury is-swept-along
augendo priscis nova piaculis. spernuntur namque primae post
by-adding to-the-old new crimes are-spurned for the-first after
monachi votum inritum inlicitae licet, tamen propriae coniugis
of-the-monk the-vow void unlawful though yet your-own of-wife
praesumptivae nuptiae, aliae expetuntur non cuiuslibet relictae,
presumptuous nuptials another are-sought not of-any-man left

sed viri viventis, non externi, sed fratris filii adamatae.
but of-a-man living not a-stranger but of-the-brother of-the-son beloved
ob quod dura cervix illa, multis iam peccaminum fascibus
for which hard neck that by-many already of-sins with-bundles
onerata, bino parricidali ausu, occidendo supra dictum
loaded by-twofold parricidal daring by-killing above said
uxoremque tuam aliquamdiu a te habitam velut summo
and-the-wife your for-some-time by you had as-if by-the-highest
sacrilegii tui culmine de imis ad inferiora curvatur. dehinc
of-sacrilege your summit from the-lowest to the-lower is-bent thereafter
illam, cuius dudum colludio ac suggestione tantae sunt
her by-whose long-since collusion and suggestion so-great have-been
peccatorum subitae moles, publico et, ut fallaces parasitorum
of-sins undergone masses publicly and as the-false of-the-parasites
linguae tuorum conclamant, summis tamen labiis, non
tongues your cry-out with-the-highest yet lips not
ex intimo cordis, legitimo, utpote viduatam, nostrae vero
from the-inmost heart lawful as widowed ours but
sceleratissimo adscivisti conubio. cuius igitur sancti viscera
most-criminal you-took marriage of-which therefore holy-man the-bowels
tali stimulata historia non statim in fletus singultusque
by-such stirred story not at-once into weeping and-sobs
prorumpant? quis sacerdos, cuius cor rectum deo patet, non
burst-forth what priest whose heart right to-God lies-open not
statim haec audiens magno cum ululatu illud propheticum
at-once these-things hearing with-great with wailing that prophetic
dicat: ‘quis dabit capiti meo aquam et oculis meis fontem
may-say who shall-give to-head my water and to-eyes my a-fountain
lacrimarum? et plorabo in die et nocte interfectos populi
of-tears and I-shall-weep by day and night the-slain of-people
mei’. heu! siquidem parum auribus captasti propheticam
my alas since little with-ears you-caught the-prophetic

obiurgationem ita dicentem: 'vae vobis, viri impii, qui
rebuke so saying woe to-you O-men impious who
dereliquistis legem dei altissimi: et si nati fueritis,
have-forsaken the-law of-God most-high and if born you-shall-have-been
in maledictionem nascemini et si mortui fueritis,
into a-curse you-shall-be-born and if dead you-shall-have-been
in maledictionem erit pars vestra. omnia quae de terra
into a-curse shall-be portion your all-things which from earth
sunt, in terram ibunt: sic impii a maledictione in
are into earth shall-go so the-impious from a-curse into
perditionem'. subauditur, si non revertantur ad deum exaudita
perdition it-is-understood if not they-return to God heard
saltim tali admonitione: 'fili, peccasti. ne adicias ultra,
at-least such an-admonition O-son you-have-sinned do-not add further
sed et de pristinis tuis deprecare'; et iterum: 'non tardes
but also for former-ones your entreat and again not delay
converti ad dominum neque differas de die in diem. subito
to-be-turned to the-Lord nor put-off from day to day suddenly
enim venit ira eius', quia, ut scriptura ait, 'rege audiente
for comes the-wrath his because as scripture says a-king hearing
verbum iniquum omnes, qui sub illo sunt, scelesti sunt'.
a-word unjust all who under him are wicked are
nimirum 'rex', ut propheta dixit, 'iustus suscitat regionem'.
surely a-king as the-prophet said just raises-up the-region
Sed monita tibi profecto non desunt, tum habueris
but admonitions to-you surely not are-lacking then you-had
praeceptorem paene totius Britanniae magistrum elegantem.
as-a-preceptor of-almost all Britain the-master elegant
caveto igitur, ne tibi, quod a Salomone notatur, accidat:
beware therefore lest to-you what by Solomon is-noted happen
'quasi qui excitat dormitantem de gravi somno, sic qui
as one-who rouses a-sleeper from heavy sleep so he-who

enarrat stulto sapientiam: in fine enim narrationis dicet:
tells to-a-fool wisdom at the-end for of-the-telling he-shall-say
quid primum dixeras'? 'lava a malitia cor tuum, sicut
what first had-you-said wash from malice heart your as
dictum est, Hierusalem, ut salvus sis'. ne contemnas,
said it-is O-Jerusalem that saved you-may-be not despise
quaeso, ineffabilem misericordiam dei, hoc modo per
I-beg the-ineffable mercy of-God in-this way through
prophetam a peccatis impios provocantis: 'repente loquar
the-prophet from sins the-impious calling suddenly I-shall-speak
ad gentem et ad regnum, ut evellam et dissipem et
to a-nation and to a-kingdom that I-may-pluck-up and scatter and
destruam et disperdam'. peccatorem hoc vehementer ad
destroy and ruin the-sinner this vehemently to
paenitentiam hortatur: 'et si paenitentiam egerit gens illa
penitence exhorts and if penitence shall-have-done nation that
a peccato suo, paenitentiam et ego agam super malo, quod
from sin its penitence also I shall-do over the-evil which
locutus sum, ut facerem ei'. et iterum: 'quis dabit eis tale
spoken I-have that I-should-do to-it and again who shall-give them such
cor, ut audiant me et custodiant praecepta mea et bene
a-heart that they-may-hear me and keep precepts my and well
sit eis omnibus diebus vitae suae?' itemque in cantico
it-may-be for-them all days of-life their and-likewise in the-song
deuteronomii: 'populus', inquit, 'absque consilio et prudentia:
of-Deuteronomy a-people he-says without counsel and prudence
utinam saperent et intellegerent ac novissima providerent,
would-that they-were-wise and understood and the-last-things foresaw
quomodo persequatur unus mille et duo fugent decem
how pursue one a-thousand and two put-to-flight ten
milia'. et iterum in euangelio dominus: 'venite ad me omnes,
thousand and again in the-gospel the-Lord come to me all

qui laboratis et onerati estis, et ego vos requiescere faciam.
who labor and burdened are and I you to-rest shall-make
tollite iugum meum super vos et discite a me, quia
take yoke my upon you and learn from me because
mitis sum et humilis corde, et invenietis requiem animabus
gentle I-am and humble in-heart and you-shall-find rest for-souls
vestris'. nam si haec surdis auribus audias, prophetas
your for if these-things with-deaf ears you-hear the-prophets
contemnas, Christum despicias, nosque, licet vilissimae
you-despise Christ you-scorn and-us though of-most-worthless
qualitatis simus, nullius momenti ducas, propheticum illud
quality we-be of-no weight you-reckon prophetic that
sincera animi pietate servantes utcumque: 'si non ego
with-sincere of-mind piety keeping somehow if not I
implevero fortitudinem in spiritu et virtute domini', ut
shall-fill strength in the-spirit and power of-the-Lord that
'enuntiem domui Iacob peccata eorum et domui Israhel
I-may-declare to-the-house of-Jacob the-sins their and to-the-house of-Israel
scelera eorum', ne simus 'canes muti non valentes latrare'.
the-crimes their lest we-be dogs dumb not able to-bark
et illud Salomonis ita dicentis: 'qui dicit impium iustum
and that of-Solomon so saying who says the-impious just
esse, maledictus erit populis et odibilis gentibus: nam
to-be accursed shall-be to-peoples and hateful to-nations for
qui arguunt, meliora sperabunt'. et iterum: 'non reverearis
who reprove better-things shall-hope and again not stand-in-awe-of
proximum in casum suum, nec retineas verbum in tempore
(your)-neighbor to fall his nor hold-back a-word in the-time
salutis'. itemque: 'erue eos, qui ducuntur ad mortem, et
of-salvation and-likewise rescue those who are-led to death and
redimere eos qui interficiuntur ne parcas', quia 'non
to-redeem those who are-killed do-not spare because not

proderunt', ut idem propheta ait, 'divitiae in die irae:
shall-profit as the-same prophet says riches on the-day of-wrath
iustitia a morte liberat'. 'si iustus quidem vix salvus sit,
justice from death frees if the-just indeed scarcely saved be
impius et peccator ubi parebit?' ille profecto te tenebrosus
the-impious and the-sinner where shall-appear he surely you the-dark
tartari torrens ferali rotatu undisque ac si acerrimis
of-Tartarus torrent with-deadly whirling and-waves as if most-fierce
involvet semper cruciaturus et numquam consumpturus,
shall-wrap always about-to-torment and never about-to-consume
cui tunc erit sera inutilisque poenae oculata cognitio
to-whom then shall-be late and-useless of-punishment eyewitness knowledge
ac mali paenitudo, a quo in hoc tempore accepto et die
and of-evil repentance by whom in this time acceptable and day
salutis ad rectum vitae iter differtur conversio.
of-salvation to the-right of-life way is-put-off conversion

§§ 37–38

37–38 · THE PROPHETS AGAINST THE KINGS

Gildas could stop here, but lets the prophets speak against the kings, so none may say the threats are his. Samuel rebukes Saul for disobeying a command, not for adultery or parricide, and takes the kingdom from him; obedience is better than sacrifice, and to refuse it is idolatry, which the tyrants commit when they trample Christ's pearls.

Hic sane vel antea concludenda erat, uti ne amplius loqueretur
here indeed or before to-be-concluded it-was so-that not further should-speak
os nostrum opera hominum, tam flebilis haec querulaque
mouth our the-works of-men so lamentable this and-complaining
malorum aevi huius historia. sed ne formidolosos nos aut lassos
of-the-evils of-age this history but lest fearful us or weary

putent, quominus illud Isaianum infatigabiliter caveamus: 'vae',
they-think so-that-not that of-Isaiah untiringly we-beware-of woe
inquiens, 'qui dicit bonum malum et malum bonum, ponentes
saying who says good evil and evil good putting
tenebras in lucem et lucem in tenebras, amarum in dulce
darkness for light and light for darkness bitter for sweet
et dulce in amarum', 'qui videntes non vident et audientes
and sweet for bitter who seeing not see and hearing
non audiunt', 'quorum cor crassa obtegitur quadam vitiorum
not hear whose heart thick is-covered by-a-certain of-vices
nube', libet quid quantumque his supradictis lascivientibus
cloud it-pleases what and-how-great to-these above-said wanton
insanisque satellitum Faraonis, quibus eius periturus mari
and-mad satellites of-Pharaoh by-whom his about-to-perish in-the-sea
provocatur exercitus strenue rubro, eorumque similibus quinque
is-provoked army vigorously Red and-to-their likes five
equis minarum prophetica inclamitent strictim edicere oracula,
to-horses of-threats prophetic may-cry-out briefly to-declare the-oracles
quibus veluti pulchro tegmine opusculi nostri molimen,
by-which as-if by-a-beautiful covering of-work our the-structure
ita ut ne certatim irruituris invidorum imbribus extet
so that not eagerly about-to-rush-in of-the-envious to-the-rains it-stand-out
penetrabile, fidissime contegatur. respondeant itaque pro
penetrable most-faithfully it-may-be-covered let-answer and-so for
nobis sancti vates nunc ut ante, qui os quodam modo
us the-holy seers now as before who the-mouth in-a-certain way
dei organumque spiritus sancti, mortalibus prohibentes
of-God and-the-organ of-the-spirit holy to-mortals forbidding
mala, bonis faventes extitere, contumacibus superbisque
evil-things to-good-things favoring stood-forth to-the-obstinate and-proud
huius aetatis principibus, ne dicant nos propria adinventione
of-this age princes lest they-say us by-our-own invention

et loquaci tantum temeritate tales minas eis tantosque
and by-talkative only rashness such threats on-them and-so-great
terrores incutere. nulli namque sapientium dubium est, in
terrors to-strike to-none for of-the-wise doubtful it-is in
quantis graviora sunt peccata huius temporis quam primi,
how-much heavier are the-sins of-this time than of-the-first
apostolo dicente: 'legem quis transgrediens duobus mediis
the-apostle saying the-law anyone transgressing by-two mediating
vel tribus testibus moritur: quanto putatis deteriora
or three witnesses dies by-how-much do-you-think worse
mereri supplicia, qui filium dei conculcaverit?'
to-deserve punishments he-who the-son of-God shall-have-trodden-down
En primus occurrit nobis Samuel iussu dei legitimi regni
lo first meets us Samuel by-order of-God of-the-lawful kingdom
stabilitor, deo antequam nasceretur dedicatus, a Dan
the-establisher to-God before he-was-born dedicated from Dan
usque Bersabee omni populo Israhel veridicus propheta,
all-the-way-to Beersheba to-all the-people of-Israel truth-telling prophet
signis indubitanter admirandis notus, ex cuius ore spiritus
by-signs undoubtedly admirable known from whose mouth the-spirit
sanctus cunctis mundi potestatibus intonuit, denuntiando
holy to-all of-the-world the-powers thundered by-announcing
primo regi apud Hebraeos dumtaxat Sauli pro eo, quod
to-the-first king among the-Hebrews namely to-Saul for that that
quaedam de mandatis domini non compleverat, dicens: 'stulte
certain-things of the-commands of-the-Lord not he-had-fulfilled saying foolishly
egisti nec custodisti mandata domini dei tui, quae
you-have-acted nor you-have-kept the-commands of-the-Lord God your which
praecepit tibi. quod si non fecisses, iam nunc pararet
he-commanded you for if not you-had-done already now would-prepare
deus regnum tuum super Israhel in sempiternum: sed
God kingdom your over Israel in perpetuity but

nequaquam regnum tuum ultra consurget'. quid ergo simile
by-no-means kingdom your further shall-rise what therefore like
huius temporis sceleribus? adulteriumne vel parricidium fecit?
of-this time to-the-crimes adultery or parricide did-he-do
nullo modo. sed iussionis ex parte mutationem, quia, ut
in-no way but of-the-command in part a-change because as
bene quidam nostrum ait, non agitur de qualitate peccati,
well a-certain-one of-us says not it-is-treated about the-quality of-the-sin
sed de transgressione mandati. itemque illum obiecta, velut
but about the-transgression of-the-command and-likewise him the-charges as-if
putabat, purgantem et apologias, ut generi humano moris
he-thought clearing and apologies as to-the-race human the-custom
est, sagaciter hoc modo adnectentem: 'immo audivi vocem
is shrewdly in-this way adding rather I-heard the-voice
domini et ambulavi in via, per quam misit me', tali
of-the-Lord and I-walked in the-way by which he-sent me with-such
animadversione multavit. 'numquid vult', inquit, 'dominus
punishment he-fined is-it-that wishes he-says the-Lord
holocausta aut victimas et non potius, ut oboediatur voci
burnt-offerings or victims and not rather that one-obey the-voice
domini? melior est enim oboedientia quam victimae, et audire
of-the-Lord better is for obedience than victims and to-hear
magis quam offerre adipem arietum, quoniam sicut peccatum
more than to-offer the-fat of-rams since as the-sin
ariolandi est repugnare et quasi scelus idolatriae nolle
of-divination it-is to-resist and as-if the-crime of-idolatry to-be-unwilling
adquiescere. pro eo ergo, quod abiecisti sermonem domini,
to-acquiesce for that therefore that you-have-rejected the-word of-the-Lord
abiecit et te, ne sis rex'. et post pauca: 'scidit', inquit,
he-has-rejected also you lest you-be king and after a-few-words has-torn he-says
'deus regnum Israhel a te hodie et dedit illud proximo
God the-kingdom of-Israel from you today and has-given it to-neighbor

tuo meliori te. porro triumphator in Israhel non parcet et
your better than-you moreover the-triumpher in Israel not shall-spare and
paenitudine non flectetur, neque enim homo est, ut agat
by-repentance not shall-be-bent nor for a-man is-he that he-should-do
paenitentiam'; subauditur: super duris malorum praecordiis.
penitence it-is-understood over the-hard of-the-wicked hearts
notandum ergo est, quod dixit scelus idolatriae esse nolle
to-be-noted therefore it-is that he-said the-crime of-idolatry to-be to-be-unwilling
deo adquiescere. non sibi scelerati isti, dum non gentium
to-God to-acquiesce not to-themselves the-wicked those while not of-the-gentiles
diis perspicue litant, subplaudant, siquidem conculcantes
to-the-gods openly they-sacrifice should-applaud since trampling
porcorum more pretiosissimas Christi margaritas, idolatrae.
in-the-manner of-swine the-most-precious of-Christ pearls idolaters

§§ 39–43

39–43 · KINGS PUNISHED IN SCRIPTURE

Gildas adds examples: David numbering the people and the plague, Solomon's divided kingdom, the threats against Jeroboam, Baasha, and Ahab, Azariah's warning to Asa, Jehu's to Jehoshaphat, Elijah's to Joram, and Zechariah's to Joash. Isaiah calls the princes rulers of Sodom, refuses their sacrifices and bloody hands, promises cleansing if they repent, and then denounces bribed judges and drunken revelers.

Sed licet hoc unum exemplum, ac si invictus adstipulator,
but although this one example as if an-unconquered supporter
ad corrigendos iniquos abunde sufficeret, tamen, ut in ore
for correcting the-wicked abundantly would-suffice yet that in the-mouth
multorum testium omne comprobetur Brittanniae malum,
of-many witnesses all may-be-proved of-Britain the-evil
transeamus ad cetera. quid David numerando populum evenit?
let-us-pass to the-rest what to-David by-numbering the-people happened

dicente ad eum propheta Gaad: 'haec dicit dominus: trium
saying to him the-prophet Gad these-things says the-Lord of-three
tibi optio datur: elige unum quod volueris ex his ut faciam
to-you a-choice is-given choose one which you-wish of these that I-may-do
tibi. aut septem annis veniet tibi fames, aut tribus mensibus
to-you either for-seven years shall-come to-you famine or for-three months
fugies adversarios tuos et illi te persequentur, aut certe
you-shall-flee enemies your and they you shall-pursue or surely
tribus diebus erit pestilentia in terra tua. nam artatus tali
for-three days shall-be pestilence in land your for constrained by-such
condicione et volens magis incidere in manus misericordis
a-condition and wishing rather to-fall into the-hands of-the-merciful
dei quam hominum, LXX milium populi sui strage
God than of-men by-seventy of-thousands of-people his by-the-slaughter
humiliatur et, ni pro contribulibus apostolicae caritatis
is-humbled and unless for his-fellow-tribesmen of-apostolic love
affectu ut illos plaga non tangeret mori optasset
with-the-feeling that them the-plague not should-touch to-die he-had-chosen
dicendo: ego sum qui peccavi, ego pastor inique egi: isti
by-saying I am who have-sinned I the-shepherd wickedly have-acted these
qui oves sunt quid peccarunt? vertatur, obsecro, manus tua
who sheep are what have-they-sinned let-be-turned I-beseech hand your
contra me et contra domum patris mei', inconsideratam cordis
against me and against the-house of-father my the-thoughtless of-heart
elationem propria morte piaret. nam quid scriptura in
pride by-his-own death he-would-have-atoned for what scripture in
consequentibus de filio eius narrat? 'fecit', inquiens, 'Salomon
the-following about son his relates did he-says Solomon
quod non placuerat coram domino et non adimplevit. ut
what not had-pleased before the-Lord and not fulfilled that
sequeretur dominum, sicut pater eius'. 'dixit dominus ad
he-should-follow the-Lord as father his said the-Lord to

eum: quia habuisti hoc apud te et non custodisti pactum
him because you-have-had this with you and not you-have-kept covenant
meum et praecepta mea quae mandavi tibi, disrumpens
my and precepts my which I-commanded you breaking
scindam regnum tuum et dabo illud servo tuo'.
I-shall-tear kingdom your and I-shall-give it to-servant your
Quid duobus sacrilegis, aeque ut isti sunt, Israhel regibus
what to-two sacrilegious as-much as these are of-Israel kings
Hieroboae et Baasae accidit, audite: quibus sententia
Jeroboam and Baasha happened hear to-whom the-sentence
domini dirigitur per prophetam ita dicentis: 'propter quod
of-the-Lord is-directed through the-prophet so saying for that
magnificavi te principem super Israhel, quia exacerbaverunt
I-magnified you a-prince over Israel because they-have-exasperated
me in vanis eorum, ecce ego suscito post Baasam et post
me in vanities their behold I raise-up after Baasha and after
domum eius et tradam domum eius sicut domum Ieroboae
house his and I-shall-make house his as the-house of-Jeroboam
Nabath. qui mortuus fuerit de suis in civitate, comedent
of-Nebat who dead shall-have-been of his in the-city shall-eat
eum canes et mortuum corpus illius in campo comedent
him the-dogs and the-dead body of-him in the-field shall-eat
volatilia caeli'. quid illi quoque scelerato regi Israhel istorum
the-birds of-the-sky what to-that also wicked king of-Israel of-these
conmanipulari, cuius colludio et uxoris dolo Naboth
the-comrade by-whose collusion and of-the-wife by-the-guile Naboth
innocens propter paternam vineam oppressus est, sancto
innocent for of-his-father vineyard crushed was by-the-holy
ore illius Heliae atque ignifero domini alloquio instructo
mouth of-that Elijah and by-the-fiery of-the-Lord address instructed
minatur, ita dicente: 'occidisti insuper et possedisti.
he-threatens so saying you-have-killed moreover and you-have-taken-possession

et post haec addes: haec dicit dominus: in loco hoc,
and after these-things you-shall-add these-things says the-Lord in place this
in quo linxerunt canes sanguinem Naboth, lambent quoque
in which have-licked the-dogs the-blood of-Naboth shall-lap also
tuum sanguinem'. quod ita factum fuisse certissima ratione
your blood which so done to-have-been by-most-sure reason
cognitum est. sed ne forte secundum supra dictum Achab
known is but lest perhaps according-to the-above said Ahab
'spiritus mendax loquens vana in ore prophetarum
the-spirit lying speaking vain-things in the-mouth of-prophets
vestrorum' seducat vos, ne sermones Michae prophetae
your seduce you lest the-words of-Micah the-prophet
audiatis, 'ecce permisit deus spiritum mendacii in ore
you-hear behold has-permitted God a-spirit of-lying in the-mouth
omnium prophetarum tuorum qui hic sunt et dominus
of-all prophets your who here are and the-Lord
locutus est contra te malum'. nam et nunc certum est aliquos
spoken has against you evil for also now certain it-is some
esse doctores contrario spiritu repletos et magis pravam
to-be teachers with-contrary spirit filled and more depraved
voluptatem quam veritatem adserentes: quorum 'verba super
pleasure than truth asserting whose words above
oleum molliuntur et ipsa sunt iacula', 'qui dicunt: pax, pax,
oil are-softened and they are darts who say peace peace
et non erit' in peccatis permanentibus 'pax', ut alibi
and not there-shall-be in sins remaining peace as elsewhere
propheta dicit: 'non est gaudere inpiis, dicit dominus'.
the-prophet says not it-is(-given) to-rejoice to-the-impious says the-Lord
Azarias quoque filius Obed Asae revertenti de caede
Azariah also son of-Obed to-Asa returning from the-slaughter
decies centenum milium exercitus Aethiopum locutus est
ten-times of-a-hundred thousands of-the-army of-the-Ethiopians spoken has

dicens: ‘dominus vobiscum est, dum estis cum ipso et si
saying the-Lord with-you is while you-are with him and if
exquisieritis eum, invenietur a vobis et si dereliqueritis
you-shall-have-sought him he-shall-be-found by you and if you-shall-have-forsaken
eum, derelinquet vos’. nam si Iosaphat ferens praesidium
him he-shall-forsake you for if Jehoshaphat bringing help
iniquo regi ita ab Ieu propheta Annaniae filio increpatur
to-a-wicked king so by Jehu the-prophet of-Hanani the-son is-rebuked
dicente: ‘si peccatorem tu adiuvas aut quem dominus odit
saying if the-sinner you help or whom the-Lord hates
tu diligis, propterea ira dei est super te’, quid illis,
you love therefore the-wrath of-God is upon you what to-those
qui propriis scelerum suorum criniculis compediuntur, fiet?
who by-their-own of-crimes their little-hairs are-fettered shall-be
quorum nos necesse est, si in acie dominica volumus
of-whom we necessary it-is if in the-battle-line of-the-Lord we-wish
dimicare, peccata odire, non animas, dicente psalmista, ‘qui
to-fight the-sins to-hate not the-souls saying the-psalmist who
diligitis dominum, odite malum’. quid ad supradicti Iosaphat
love the-Lord hate evil what to of-above-said Jehoshaphat
filium currus et auriga Israhel propheta Helias, Ioram
the-son the-chariot and charioteer of-Israel the-prophet Elijah to-Joram
scilicet parricidam, qui egregios fratres suos, ut pro ipsis
namely the-parricide who outstanding brothers his that in-place-of them
regnaret spurius, trucidavit, effatus est? ‘sic dicit’, inquit,
he-might-reign the-bastard slaughtered declared has thus says he-says
‘dominus deus patris tui David: eo quod non ambulaveris
the-Lord God of-father your David for-that that not you-have-walked
in via Iosaphat patris tui et in viis Asae regis Iuda
in the-way of-Jehoshaphat father your and in the-ways of-Asa king of-Judah
et ambulasti in viis regum Israel et stuprose, ut gessit
and you-have-walked in the-ways of-the-kings of-Israel and lewdly as did

domus Achab, et fratres tuos filios Iosaphat meliores te
the-house of-Ahab and the-brothers your the-sons of-Jehoshaphat better than-you
interfecisti, ecce dominus percutiet plaga magna te et
you-have-killed behold the-Lord shall-strike with-a-plague great you and
filios tuos'. et post pauca: 'et tu eris in magna valitudine
sons your and after a-few-words and you shall-be in great illness
in languore ventris tui, donec exeat venter tuus cum ipsa
in the-sickness of-belly your until come-out belly your with the-very
infirmitate de die ex die'. et ad Ioam regem Israhel ut vos
infirmity from day to day and to Joash king of-Israel as you
derelinquentem dominum quid Zacharias filius Ioiadae vatis
forsaking the-Lord what Zechariah son of-Jehoiada the-seer
minatus sit, adtendite, qui surgens populo dixit: 'haec
threatened has attend who rising to-the-people said these-things
dicit dominus: quare praeteritis praecepta domini et non
says the-Lord why do-you-pass-by the-precepts of-the-Lord and not
prosperamini? quia dereliquistis dominum, et derelinquet vos'.
prosper because you-have-forsaken the-Lord and he-shall-forsake you
Quid de auctore prophetarum Esaia dicam? qui prooemium
what about the-author of-the-prophets Isaiah shall-I-say who the-proem
profetiae suae vel visionem ita exorsus est dicens: 'audite,
of-prophecy his or vision so begun has saying hear
caeli, et auribus percipite, terra, quoniam dominus locutus
O-heavens and with-ears perceive O-earth since the-Lord spoken
est. filios enutrivi et exaltavi, ipsi autem spreverunt me.
has sons I-have-nourished and exalted they but have-scorned me
cognovit bos possessorem suum et asinus praesepe domini
has-known the-ox owner his and the-ass the-manger of-lord
sui, Israhel autem me non cognovit et populus meus
his Israel but me not has-known and people my
non intellexit'. et post pauca minas meritas tantae
not has-understood and after a-few-words the-threats deserved of-so-great

insipientiae aptans: 'derelinquetur', inquit, 'filia Sion ut
folly fitting shall-be-left he-says the-daughter of-Zion as
tabernaculum in vinea et sicut tugurium in cucumerario,
a-tent in a-vineyard and as a-hut in a-cucumber-garden
sicut civitas quae vastatur'. et principes specialiter conveniens
as a-city which is-laid-waste and to-the-princes especially fitting
ait: 'audite verbum domini, principes Sodomorum; percipite
he-says hear the-word of-the-Lord O-princes of-Sodom perceive
legem domini, populus Gomorrhae'. notandum sane, quod
the-law of-the-Lord O-people of-Gomorrah to-be-noted indeed that
iniqui reges principes Sodomorum vocentur. prohibens namque
wicked kings princes of-Sodom are-called forbidding for
dominus sacrificia et dona sibi a talibus offerri, et
the-Lord sacrifices and gifts to-himself by such to-be-offered and
nos inhiantes suscipimus quae deo ab omni natione sunt
we gaping receive what to-God from every nation are
non placita, eademque egenis et paene nihil habentibus
not pleasing and-the-same to-the-needy and almost nothing having
distribui in perniciem nostram non sinimus, cum latis
to-be-distributed to ruin our not we-allow since broad
divitiis oneratis, sordibus peccatorum intentis ait: 'ne
riches loaded with-the-filth of-sins intent he-says not
offeratis ultra sacrificium frustra; incensum abominatio
offer further sacrifice in-vain incense an-abomination
est mihi'. itemque denuntiat: 'et cum extenderitis
is to-me and-likewise he-announces and when you-shall-have-stretched-out
manus vestras, avertam oculos meos a vobis, et cum
hands your I-shall-turn-away eyes my from you and when
multiplicaveritis orationem, non exaudiam'. et hoc quare
you-shall-have-multiplied prayer not I-shall-hear and this why
facit ostendit: 'manus', inquiens, 'vestrae sanguine plenae
he-does he-shows the-hands saying your of-blood full

sunt'. simulque ostendens, quomodo placaretur,
are and-at-the-same-time showing how he-might-be-appeased
ait: 'lavamini, mundi estote, auferte malum cogitationum
he-says wash-yourselves clean be take-away the-evil of-thoughts
vestrarum ab oculis meis, quiescite agere perverse, discite
your from eyes my cease to-act perversely learn
benefacere, quaerite iudicium, subvenite oppresso, iudicate
to-do-good seek judgment help the-oppressed judge
pupillo'. quasi placoris vicissitudinem adiungens ait: 'si
for-the-orphan as-if of-appeasement the-exchange adding he-says if
fuerint peccata vestra ut coccinum, quasi nix dealbabuntur:
shall-have-been sins your as scarlet as snow they-shall-be-whitened
et si fuerint rubra quasi vermiculus, velut lana alba
and if they-shall-have-been red as crimson as wool white
erunt. si volueritis et audieritis me, bona
they-shall-be if you-shall-have-been-willing and you-shall-have-heard me the-good-things
terrae manducabitis. quod si nolueritis et me
of-the-land you-shall-eat but if you-shall-have-been-unwilling and me
provocaveritis ad iracundiam, gladius devorabit vos'.
you-shall-have-provoked to anger the-sword shall-devour you
Accipite veracem publicumque adstipulatorem, boni malique
receive the-truthful and-public supporter of-good and-evil
vestri retributionem absque ullo adulationis fuco, non ut
your the-repayment without any of-flattery dye not as
parasitorum venerata vestrorum venena in aures sibilant
of-the-parasites revered your poisons into the-ears hiss
ora, testantem. itemque ad rapaces iudices sententiam
the-mouths testifying and-likewise to the-rapacious judges the-sentence
dirigens ita effatur: 'principes tui infideles, socii furum,
directing so he-declares princes your faithless companions of-thieves
omnes diligunt munera, sectantur retributiones, pupillo non
all love gifts follow rewards for-the-orphan not

iudicant, causa viduae non ingreditur ad eos. propter hoc
they-judge the-cause of-the-widow not enters to them because-of this
ait dominus exercituum, fortis Israhel: heu consolabor
says the-Lord of-hosts the-strong-one of-Israel ah I-shall-be-consoled
super hostibus meis et vindicabor de inimicis meis': 'et
over enemies my and I-shall-be-avenged on enemies my and
conterentur scelerati et peccatores simul et omnes, qui
shall-be-crushed the-wicked and sinners together and all who
dereliquerunt dominum, consumentur'. et infra: 'oculi sublimis
have-forsaken the-Lord shall-be-consumed and below the-eyes of-the-lofty
hominis humiliabuntur et incurvabit altitudo virorum'. et
man shall-be-humbled and shall-bend the-height of-men and
iterum: 'vae impio in malum, retributio enim manuum
again woe to-the-impious into evil the-repayment for of-hands
eius fiet ei'. et post pauca: 'vae qui consurgitis
his shall-be-made to-him and after a-few-words woe who rise
mane ad ebrietatem sectandam et ad potandum usque ad
early for drunkenness to-be-pursued and for drinking all-the-way to
vesperam, ut vino aestuetis. cithara et lyra et tympanum
evening that with-wine you-may-burn the-harp and lyre and drum
et tibia et vinum in conviviis vestris, et opus domini non
and pipe and wine in banquets your and the-work of-the-Lord not
respicitis et opera manuum eius non consideratis. propterea
you-regard and the-works of-hands his not you-consider therefore
captivus ductus est populus meus, quia non habuit scientiam
captive led is people my because not it-had knowledge
et nobiles eius interierunt fame et multitudo eius siti
and nobles its have-perished by-famine and the-multitude its with-thirst
exaruit. propterea dilatavit infernus animam suam et aperuit
has-dried-up therefore has-widened hell soul its and has-opened
os suum absque ullo termino et descendent fortes eius
mouth its without any limit and shall-descend strong-ones its

et populi eius et sublimes gloriosique eius ad eum'. et infra:
and peoples its and lofty-ones and-glorious its to it and below
'vae qui potentes estis ad bibendum vinum et viri fortes ad
woe who mighty are for drinking wine and men strong for
miscendam ebrietatem, qui iustificatis impium pro muneribus
mixing drunkenness who justify the-impious for gifts
et iustitiam iusti aufertis ab eo. propter hoc sicut
and the-justice of-the-just take-away from him because-of this as
devorat stipulam ignis et ligna calor flammae exurit, sic
devours stubble fire and wood the-heat of-flame burns so
radix eorum quasi favilla erit et germen eorum ut pulvis
the-root their as ash shall-be and shoot their as dust
ascendet. abiecerunt enim legem domini exercituum et
shall-go-up they-have-rejected for the-law of-the-Lord of-hosts and
eloquium sancti Israhel despexerunt. in omnibus his non
the-utterance of-the-holy-one of-Israel have-despised in all these not
est aversus furor domini, sed adhuc manus eius extenta'.
is turned-away the-fury of-the-Lord but still hand his stretched-out

§§ 44–49

44–49 · ISAIAH AND JEREMIAH

Isaiah foretells the day of the Lord, when the earth is laid waste because its people broke the covenant; iniquity has divided them from God, and truth has fallen in the street. Jeremiah then speaks: Israel forsook God and became vain, refused correction, and would not return, and the prophet weeps for the slain of his people.

Et post aliquanta de die iudicii et peccatorum ineffabili
and after some-things about the-day of-judgment and of-the-sinners by-the-ineffable
metu disceptans ait: 'ululate, quia prope est dies domini' —
fear disputing he-says howl because near is the-day of-the-Lord

si tunc prope erat, quid nunc putabitur? — 'quia vastitas a
if then near it-was what now shall-be-thought because devastation from
deo veniet. propter hoc omnes manus dissolventur et omne
God shall-come because-of this all hands shall-be-loosened and every
cor hominis tabescet et conteretur, tortiones et dolores
heart of-man shall-waste-away and shall-be-crushed tortures and pains
tenebunt, quasi parturiens dolebunt. unusquisque ad proximum
shall-hold as-if one-in-labor they-shall-grieve each to neighbor
suum stupebit; facies combustae vultus illorum. ecce
his shall-be-stunned faces burned the-countenances of-them behold
dies domini veniet crudelis et indignationis plenus et irae
the-day of-the-Lord shall-come cruel and of-indignation full and of-wrath
furorisque ad ponendam terram in solitudinem et peccatores
and-of-fury for laying the-land into wilderness and sinners
eius conterendos de ea, quoniam stellae caeli et splendor
its to-be-crushed out-of it since the-stars of-heaven and the-splendor
earum non expandent lumen suum, obtenebrabitur sol in
of-them not shall-spread light their shall-be-darkened the-sun in
ortu suo et luna non splendebit in tempore suo. et visitabo
rising its and the-moon not shall-shine in time its and I-shall-visit
super orbis mala et contra impios iniquitatem ipsorum
upon of-the-world the-evils and against the-impious iniquity their-own
et quiescere faciam superbiam infidelium et arrogantiam
and to-rest I-shall-make the-pride of-the-faithless and the-arrogance
fortium humiliabo'. et iterum: 'ecce dominus dissipabit terram
of-the-strong I-shall-humble and again behold the-Lord shall-scatter the-earth
et nudabit eam et affliget faciem eius et disperget habitatores
and shall-strip it and shall-afflict face its and shall-disperse inhabitants
eius et erit sicut populus, sic sacerdos, et sicut servus,
its and it-shall-be as the-people so the-priest and as the-servant
sic dominus eius, sicut ancilla, sic domina eius, sicut emens,
so master his as the-maid so mistress her as the-buyer

sic ille qui vendit, sicut fenerator, sic ille qui mutuum accipit,
so he who sells as the-lender so he who a-loan receives
sicut qui repetit, sic qui debet. dissipatione dissipabitur
as he-who demands-back so who owes by-scattering shall-be-scattered
terra et direptione praedabitur. dominus enim locutus
the-earth and by-plunder shall-be-plundered the-Lord for spoken
est verbum hoc: luxit et defluxit terra, defluxit
has word this has-mourned and has-flowed-away the-earth has-flowed-away
orbis, infirmata est altitudo populi terrae et terra
the-world weakened is the-height of-the-people of-the-earth and the-earth
interfecta est ab habitatoribus suis, quia transgressi sunt
slain is by inhabitants its because transgressed they-have
leges, mutaverunt ius, dissipaverunt foedus sempiternum.
the-laws they-have-changed the-right they-have-broken the-covenant everlasting
Propter hoc maledictio vorabit 'terram'. et infra: 'ingemiscent
because-of this a-curse shall-devour the-earth and below shall-groan
omnes qui laetantur corde, cessabit gaudium tympanorum,
all who rejoice in-heart shall-cease the-joy of-drums
quiescet sonitus laetantium, conticescet dulcedo citharae cum
shall-rest the-sound of-the-rejoicing shall-fall-silent the-sweetness of-the-lyre with
cantico, non bibent vinum, amara erit potio bibentibus
song not they-shall-drink wine bitter shall-be the-drink to-those-drinking
illam. attrita est civitas vanitatis, clausa est omnis domus
it worn-down is the-city of-vanity shut is every house
nullo introeunte. clamor erit super vino in plateis, deserta
no-one entering a-clamor shall-be over wine in the-streets deserted
est omnis laetitia, translatum est gaudium terrae, relicta est
is all gladness carried-off is the-joy of-the-earth left is
in urbe solitudo et calamitas opprimet portas, quia haec
in the-city wilderness and calamity shall-oppress the-gates because these-things
erunt in medio terrae et in medio populorum'. et post
shall-be in the-midst of-the-earth and in the-midst of-the-peoples and after

pauca: ‘praevaricantes praevaricati sunt et praevaricatione
a-few-words transgressing transgressed they-have and by-the-transgression
transgressorum praevaricati sunt. formido et foveae et
of-the-transgressors transgressed they-have terror and pits and
laqueus super te, qui habitator es terrae. et erit: qui
a-snare upon you who an-inhabitant are of-the-earth and it-shall-be who
fugerit a voce formidinis, cadet in foveam, et qui se
shall-have-fled from the-voice of-terror shall-fall into the-pit and who himself
explicuerit de fovea, tenebitur laqueo: qui cataractae de
shall-have-extricated from the-pit shall-be-held by-the-snare because the-floodgates from
excelsis apertae erunt et concutientur fundamenta terrae.
on-high opened shall-be and shall-be-shaken the-foundations of-the-earth
confractione confringetur terra, commotione commovebitur,
by-breaking shall-be-broken the-earth by-commotion shall-be-moved
agitatione agitabitur sicut ebrius et auferetur quasi
by-agitation shall-be-agitated as a-drunkard and shall-be-carried-off as-if
tabernaculum unius noctis et gravabit eam iniquitas sua
a-tent of-one night and shall-weigh-down it iniquity its
et corruet et non adiciet, ut resurgat. et erit: in die illa
and it-shall-fall and not shall-add that it-rise-again and it-shall-be on day that
visitabit dominus super militiam caeli in excelso et super
shall-visit the-Lord upon the-host of-heaven on high and upon
reges terrae qui sunt super terram, et congregabuntur
the-kings of-the-earth who are upon the-earth and they-shall-be-gathered
in congregationem unius fascis in lacum et claudentur ibi
into a-gathering of-one bundle into a-pit and shall-be-shut there
in carcerem et post multos dies visitabuntur. et erubescet
in prison and after many days they-shall-be-visited and shall-blush
luna et confundetur sol, cum regnaverit dominus
the-moon and shall-be-confounded the-sun when shall-have-reigned the-Lord

exercituum in monte Sion et in Ierusalem, et in conspectu
of-hosts on mount Zion and in Jerusalem and in the-sight
senum suorum fuerit glorificatus'.
of-elders his shall-have-been glorified
Et post aliquanta, rationem reddens, quam ob rem talia
and after some-things a-reason giving for which reason such-things
minaretur, ita ait: 'ecce non est abbreviata manus domini,
he-threatened so he-says behold not is shortened the-hand of-the-Lord
ut salvare nequeat, neque adgravata est auris eius, ut
so-that to-save it-cannot nor made-heavy is ear his so-that
non exaudiat. sed iniquitates vestrae diviserunt inter vos et
not it-hears but iniquities your have-divided between you and
deum vestrum et peccata vestra absconderunt faciem eius
God your and sins your have-hidden face his
a vobis, ne exaudiret. manus enim vestrae pollutae sunt
from you lest he-should-hear hands for your polluted are
sanguine et digiti vestri iniquitate: labia vestra locuta sunt
with-blood and fingers your with-iniquity lips your spoken have
mendacium et lingua vestra iniquitatem fatur. non est qui
lies and tongue your iniquity utters not there-is who
vocet iustitiam neque est qui iudicet vere, sed confidunt
calls justice nor there-is who judges truly but they-trust
in nihil, et loquuntur vanitates et conceperunt dolorem et
in nothing and they-speak vanities and have-conceived pain and
pepererunt iniquitatem'. et infra: 'opera eorum inutilia et
have-brought-forth iniquity and below works their useless and
opus iniquitatis in manibus eorum. pedes eorum in malum
the-work of-iniquity in hands their feet their to evil
currunt et festinant, ut effundant sanguinem innocentem.
run and they-hasten that they-may-shed blood innocent
cogitationes eorum cogitationes inutiles, vastitas et contritio
thoughts their thoughts useless devastation and destruction

in viis eorum et viam pacis non cognoverunt et non est
in ways their and the-way of-peace not they-have-known and not there-is
iudicium in gressibus eorum. semitae eorum incurvatae sunt
judgment in steps their the-paths their bent are
eis: omnis, qui calcat in eis, ignorat pacem. propter hoc
for-them everyone who treads in them knows-not peace because-of this
elongatum est iudicium a vobis et non apprehendit vos
far-removed is judgment from you and not overtakes you
iustitia'. et post pauca: 'et conversum est retrorsum iudicium
justice and after a-few-words and turned is backward judgment
et iustitia longe stetit, quia corruit in platea veritas et
and justice far-off has-stood because has-fallen in the-street truth and
aequitas non potuit ingredi. et facta est veritas in oblivione
equity not could enter and made is truth in oblivion
et qui recessit a malo, praedae patuit. et vidit dominus
and who has-withdrawn from evil to-plunder lay-open and saw the-Lord
et non placuit in oculis eius, quia non est iudicium'.
and not it-pleased in eyes his because not there-is judgment
Hucusque Esaiae prophetae pauca de multis dixisse sufficiat.
thus-far of-Isaiah the-prophet a-few from many to-have-said let-it-suffice
Nunc vero illum, qui, priusquam formaretur in utero, praescitus
now but him who before he-was-formed in the-womb foreknown
et priusquam exiret de vulva, sanctificatus et in cunctis
and before he-came-out from the-womb sanctified and among all
gentibus propheta positus est, Ieremiam scilicet, quid de
nations a-prophet placed was Jeremiah namely what about
populo insipiente rigidisque regibus pronuntiaverit, parumper
the-people foolish and-the-rigid kings he-pronounced for-a-little-while
attendentes audite, hoc modo leniter verba initiantem: 'et
attending hear in-this way gently the-words beginning and
factum est verbum domini ad me dicens: vade et clama in
done was the-word of-the-Lord to me saying go and cry in

auribus Ierusalem et dices': 'audite verbum domini, domus
the-ears of-Jerusalem and you-shall-say hear the-word of-the-Lord O-house
Iacob et omnes cognationes domus Israhel. haec dicit
of-Jacob and all the-kindreds of-the-house of-Israel these-things says
dominus: quid invenerunt in me patres vestri iniquitatis, qui
the-Lord what found in me fathers your of-iniquity who
elongati sunt a me et ambulaverunt post vanitatem et
removed-far are from me and walked after vanity and
vani facti sunt et non dixerunt: ubi est qui ascendere
vain made are and not said where is he-who to-go-up
nos fecit de terra Aegypti?' et post pauca: 'a saeculo
us made from the-land of-Egypt and after a-few-words from of-old
confregisti iugum meum, rupisti vincula mea, dixisti: non
you-have-broken yoke my you-have-burst bonds my you-said not
serviam'. 'ego plantavi te vineam electam, omne semen verum.
I-shall-serve I planted you a-vine chosen all seed true
quomodo ergo conversa es in pravum vinea aliena?
how therefore turned are-you into the-depraved vine strange
si laveris te nitro et multiplicaveris tibi
if you-shall-have-washed yourself with-natron and shall-have-multiplied for-yourself
herbam borith, maculata es iniquitate tua coram me, dicit
the-herb borith stained you-are with-iniquity your before me says
dominus'. et infra: 'quid vultis mecum iudicio contendere?
the-Lord and below why do-you-wish with-me in-judgment to-contend
omnes me dereliquistis, dicit dominus. frustra percussi filios
all me you-have-forsaken says the-Lord in-vain I-struck sons
vestros, disciplinam non receperunt. audite verbum domini:
your discipline not they-received hear the-word of-the-Lord
num quid solitudo factus sum Israhel aut terra serotina?
is-it that a-wilderness made am-I to-Israel or a-land late
quare ergo dixit populus meus: recessimus, non veniemus
why therefore said people my we-have-withdrawn not we-shall-come

ultra ad te? num quid obliviscitur virgo ornamenti sui aut
further to you is-it that forgets a-virgin ornament her or
sponsa fasciae pectoralis suae? populus vero meus oblitus
a-bride of-the-band breast her people but my forgotten
est me diebus innumeris'. 'quia stultus est populus meus, me
has me for-days innumerable because foolish is people my me
non cognovit: filii insipientes sunt et vecordes: sapientes
not it-has-known sons foolish they-are and senseless wise
sunt, ut faciant mala, bene autem facere nescierunt'.
they-are that they-may-do evil-things well but to-do they-have-not-known
Tum propheta ex sua persona loquitur dicens: 'domine, oculi tui
then the-prophet in his person speaks saying O-Lord eyes your
respiciunt fidem. percussisti eos et non doluerunt; attrivisti eos
look-to faith you-struck them and not they-grieved you-crushed them
et renuerunt accipere disciplinam; induraverunt facies suas super
and they-refused to-receive discipline they-hardened faces their above
petram et noluerunt reverti'. itemque dominus: 'annuntiate hoc
rock and they-refused to-return and-likewise the-Lord announce this
domui Iacob et auditum facite in Iuda dicentes: audi, populе
to-the-house of-Jacob and heard make-it in Judah saying hear O-people
stulte, qui non habes cor, qui habentes oculos non videtis et
foolish who not have a-heart who having eyes not see and
aures et non auditis. me ergo non timebitis, ait dominus,
ears and not hear me therefore not shall-you-fear says the-Lord
et a facie mea non dolebitis? qui posui harenam terminum
and from face my not shall-you-grieve who placed the-sand as-a-boundary
mari praeceptum sempiternum, quod non praeteribit; et
for-the-sea a-precept everlasting which not it-shall-pass and
commovebuntur et non poterunt, intumescent fluctus eius et
they-shall-be-moved and not shall-be-able shall-swell waves its and
non transibunt illud. populo autem huic factum est cor
not shall-cross it to-the-people but this made is a-heart

incredulum et exasperans, recesserunt et abierunt, et non
unbelieving and provoking they-have-withdrawn and have-gone-away and not
dixerunt in corde suo: metuamus dominum deum nostrum'. et
have-said in heart their let-us-fear the-Lord God our and
iterum: 'quia inventi sunt in populo meo impii insidiantes
again because found are in people my impious-men lying-in-wait
quasi aucupes, laqueos ponentes et pedicas ad capiendos viros.
as-if fowlers snares placing and traps for catching men
sicut decipula plena avibus, sic domus eorum plenae dolo.
as a-trap full of-birds so houses their full of-guile
ideo magnificati sunt et ditati, incrassati sunt et inpinguati,
therefore magnified are and enriched fattened they-are and made-fat
et praeterierunt sermones meos pessime, causam pupilli
and they-have-passed-by words my most-wickedly the-cause of-the-orphan
non dixerunt et iudicium pauperum non iudicaverunt.
not they-pleaded and the-judgment of-the-poor not they-judged
numquid super his non visitabo, dicit dominus, aut
is-it-that over these-things not shall-I-visit says the-Lord or
super gentem huiusmodi non ulciscetur anima mea?'
upon a-nation of-this-kind not shall-avenge soul my
Sed absit, ut vobis eveniat quod sequitur: 'loqueris ad
but far-be-it that to-you should-happen what follows you-shall-speak to
eos omnia verba haec et non audient te et vocabis
them all words these and not they-shall-hear you and you-shall-call
eos et non respondebunt tibi et dices ad eos: haec
them and not they-shall-answer you and you-shall-say to them this
est gens, quae non audivit vocem domini dei sui nec
is the-nation which not has-heard the-voice of-the-Lord God its nor
recepit disciplinam; periit fides et ablata est de ore
received discipline has-perished faith and taken-away is from the-mouth
eorum'. et post aliquanta: 'numquid qui cadit non resurget
their and after some-things is-it-that he-who falls not shall-rise

et qui aversus est non revertetur? quare ergo aversus
and he-who turned-away is not shall-return why therefore turned-away
est populus iste in Ierusalem aversione contentiosa?
is people this in Jerusalem with-a-turning-away contentious
apprehenderunt mendacium et noluerunt reverti. attendi et
they-have-seized lies and refused to-return I-attended and
auscultavi, nemo quod bonum est loquitur. nullus est qui
listened no-one what good is speaks no-one there-is who
agat paenitentiam super peccato suo dicens: quid feci?
does penitence over sin his saying what have-I-done
omnes conversi sunt ad cursum suum quasi equus impetu
all turned are to course their as-if a-horse with-a-rush
vadens in proelium. milvus in caelo cognovit tempus
going into battle the-kite in the-sky has-known time
suum, turtur et hirundo et ciconia custodierunt tempus
its the-turtle-dove and the-swallow and the-stork have-kept the-time
adventus sui, populus meus non cognovit iudicium dei'. et
of-coming their people my not has-known the-judgment of-God and
tam vehementi sacrilegiorum caecitate et ineffabili ebrietate
by-so vehement of-sacrileges blindness and ineffable drunkenness
propheta conterritus et deflens eos qui se ipsos non
the-prophet terrified and weeping-for those who them themselves not
deflebant, ut et nunc infelices tyranni agunt, optat sibi
wept as also now the-unhappy tyrants do wishes for-himself
auctionem fletuum a domino concedi, hoc modo dicens:
an-increase of-weeping from the-Lord to-be-granted in-this way saying
'super contritione filiae populi mei contritus sum:
over the-crushing of-the-daughter of-people my crushed I-am
stupor obtinuit me. numquid resina non est in Galaad
stupor has-held me is-it-that balm not there-is in Gilead
aut medicus non est ibi? quare ergo non obducta est
or a-physician not there-is there why therefore not closed is

cicatrix filiae populi mei? quis dabit capiti meo aquam
the-scar of-the-daughter of-people my who shall-give to-head my water
et oculis meis fontem lacrimarum? et plorabo die et
and to-eyes my a-fountain of-tears and I-shall-weep day and
nocte interfectos populi mei. quis dabit mihi in solitudine
night the-slain of-people my who shall-give me in the-wilderness
diversorium viatorum? et derelinquam populum meum et
a-lodging of-travelers and I-shall-leave people my and
recedam ab eis, quando omnes adulteri sunt, coetus
withdraw from them since all adulterers are an-assembly
praevaricatorum. et extenderunt linguam suam quasi arcum
of-transgressors and they-have-stretched tongue their as-if a-bow
mendacii et non veritatis: confortati sunt in terra, quia de
of-lies and not of-truth strengthened they-are in the-land because from
malo ad malum egressi sunt et me non cognoverunt, dicit
evil to evil gone-out they-have and me not they-have-known says
dominus'. et iterum: 'et dixit dominus: quia dereliquerunt
the-Lord and again and said the-Lord because they-have-forsaken
legem meam, quam dedi eis, et non audierunt vocem meam
law my which I-gave them and not have-heard voice my
et non ambulaverunt in ea, et abierunt post pravitatem
and not have-walked in it and have-gone-away after the-depravity
cordis sui, idcirco haec dicit dominus exercituum deus
of-heart their therefore these-things says the-Lord of-hosts God
Israhel: ecce ego cibabo populum istum absinthio et potum
of-Israel behold I shall-feed people this with-wormwood and drink
dabo eis aquam fellis': et post pauca, quod etiam
shall-give to-them water of-gall and after a-few-words which also
crebrius stilo propheta adiunxit, dicens ex persona dei:
more-often with-pen the-prophet added saying in the-person of-God
'tu ergo noli orare pro populo hoc, et ne assumas pro
you therefore do-not pray for people this and not take-up for

eis laudem et orationem, quia non exaudiam in tempore
them praise and prayer because not I-shall-hear in the-time
clamoris eorum ad me et afflictionis eorum'.
of-cry their to me and of-affliction their

§§ 50–56

50–56 · THE MINOR PROPHETS

Jeremiah warns that the leopard cannot change its spots and that God will not hear prayers for this people. Habakkuk laments that the law is scattered, Hosea that the princes reigned without God, Amos that the just are sold for money, and Micah that the wicked treasure up wealth; Zephaniah foretells the day of wrath, and Haggai that God will overturn the kingdoms and the strength of the nations.

Quid ergo nunc infausti duces facient? illi pauci invenientes
what therefore now ill-starred leaders shall-do those few finding
viam angustam amota spatiosa, prohibiti a deo, ne preces
the-way narrow removed the-spacious forbidden by God lest prayers
pro vobis fundant perseverantibus in malis et tantopere
for you they-pour to-those-persevering in evils and so-greatly
incitantibus; quis e contrario ex corde ad deum repedantibus,
provoking who on the-contrary from the-heart to God returning
deo nolente animam hominis interire, sed retractante, ne
God being-unwilling the-soul of-man to-perish but drawing-back lest
penitus pereat qui abiectus est, vindictam non potuissent
utterly perish he-who cast-off is vengeance not would-have-been-able
inducere, quia nec Ionas, et quidem cum multum
to-bring because not-even Jonah and indeed though much
concupiverit, Ninivitis propheta. sed omissis interim nostris
he-desired for-the-Ninevites the-prophet but omitted meanwhile ours
audiamus potius quid prophetica tuba persultet: 'quod
let-us-hear rather what the-prophetic trumpet blares that

si dixeris', inquiens, 'in corde tuo: quare venerunt
if you-shall-have-said saying in heart your why have-come
mala haec? propter multitudinem iniquitatis tuae. si mutare
evils these because-of the-multitude of-iniquity your if to-change
potest Aethiops pellem suam aut pardus varietates suas,
can the-Ethiopian skin his or the-leopard spots his
et vos poteritis bene facere, cum didiceritis malum';
also you you-shall-be-able well to-do when you-shall-have-learned evil
subauditur, quia non vultis. et infra: 'haec dicit dominus
it-is-understood because not you-wish and below these-things says the-Lord
populo huic: qui dilexit movere pedes suos et non quievit
to-people this which has-loved to-move feet its and not has-rested
et domino non placuit, nunc recordabitur iniquitatum
and to-the-Lord not it-has-pleased now he-shall-remember iniquities
eorum et visitabit peccata eorum. et dixit dominus ad me:
their and shall-visit sins their and said the-Lord to me
noli orare pro populo isto in bonum. cum ieiunaverint,
do-not pray for people this for good when they-shall-have-fasted
non exaudiam preces eorum et si obtulerint holocausta
not I-shall-hear prayers their and if they-shall-have-offered burnt-offerings
et victimas, non suscipiam ea'. et iterum: 'et dixit dominus
and victims not I-shall-accept them and again and said the-Lord
ad me: si steterit Moyses et Samuel coram me, non
to me if shall-have-stood Moses and Samuel before me not
est anima mea ad populum istum: eice illos a facie
is soul my to people this cast them from face
mea et egrediantur'. et post pauca: 'quis miserebitur tui,
my and let-them-go-out and after a-few-words who shall-pity you
Ierusalem aut quis contristabitur pro te aut quis ibit ad
O-Jerusalem or who shall-be-saddened for you or who shall-go to
rogandum pro pace tua? tu reliquisti me, dicit dominus,
ask for peace your you have-left me says the-Lord

et retrorsum abisti, et extendam manum meam super
and backward you-have-gone and I-shall-stretch-out hand my over
te et interficiam te'. et post aliquanta: 'haec dicit
you and I-shall-kill you and after some-things these-things says
dominus: ecce ego fingo contra vos cogitationem: revertatur
the-Lord behold I fashion against you a-plan let-turn-back
unusquisque a via sua mala et dirigite vias vestras et
each-one from way his evil and direct ways your and
studia vestra. qui dixerunt: desperamus, post cogitationes
pursuits your who have-said we-despair after thoughts
nostras ibimus et unusquisque pravitatem cordis sui mali
our we-shall-go and each-one the-depravity of-heart his evil
faciemus. ideo haec dicit dominus: interrogate gentes:
we-shall-do therefore these-things says the-Lord ask the-nations
quis audivit talia horribilia, quae fecit nimis virgo
who has-heard such horrible-things which has-done exceedingly the-virgin
Israhel? num quid deficiet de petra agri nix Libani
of-Israel is-it that shall-fail from the-rock of-the-field the-snow of-Lebanon
aut velli possunt aquae erumpentes frigidae defluentes?
or to-be-plucked can the-waters bursting-forth cold flowing-down
quia oblitus est me populus meus'. et post aliquanta
because forgotten has me people my and after some-things
optione proposita loquitur dicens: 'haec dicit dominus:
a-choice set-forth he-speaks saying these-things says the-Lord
facite iudicium et iustitiam et liberate vi oppressum de
do judgment and justice and free by-force the-oppressed from
manu calumniatoris et advenam et pupillum et viduam
the-hand of-the-slanderer and the-stranger and the-orphan and the-widow
nolite contristare neque opprimatis inique et sanguinem
do-not sadden nor oppress unjustly and blood
innocentem ne effundatis. si enim facientes feceritis
innocent do-not shed if for doing you-shall-have-done

verbum istud, ingredientur per portas domus huius reges
word this shall-enter through the-gates of-house this kings
sedentes de genere David super thronum eius. quod si
sitting of the-race of-David upon throne his but if
non audieritis verba haec, in memetipso iuravi, dicit
not you-shall-have-heard words these by myself I-have-sworn says
dominus, quia in solitudinem erit domus haec'. et iterum,
the-Lord that into a-wilderness shall-be house this and again
de rege enim scelesto loquebatur: 'vivo ego, dicit dominus,
about the-king for wicked he-spoke live I says the-Lord
quia si fuerit Iechonias anulus in manu dextra mea, inde
that if shall-have-been Jeconiah a-ring on hand right my thence
evellam eum et dabo in manu quaerentium animam eius'.
I-shall-pluck him and shall-give into the-hand of-those-seeking soul his
Sanctus quoque Abacuc proclamat dicens: 'vae qui aedificant
holy also Habakkuk proclaims saying woe who build
civitatem in sanguine et praeparant civitatem in iniquitatibus,
a-city in blood and prepare a-city in iniquities
dicentes: nonne haec sunt a domino omnipotente? et
saying not these-things are from the-Lord almighty and
defecerunt populi multi in igne, et gentes multae minoratae
have-failed peoples many in fire and nations many diminished
sunt'. et ita prophetiam querulus incipit: 'usque quo clamabo
are and so the-prophecy complaining he-begins how long shall-I-cry
et non exaudies? vociferabor ad te, ut quid mihi dedisti,
and not you-shall-hear shall-I-shout to you to what to-me have-you-given
labores et dolores inspicere miseriam et impietatem contra:
labors and pains to-look-upon misery and impiety against
et factum est iudicium et iudex accepit. propter hoc
and done is judgment and the-judge has-received because-of this
dissipata est lex et non perducitur ad finem iudicium,
scattered is the-law and not is-brought to the-end judgment

quia impius per potentiam deprimit iustum. propter hoc
because the-impious through power presses-down the-just because-of this
exiit iudicium perversum'.
has-gone-out judgment perverse
Sed et beatus Osee propheta attendite quid loquatur de
but also the-blessed Hosea the-prophet attend what he-says about
principibus dicens: 'pro eo, quod transgressi sunt pactum
the-princes saying for that that transgressed they-have covenant
meum et adversus legem meam tulerunt, et exclamabant:
my and against law my they-have-carried and they-cried-out
cognovimus te, quia adversum sis Israhel, bonum ut
we-have-known you because opposed you-are to-Israel the-good as
iniquum persecuti sunt, sibi regnaverunt, et non
the-wicked pursued they-have for-themselves they-have-reigned and not
per me: tenuerunt principatum, nec me agnoverunt'.
through me they-have-held the-princedom nor me have-they-acknowledged
Sed et sanctum Amos prophetam hoc modo minantem
but also the-holy Amos the-prophet in-this way threatening
audite: 'in tribus impietatibus filiorum Iuda et in quattuor
hear for three impieties of-the-sons of-Judah and for four
non avertam eos propter quod repulerunt legem
not I-shall-turn-away them for that they-have-repelled the-law
domini et praecepta non custodierunt, sed seduxerunt eos
of-the-Lord and the-precepts not they-have-kept but have-seduced them
vana eorum. et emittam ignem super Iudam et comedet
vain-things their and I-shall-send fire upon Judah and it-shall-eat
fundamenta Ierusalem. haec dicit dominus: in tribus
the-foundations of-Jerusalem these-things says the-Lord for three
impietatibus Israhel et in quattuor non avertam eos,
impieties of-Israel and for four not I-shall-turn-away them
propter quod tradiderunt pecunia iustum et pauperem pro
for that they-have-handed-over for-money the-just and the-poor for

calciamentis, quae calciant super pulverem terrae, et colaphis
shoes which they-tread upon the-dust of-the-earth and with-blows
caedebant capita pauperum, et viam humilium declinaverunt'.
they-struck the-heads of-the-poor and the-way of-the-humble have-turned-aside
et post pauca: 'quaerite dominum et vivetis, ut non
and after a-few-words seek the-Lord and you-shall-live that not
reluceat sicut ignis domus Ioseph et comedat eam, nec
shine-out as fire the-house of-Joseph and eat it nor
erit qui extinguat'. 'domus Israel odio habuerunt in
shall-be who extinguishes the-house of-Israel in-hatred they-have-had in
portis redarguentem et verbum iustum abominati sunt'. qui
the-gates the-reprover and the-word just abominated they-have who
Amos prohibitus, ne prophetaret in Israel, absque adulationis
Amos forbidden lest he-prophesy in Israel without of-flattery
tepore respondens: 'non eram', inquit, 'ego propheta
the-warmth answering not I-was he-says I a-prophet
nec filius prophetae, sed eram pastor caprarius vellicans
nor son of-a-prophet but I-was a-shepherd goatherd plucking
sycomoros, et suscepit me dominus ab ovibus et dixit
sycamores and took me the-Lord from the-sheep and said
dominus ad me: vade et prophetiza in plebem meam Israhel,
the-Lord to me go and prophesy to people my Israel
et nunc audi verbum domini'; regem namque alloquebatur.
and now hear the-word of-the-Lord the-king for he-addressed
'tu dicis: noli prophetare in Israel et non congreges turbas
you say do-not prophesy in Israel and not gather crowds
in domum Iacob. propter quod haec dicit dominus: uxor
into the-house of-Jacob because-of which these-things says the-Lord wife
tua in civitate meretricabitur et filii tui et filiae tuae
your in the-city shall-play-the-harlot and sons your and daughters your
gladio cadent et terra tua funiculo metietur et tu in
by-sword shall-fall and land your with-a-cord shall-be-measured and you in

terra inmunda morieris; Israhel autem captivus ducetur a
a-land unclean shall-die Israel but captive shall-be-led from
terra sua'. et infra: 'audite itaque haec, qui contribulatis
land its and below hear and-so these-things who crush
inmane pauperem et dominationem exercetis in inopes super
monstrously the-poor and dominion exercise over the-needy upon
terram, qui dicitis: quando transibit mensis ut adquiramus,
the-earth who say when shall-pass the-month that we-may-acquire
et sabbata ut aperiamus thesauros?' et post pauca:
and the-sabbaths that we-may-open the-treasures and after a-few-words
'iurat dominus contra superbiam Iacob, si obliviscetur in
swears the-Lord against the-pride of-Jacob if he-shall-forget in
contemptione opera vestra et in his non conturbabitur terra
contempt works your and in these not shall-be-troubled the-earth
et lugebit omnis qui commorabitur in ea et ascendet
and shall-mourn everyone who shall-dwell in it and shall-go-up
sicut flumen consummatio'. 'et convertam dies festos vestros
as a-river the-consummation and I-shall-turn days festival your
in luctum et iniciam in omnem lumbum cilicium et in
into mourning and I-shall-put on every loin sackcloth and on
omne caput decalvationem et ponam eum sicut luctum
every head baldness and I-shall-make him as the-mourning
dilecti et eos, qui cum eo sunt, sicut diem maeroris'. et
of-the-beloved and those who with him are as the-day of-sorrow and
iterum: 'gladio morientur omnes peccatores populi mei, qui
again by-sword shall-die all the-sinners of-people my who
dicunt: non appropinquabunt neque venient super nos mala'.
say not shall-draw-near nor shall-come upon us evils
Sed et sanctus Micheas vates attendite quid sit effatus:
but also holy Micah the-seer attend what has uttered
'audi', inquiens, 'tribus: et quid exornabit civitatem? numquid
hear saying O-tribes and what shall-adorn the-city is-it-that

ignis? et domus iniquorum thesaurizans in thesauros iniquos
fire and the-house of-the-wicked treasuring in treasures wicked
et cum iniuria iniustitiam? si iustificabitur in statera
and with injury injustice if shall-be-justified in the-balance
iniquus et in saccello pondera dolosa, ex quibus divitias
the-wicked and in the-little-bag weights deceitful from which riches
suas in impietate repleverunt'.
their in impiety they-have-filled
Sed et Sophonias propheta clarus quas minas exaggerat,
but also Zephaniah the-prophet famous what threats he-heaps-up
audite: 'prope est', inquit, 'dies domini magnus, prope
hear near is he-says the-day of-the-Lord great near
et velox valde. vox dei domini amara constituta
and swift exceedingly the-voice of-God the-Lord bitter appointed
est et potens, dies irae dies ille, dies tribulationis
is and mighty the-day of-wrath day that the-day of-tribulation
et necessitatis, dies nubis et nebulae, dies tubae et
and of-distress the-day of-cloud and of-mist the-day of-trumpet and
clamoris, dies miseriae et exterminationis, dies tenebrarum
of-clamor the-day of-misery and of-extermination the-day of-darkness
et caliginis super civitates firmas et super angulos excelsos.
and of-gloom over cities strong and over corners lofty
et contribulabo homines, et ibunt sicut caeci, quia
and I-shall-afflict men and they-shall-go as the-blind because
domino peccaverunt, et effundam sanguinem sicut
against-the-Lord they-have-sinned and I-shall-pour-out blood as
pulverem et carnes eorum sicut fimum boum, et argentum
dust and flesh their as dung of-oxen and silver
eorum et aurum non poterit eximere eos in die
their and gold not shall-be-able to-deliver them on the-day
irae domini. et in igne zeli eius consumetur omnis
of-wrath of-the-Lord and in the-fire of-zeal his shall-be-consumed all

terra, quando consummationem et solitudinem faciet
the-earth when consummation and wilderness shall-make
dominus super omnes commorantes in terram. convenite et
the-Lord over all dwelling in the-earth come-together and
coniungimini, gens indisciplinata, priusquam efficiamini sicut
be-joined O-nation undisciplined before you-be-made as
flos praeteriens, priusquam veniat super vos ira domini'.
a-flower passing before come upon you the-wrath of-the-Lord
Et quid Aggaeus sanctus propheta dicat, attendite: 'haec
and what Haggai holy the-prophet says attend these-things
dicit dominus: semel ego movebo caelum et terram et mare
says the-Lord once I shall-move the-sky and the-earth and the-sea
et aridum et avertam regnum et exterminabo virtutem
and the-dry-land and I-shall-overturn the-kingdom and I-shall-exterminate the-strength
regum gentium et avertam quadrigas et ascensores'.
of-the-kings of-the-nations and I-shall-overturn the-chariots and the-riders

§§ 57–62

57–62 · ZECHARIAH TO SOLOMON

Zechariah's flying sickle, Malachi's day burning like a furnace, Job on the brief prosperity of the wicked, Ezra's sword and fire, and Ezekiel on the land that sins and the son who does not bear his father's guilt all speak against the kings. Gildas ends with Solomon's Wisdom: love justice, for the hope of the impious is like down on the wind.

Nunc quoque quid Zacharias filius Addo propheta electus
now also what Zechariah son of-Iddo the-prophet chosen
dixerit, intuemini, hoc modo prophetiam suam exordiens:
said behold in-this way prophecy his beginning
'revertimini ad me et revertar ad vos, dicit dominus, et nolite
return to me and I-shall-return to you says the-Lord and do-not

tales esse, sicut patres vestri, quibus imputaverunt prophetae
such be as fathers your to-whom imputed the-prophets
priores dicentes: haec dicit dominus omnipotens: avertite
former saying these-things says the-Lord almighty turn
vos a viis vestris: et non intenderunt, ut obaudirent
yourselves from ways your and not they-attended that they-might-obey
me'. et infra: 'et dixit ad me angelus: quid tu vides? et
me and below and said to me the-angel what you see and
dixi: falcem ego video volantem longitudinis cubitorum viginti.
I-said a-sickle I see flying of-length of-cubits twenty
maledictio, quae procedit super faciem totius terrae, quoniam
a-curse which goes-forth over the-face of-the-whole earth since
omnis fur ex ea usque ad mortem punietur, et proiciam
every thief from it all-the-way to death shall-be-punished and I-shall-cast
eum, dicit dominus omnipotens, et intrabit in domum
him says the-Lord almighty and it-shall-enter into the-house
furoris et in domum iurationis in nomine meo mendacium'.
of-fury and into the-house of-swearing in name my a-lie
Sanctus quoque Malachias propheta dicit: 'ecce dies domini
holy also Malachi the-prophet says behold the-day of-the-Lord
veniet succensa quasi caminus, et erunt omnes superbi
shall-come kindled as-if a-furnace and shall-be all the-proud
et omnes facientes iniquitatem ut stipula et inflammabit
and all doing iniquity as stubble and shall-set-on-fire
eos dies adveniens, dicit dominus exercituum, quae non
them the-day coming says the-Lord of-hosts which not
relinquet ex eis radicem et germen'.
shall-leave of them root and shoot
Sed et sanctus Iob attendite quid de principio impiorum et
but also holy Job attend what about the-beginning of-the-impious and
fine disceptaverit dicens: 'propter quid impii vivunt? et
the-end he-has-disputed saying for what the-impious live and

senuerunt inhoneste et semen eorum secundum desiderium
have-grown-old dishonorably and seed their according-to desire
eorum et filii eorum ante conspectum eorum et domus
their and sons their before the-sight their and houses
eorum fructuosae sunt et timor numquam nec plaga
their fruitful are and fear never nor the-plague
domini est super eos. vacca eorum non abortivit et
of-the-Lord is over them cow their not has-miscarried and
praegnans eorum pertulit partum et non erravit, sed
pregnant their has-borne birth and not has-erred but
permanet sicut oves aeternae, et pueri eorum gaudent et
remains as sheep eternal and boys their rejoice and
psalterium sumentes et citharam. finierunt in bonis
the-psaltery taking and the-lyre they-have-ended in good-things
vitam suam, in requiem inferorum dormierunt'. num quid
life their in the-rest of-the-dead they-have-slept is-it that
deus facta impiorum non respicit? non ergo: 'sed lucerna
God the-deeds of-the-impious not regards not therefore but the-lamp
impiorum extinguetur et superveniet eis eversio et dolores
of-the-impious shall-be-extinguished and shall-come-upon them overthrow and pains
tamquam parturientis eos ab ira tenebunt. et erunt
as-of one-in-labor them from wrath shall-hold and they-shall-be
sicut paleae a vento et sicut pulvis, quem abstulit
as chaff by the-wind and as dust which has-carried-off
turbo. deficiant filiis eius bona. videant oculi eius
the-whirlwind let-fail for-the-sons his the-goods let-see eyes his
occisionem suam, nec a domino resalvetur'. et post
slaughter his nor by the-Lord let-him-be-saved-again and after
aliquanta de iisdem: 'qui gregem', inquit, 'cum pastore
some-things about the-same who the-flock he-says with the-shepherd
rapuerunt et iumentum orfanorum abduxerunt et bovem
have-seized and the-beast-of-burden of-orphans have-led-away and the-ox

viduae pigneraverunt et declinaverunt imponentes a
of-the-widow have-taken-in-pledge and have-turned-aside imposing from
via necessitatis, agrum ante tempus non suum demessi
the-way of-necessity the-field before time not their reaped
sunt, pauperes potentium vineas sine mercede et sine cibo
have the-poor of-the-powerful vineyards without wage and without food
operati sunt, nudos multos dormire fecerunt sine vestimentis,
worked are naked many to-sleep they-made without clothes
tegmen animae eorum abstulerunt'. et post pauca, cum
the-covering of-soul their they-took-away and after a-few-words when
ergo sciret eorum opera, tradidit eos in tenebras:
therefore he-knew their works he-handed-over them into darkness
'maledicatur ergo pars eius a terra, pariant plantationes
let-be-cursed therefore portion his from the-earth let-bear plantations
eius aridae'. 'retribuatur ergo illi sicut egit, contribuletur
his dry let-be-repaid therefore to-him as he-did let-be-crushed
omnis iniquus sicut lignum sine sanitate. in iracundia enim
every wicked-man as wood without soundness in anger for
surgens impotentem evertit. propterea enim non credet
rising the-powerless he-overturns therefore for not he-shall-believe
de vita sua, cum infirmari coeperit, non speret
about life his when to-be-ill he-shall-have-begun not let-him-hope-for
sanitatem, sed cadet in languorem. multos enim laesit
health but he-shall-fall into sickness many for has-harmed
superbia eius et marcidus factus est sicut malva in aestu,
pride his and withered made he-is as a-mallow in heat
velut spica, cum de stipula sua decidit'. et infra: 'quod
as-if an-ear when from stalk its it-falls and below that
si multi fuerint filii eius, in occisionem erunt'. 'quod
if many shall-have-been sons his into slaughter they-shall-be that

et si collexerit ut terram argentum et similiter ut
also if he-shall-have-gathered as earth silver and similarly as
lutum raraverit aurum, haec omnia iusti consequuntur'.
mud shall-have-prepared gold these all the-just obtain
Quid praeterea beatus Esdras propheta ille bibliotheca legis
what moreover blessed Ezra the-prophet that library of-the-law
minatus sit, attendite, hoc modo disceptans: haec dicit
threatened has attend in-this way disputing these-things says
dominus meus: 'non parcet dextera mea super peccantes nec
Lord my not shall-spare right-hand my over the-sinning nor
cessabit romphaea super effundentes sanguinem innocuum
shall-cease the-sword over those-shedding blood harmless
super terram. exibit ignis ab ira mea et devorabit
upon the-earth shall-go-out fire from wrath my and shall-devour
fundamenta terrae et peccatores quasi stramen incensum.
the-foundations of-the-earth and sinners as-if straw kindled
vae eis, qui peccant et non observant mandata mea, dicit
woe to-them who sin and not observe commands my says
dominus, non parcam illis. discedite, filii apostatae, et
the-Lord not I-shall-spare them depart O-sons apostate and
nolite contaminare sanctificationem meam. novit deus qui
do-not defile sanctification my knows God who
peccant in eum, propterea tradet eos in mortem et
sin against him therefore he-shall-hand-over them to death and
in occisionem. iam enim venerunt super orbem terrarum
to slaughter already for have-come over the-world of-lands
mala multa'. 'inmissus est gladius vobis ignis, et quis est
evils many sent is a-sword to-you fire and who is
qui recutiet ea? num quid recutiet aliquis leonem
who shall-drive-back them is-it that shall-drive-back anyone a-lion
esurientem in silva? aut num quid extinguet ignem, cum
hungry in the-forest or is-it that shall-extinguish fire when

stramen incensum fuerit? dominus deus mittet mala et
straw kindled shall-have-been the-Lord God shall-send evils and
quis est qui recutiet ea? et exiet ignis ex iracundia
who is who shall-drive-back them and shall-go-out fire from anger
eius et quis est qui extinguet eum? coruscabit, et quis non
his and who is who shall-extinguish it he-shall-flash and who not
timebit? tonabit, et quis non horrebit? deus comminabitur,
shall-fear he-shall-thunder and who not shall-shudder God shall-threaten
et quis non terrebitur a facie eius? tremet terra et
and who not shall-be-terrified from face his shall-tremble the-earth and
fundamenta maris fluctuantur de profundo.
the-foundations of-the-sea are-tossed from the-deep
Ezechiel quoque propheta egregius quattuorque euangelicorum
Ezekiel also the-prophet outstanding and-of-the-four gospel
animalium mirandus inspector quid de sceleratis edixerit,
creatures the-wonderful beholder what about the-wicked he-has-declared
attendite, cui primum dominus miserabiliter plagam Israel
attend to-whom first the-Lord pitiably the-plague of-Israel
deflenti ait: 'iniquitas domus Israel et Iuda invaluit
lamenting says the-iniquity of-the-house of-Israel and of-Judah has-prevailed
nimis, quia impleta est terra populis multis et civitas
exceedingly because filled is the-land with-peoples many and the-city
impleta est iniquitate et inmunditia'. 'ecce ego sum'. 'non
filled is with-iniquity and uncleanness behold I am not
parcet oculus meus neque miserebor'. et infra: 'quoniam
shall-spare eye my nor shall-I-pity and below since
terra plena populis et civitas plena iniquitate est, et
the-land full with-peoples and the-city full of-iniquity is and
avertam impetum virtutis eorum et polluentur sancta
I-shall-turn-away the-onset of-strength their and shall-be-polluted holy-places
eorum. exoratio veniet et quaerent pacem et non erit'.
their a-plea shall-come and they-shall-seek peace and not there-shall-be

et post aliquanta: ‘factus est’, inquit, ‘sermo domini ad me
and after some-things made was he-says the-word of-the-Lord to me
dicens: fili hominis, terra quae peccaverit mihi ut
saying O-son of-man a-land which shall-have-sinned against-me so-that
delinquat delictum, extendam manum meam et conteram
it-commit an-offense I-shall-stretch-out hand my and shall-crush
eius firmamentum panis et emittam in eam famem et
its support of-bread and I-shall-send into it famine and
tollam de ea hominem et pecora. etsi sint tres viri isti
shall-take from it man and cattle even-if be three men these
in medio eius Noe Daniel et Iob, non liberabunt eam, sed
in the-midst of-it Noah Daniel and Job not they-shall-free it but
ipsi in sua iustitia salvi erunt, dicit dominus. quod si etiam
they in their justice saved shall-be says the-Lord that if even
bestias malas inducam super terram et puniam illam et
beasts evil I-shall-bring upon the-land and shall-punish it and
erit in exterminium et non erit qui iter faciat a
it-shall-be into extermination and not there-shall-be who a-journey makes from
facie bestiarum et tres viri isti in medio eius sint, vivo ego,
the-face of-the-beasts and three men these in the-midst of-it be live I
dicit dominus, si filii et filiae eius liberabuntur, sed ipsi
says the-Lord if sons and daughters its shall-be-freed but they
soli salvi erunt, terra autem erit in interitum’. et iterum:
alone saved shall-be the-land but shall-be into destruction and again
‘filius non accipiet iniustitiam patris neque pater accipiet
the-son not shall-receive the-injustice of-the-father nor the-father shall-receive
iniustitiam filii. iustitia iusti super ipsum erit. et
the-injustice of-the-son the-justice of-the-just upon him shall-be and
iniquus si avertat se ab omnibus iniquitatibus quas
the-wicked-man if he-turn-away himself from all iniquities which
fecit et custodiat omnia mandata mea et faciat iustitiam et
he-did and keep all commands my and do justice and

misericordiam multam, vita vivet et non morietur: omnia
mercy much in-life he-shall-live and not shall-die all
delicta eius, quaecumque fecit, non erunt: in sua iustitia,
offenses his whatever he-did not shall-be in his justice
quam fecit, vita vivet. num quid voluntate volo mortem
which he-did in-life he-shall-live is-it that with-will I-wish the-death
iniusti, dicit dominus, quam ut avertat se a via sua
of-the-unjust says the-Lord rather-than that he-turn-away himself from way his
mala et vivat? cum se autem converterit iustus a iustitia
evil and live when himself but shall-have-turned the-just from justice
sua et fecerit iniquitatem secundum omnes iniquitates,
his and shall-have-done iniquity according-to all iniquities
quas fecit iniquus, omnes iustitiae, quas fecit, non erunt in
which has-done the-wicked all the-justices which he-did not shall-be in
memoria: in delicto suo, quo excidit, et in peccatis suis,
memory in offense his in-which he-fell and in sins his
quibus peccavit, morietur'. et post aliquanta: 'et scient omnes
in-which he-sinned he-shall-die and after some-things and shall-know all
gentes, quia propter peccata sua captivi ducti sunt domus
nations that because-of sins their captive led are the-house
Israel, eo quod reliquerunt me. et averti faciem meam
of-Israel for-that that they-left me and I-turned-away face my
ab eis et tradidi eos in manus inimicorum eius et omnes
from them and handed-over them into the-hands of-enemies its and all
gladio ceciderunt. secundum immunditias suas et secundum
by-sword fell according-to uncleannesses their and according-to
iniquitates suas feci illis, et averti faciem meam ab eis'.
iniquities their I-did to-them and turned-away face my from them
Haec de sanctorum prophetarum minis dixisse sufficiat:
these-things about of-the-holy prophets the-threats to-have-said let-it-suffice
pauca tantum de sapientia Salomonis, quae adhortationem
a-few only from the-wisdom of-Solomon which exhortation

vel denuntiationem exprimant regibus non minus quam minas
or denunciation may-express to-kings not less than threats
huic opusculo inserere necessarium duxi, ne dicant me
into-this little-work to-insert necessary I-have-thought lest they-say me
gravia et importabilia in humeros hominum verborum onera
heavy and unbearable on the-shoulders of-men of-words burdens
velle imponere, digito autem meo ea, id est consolatorio
to-wish to-place with-finger but my them that is with-consoling
affatu, nolle movere. audiamus itaque, quid propheta
address to-be-unwilling to-move let-us-hear and-so what the-prophet
dixit. 'diligite', inquit, 'iustitiam, qui iudicatis terram'. hoc
said love he-says justice who judge the-earth this
unum testimonium si toto corde servaretur, abunde ad
one testimony if with-whole heart it-were-kept abundantly for
corrigendum patriae duces sufficeret. nam si dilexissent
correcting of-the-fatherland the-leaders would-suffice for if they-had-loved
iustitiam, diligerent utique fontem quodammado et originem
justice they-would-love surely the-fountain in-a-way and origin
totius iustitiae deum. 'servite domino in bonitate et in
of-all justice God serve the-Lord in goodness and in
simplicitate cordis quaerite eum'. heu quis victurus est, ut
simplicity of-heart seek him alas who about-to-live is as
quidam ante nos ait, quando ista a civibus perficiantur,
a-certain-one before us says when these-things by the-citizens may-be-done
si tamen usquam perfici possunt, 'quoniam invenitur ab
if yet anywhere to-be-done they-can since he-is-found by
his qui non temptant illum, apparet autem eis, qui fidem
those who not tempt him he-appears moreover to-those who faith
habent in eum'. nam isti sine respectu temptant deum,
have in him for these without regard tempt God
cuius praecepta contumaci despectione contemnunt nec fidem
whose precepts with-stubborn contempt they-scorn nor faith

servant illi, cuius oraculis blandis vel aliquantulum severis
they-keep to-him to-whose oracles soothing or somewhat severe
dorsum versant et non faciem. 'perversae enim cogitationes
the-back they-turn and not the-face perverse for thoughts
separant a deo.' et hoc in tyrannis nostri temporis
separate from God and this in the-tyrants of-our time
perspicue deprehenditur. sed quid nostra mediocritas huic
clearly is-detected but why our mediocrity with-this
tam aperto sensui miscetur? loquatur namque pro nobis, ut
so plain sense is-mixed let-speak for for us as
diximus, qui solus verax est, spiritus scilicet sanctus, de
we-have-said who alone truthful is the-spirit namely holy about
quo nunc dicitur: 'spiritus autem sanctus disciplinae effugiet
whom now is-said the-spirit but holy of-discipline shall-flee
fictum'. et iterum: 'quoniam spiritus dei replevit orbem
the-feigned and again since the-spirit of-God has-filled the-world
terrarum'. et infra finem malorum bonorumque oculato
of-lands and below the-end of-the-wicked and-of-the-good with-eyewitness
iudicio praetendens ait: 'quoniam spes impii tamquam
judgment holding-forth he-says since the-hope of-the-impious as-if
lanugo est, quae a vento tollitur, et tamquam fumus,
down is which by the-wind is-carried-off and as-if smoke
qui a vento diffusus est, et tamquam spuma gracilis,
which by the-wind diffused is and as-if foam thin
quae a procella dispergitur, et tamquam memoria hospitis
which by the-storm is-scattered and as-if the-memory of-a-guest
unius diei praetereuntis, iusti autem in perpetuum vivent
of-one day passing the-just but for ever shall-live
et apud deum est merces illorum et cogitatio eorum apud
and with God is the-reward of-them and the-thought their with
altissimum. ideo accipient regnum decoris et diadema
the-most-high therefore they-shall-receive the-kingdom of-beauty and the-diadem

speciei de manu domini, quoniam dextera sua proteget
of-comeliness from the-hand of-the-Lord since right-hand his shall-protect
eos et brachio sancto suo defendet illos'. dissimiles etenim
them and with-arm holy his he-shall-defend them unlike for
sunt qualitate, sunt valde iusti et impii, nimirum, ut
are in-quality are very the-just and the-impious surely as
dixit dominus: 'eos qui honorant', inquiens, 'me, honorabo:
said the-Lord those who honor saying me I-shall-honor
et qui me spernunt, erunt ignobiles'.
and who me spurn shall-be ignoble

§§ 63–65

63–65 · THE TURN TO THE CLERGY

Wisdom warns the kings that a harsher judgment awaits those who rule. Gildas has argued with the kings through the prophets, hoping they will flee sin as from a serpent and turn to God. He would gladly stop, as if reaching port, but must also stone the bishops and clergy with words, asking pardon of the few good men whose life he praises.

Sed transeamus ad cetera: 'audite', inquit, 'omnes reges et
but let-us-pass to the-rest hear he-says all kings and
intellegite, discite, iudices finium terrae: praebete aures
understand learn O-judges of-the-ends of-the-earth offer ears
vos, qui continetis multitudines et placetis vobis in turbis
you who hold multitudes and please yourselves in the-crowds
nationum. quoniam data est a deo potestas vobis et virtus
of-nations since given is by God the-power to-you and strength
ab altissimo, qui interrogabit opera vestra et cogitationes
from the-most-high who shall-question works your and thoughts
scrutabitur: quoniam cum essetis ministri regni illius,
shall-search since when you-were ministers of-kingdom his

non recte iudicastis neque custodistis legem iustitiae neque
not rightly you-judged nor you-kept the-law of-justice nor
secundum voluntatem eius ambulastis: horrende et celeriter
according-to will his you-walked horribly and swiftly
apparebit vobis, quoniam iudicium durissimum his qui
he-shall-appear to-you since judgment most-harsh for-those who
praesunt fiet. exiguis enim conceditur misericordia, potentes
preside shall-be to-the-small for is-granted mercy the-mighty
autem potenter tormenta patientur. non enim personas
but mightily torments shall-suffer not for persons
subtrahet, qui est omnium dominator: nec reverebitur
shall-withdraw who is of-all the-ruler nor shall-he-stand-in-awe-of
magnitudinem cuiusquam, quoniam pusillum et magnum ipse
the-greatness of-anyone since the-small and the-great he
fecit et aequaliter cura est illi pro omnibus. fortioribus
made and equally care is to-him for all for-the-stronger
autem fortior instat cruciatio. ad vos ergo, reges, hi sunt
but a-stronger threatens torment to you therefore O-kings these are
sermones mei, ut discatis sapientiam et non decidatis. qui
words my that you-may-learn wisdom and not fall-away who
enim custodierint iusta, iustificabuntur, et qui didicerint
for shall-have-kept just-things shall-be-justified and who shall-have-learned
sancta, sanctificabuntur'.
holy-things shall-be-sanctified
Hactenus cum regibus patriae non minus prophetarum
thus-far with the-kings of-the-fatherland not less of-the-prophets
oraculis quam nostris sermonibus disceptavimus, volentes
with-the-oracles than with-our words we-have-disputed wishing
eos scire, quae propheta dixerat: 'quasi', inquiens, 'a
them to-know what the-prophet had-said as-if saying from
facie colubri fuge peccata: si accesseris ad illa,
the-face of-a-serpent flee sins if you-shall-have-approached to them

suscipient te dentes leonis, dentes eorum interficientes
they-shall-receive you the-teeth of-the-lion teeth their killing
animas hominum'. et iterum: 'quam magna misericordia
the-souls of-men and again how great the-mercy
domini et propitiatio eius convertentibus ad se'. et si non
of-the-Lord and propitiation his to-those-turning to him and if not
habemus in nobis illud apostolicum, ut dicamus: 'optabam
we-have in ourselves that apostolic so-that we-may-say I-wished
enim anathema esse a Christo pro fratribus meis', tamen
for accursed to-be from Christ for brothers my yet
illud propheticum toto corde possimus dicere: 'heu
that prophetic with-whole heart we-may-be-able to-say alas
quia anima perit!' et iterum: 'scrutemur vias nostras et
because the-soul perishes and again let-us-search ways our and
quaeramus et revertamur ad dominum: levemus corda nostra
let-us-seek and let-us-return to the-Lord let-us-raise hearts our
cum manibus ad deum in caelo'. sed et illud apostolicum:
with hands to God in heaven but also that apostolic
'cupimus unumquemque vestrum in visceribus Christi esse'.
we-desire each-one of-you in the-bowels of-Christ to-be
Quam enim libenter hoc in loco ac si marinis fluctibus
how for gladly this in place as if by-sea waves
iactatus et in optato evectus portu remis, si non tantos
tossed and into the-desired carried port by-oars if not so-great
talesque malitiae episcoporum vel ceterorum sacerdotum aut
and-such of-malice of-bishops or of-other priests or
clericorum in nostro quoque ordine erigi adversus deum
clerics in our also order to-be-raised against God
vidissem montes, quos me secundum legem, ceu testes,
I-had-seen mountains which I according-to the-law as witnesses
primum duris verborum cautibus, dein populum, si tamen
first with-hard of-words stones then the-people if yet

sanctionibus inhaeret, non ut corporaliter interficiantur, sed
to-the-sanctions it-clings not that bodily they-be-killed but
mortui vitiis vivant deo, ne personarum arguar exceptionis,
dead to-vices they-live to-God lest of-persons I-be-accused of-exception
totis necesse est viribus lapidare, verecundia interveniente
with-all necessary it-is strength to-stone shame intervening
quiescerem. sed mihi quaeso, ut iam in superioribus dixi,
I-would-rest but to-me I-beg as already in the-above I-have-said
ab his veniam impertiri, quorum vitam non solum laudo,
by those pardon to-be-granted whose life not only I-praise
verum etiam cunctis mundi opibus praefero, cuiusque me,
but also than-all of-the-world riches I-prefer of-which me
si fieri possit, ante mortis diem esse aliquamdiu participem
if to-happen it-can before of-death the-day to-be for-some-time a-sharer
opto et sitio, nostris iam nunc obvallatis sanctorum duobus
I-wish and I-thirst on-our now now walled-around of-the-saints by-two
clipeis lateribus invictis dorso ad veritatis moenia stabilito,
shields sides unconquered the-back to of-truth the-walls set-firm
capite pro galea adiutorio domini fidissime contecto
the-head for a-helmet by-the-help of-the-Lord most-faithfully covered
crebro veracium volatu volitent conviciorum cautes.
with-frequent of-truthful flight let-fly of-reproaches stones

§§ 66–69

66–69 · BRITAIN'S BAD PRIESTS

Britain has priests, but foolish, shameless, and greedy, who seize Peter's seat with unclean feet, despise the poor and honor the wicked rich, and buy their rank like Simon Magus, crossing the sea to purchase it. Gildas warns the people against such blind guides, and asks what Eli's own innocence profited him, contrasting Abel, Enoch, Noah, Abraham, Joseph, and Moses.

Sacerdotes habet Britannia, sed insipientes; quam plurimos
priests has Britain but foolish very many
ministros, sed impudentes; clericos, sed raptores subdolos;
ministers but shameless clerics but robbers deceitful
pastores, ut dicuntur, sed occisioni animarum lupos paratos,
shepherds as they-are-called but for-the-slaughter of-souls wolves prepared
quippe non commoda plebi providentes, sed proprii
as-being not the-advantages for-the-common-people providing but of-their-own
plenitudinem ventris quaerentes; ecclesiae domus habentes,
the-fullness of-belly seeking of-the-church houses having
sed turpis lucri gratia eas adeuntes; populos docentes,
but of-base gain for-the-sake them approaching peoples teaching
sed praebendo pessima exempla, vitia malosque mores; raro
but by-offering the-worst examples vices and-evil morals rarely
sacrificantes et numquam puro corde inter altaria stantes;
sacrificing and never with-pure heart among the-altars standing
plebem ob peccata non corripientes, nimirum eadem
the-common-people for sins not rebuking surely the-same-things
agentes; praecepta Christi spernentes et suas libidines votis
doing the-precepts of-Christ spurning and their lusts with-vows
omnibus implere curantes; sedem Petri apostoli inmundis
all to-fulfill caring the-seat of-Peter the-apostle with-unclean

pedibus usurpantes, sed merito cupiditatis in Iudae traditoris
feet usurping but by-the-desert of-greed into of-Judas the-traitor
pestilentem cathedram decidentes; veritatem pro inimico
the-pestilent chair falling-down truth as an-enemy
odientes et mendaciis ac si carissimis fratribus faventes; iustos
hating and lies as if most-dear brothers favoring the-just
inopes immanes quasi angues torvis vultibus conspicantes
poor monstrous as-if snakes with-grim faces looking-at
et sceleratos divites absque ullo verecundiae respectu sicut
and the-wicked rich without any of-shame regard as
caelestes angelos venerantes; egenis eleemosynam esse
heavenly angels venerating to-the-needy alms to-be
dandam summis e labiis praedicantes, sed ipsi vel obolum
to-be-given the-outermost from lips preaching but they even a-farthing
non dantes; nefanda populi scelera tacentes et suas
not giving the-unspeakable of-the-people crimes keeping-silent and their
iniurias quasi Christo irrogatas amplificantes; religiosam forte
injuries as-if on-Christ inflicted magnifying the-religious perhaps
matrem seu sorores domo pellentes et externas veluti
mother or sisters from-the-house driving-out and strange-women as-if
secretiori ministerio familiares indecenter levigantes vel
in-a-more-secret ministry intimate unbecomingly raising or
potius, ut vera dicam licet inepta non tam mihi quam
rather that true-things I-may-say though foolish not so-much for-me as
talia agentibus, humiliantes; ecclesiasticos post haec
such-things doing humbling church after these-things
gradus propensius quam regna caelorum ambientes et
ranks more-eagerly than the-kingdoms of-the-heavens canvassing-for and
tyrannico ritu acceptos defendentes nec tamen legitimis
in-tyrannical fashion received defending nor yet with-lawful
moribus illustrantes; ad praecepta sanctorum, si aliquando
morals illuminating to the-precepts of-the-saints if ever

dumtaxat audierint, quae ab illis saepissime audienda
only they-shall-have-heard which by them most-often to-be-heard
erant, oscitantes ac stupidos et ad ludicra et ineptas
were yawning and stupid and to amusements and foolish
saecularium hominum fabulas, ac si iter vitae, quae mortis
of-worldly men tales as if the-way of-life which of-death
pandunt, strenuos et intentos; pinguedinis gratia taurorum
they-open vigorous and intent of-fatness for-the-sake of-bulls
more raucos et ad illicita infeliciter promptos; vultus
in-the-manner hoarse and to unlawful-things unhappily ready the-faces
arroganter in altum habentes et sensus conscientia remordente
arrogantly on high having and the-senses with-conscience biting
ad ima vel tartarum demersos; uno sane perdito denario
to the-depths or Tartarus sunk by-one indeed lost penny
maestos et ad unum inquisitum laetos; in apostolicis
sad and at one gained glad in the-apostolic
sanctionibus ob inscientiam vel peccatorum pondus, ora
sanctions for ignorance or of-sins the-weight the-mouths
etiam scientium obturantes, hebetes ac mutos et in flexibus
even of-the-knowing stopping dull and dumb and in the-windings
mundialium negotiorum mendacibus doctissimos; quorum de
of-worldly affairs in-lying most-learned of-whose from
scelerata conversatione multos sacerdotio irruentes potius
wicked conduct many to-the-priesthood rushing rather
vel illud paene omni pecunia redimentes quam tractos
or it almost with-all money buying than drawn
et in eodem veteri infaustoque intolerabilium piaculorum
and in the-same old and-ill-starred of-intolerable crimes
caeno post sacerdotalem episcopatus vel presbyterii sedem,
mud after the-priestly of-the-bishopric or of-the-presbyterate seat
qui nec ibidem usquam sederunt, utpote indigne porcorum
who nor there ever have-sat as-being unworthily in-the-manner

more volutantes, rapto tantum sacerdotali nomine nec tamen
of-swine wallowing snatched only the-priestly name nor yet
tenore, vel apostolica dignitate accepta, sed qui nondum
the-course or apostolic dignity received but who not-yet
ad integram fidem sunt vel malorum paenitentia idonei,
to whole faith are or of-evils for-penitence fit
quomodo ad quemlibet ecclesiasticum, ut non dicam
how to any church so-that not I-may-say
summum, convenientes et adepti gradum, quem non
the-highest coming and having-gained rank which not
nisi sancti atque perfecti et apostolorum imitatores et, ut
except the-holy and perfect and of-the-apostles imitators and as
magistri gentium verbis loquar, irreprehensibiles legitime
of-the-master of-the-gentiles in-words I-may-speak blameless lawfully
et absque magno sacrilegii crimine suscipiunt?
and without great of-sacrilege crime receive
Quid enim tam impium tamque scelestum est quam ad
what for so impious and-so wicked is as to
similitudinem Simonis magi, non intervenientibus licet
the-likeness of-Simon the-magus not intervening though
interea promiscuis criminibus, episcopatus officium vel
meanwhile promiscuous crimes of-the-bishopric the-office or
presbyterii terreno pretio, quod sanctitate rectisque moribus
of-the-presbyterate with-earthly price which by-holiness and-right morals
decentius adquiritur, quempiam velle mercari? sed in eo isti
more-fittingly is-acquired anyone to-wish to-buy but in this these
propensius vel desperatius errant, quo non ab apostolis
more-eagerly or more-desperately err in-that not from the-apostles
vel apostolorum successoribus, sed a tyrannis et a
or of-the-apostles the-successors but from tyrants and from
patre eorum diabolo fucata et numquam profutura emunt
father their the-devil painted and never about-to-profit they-buy

sacerdotia: quin potius velut culmen tectumque malorum
priesthoods but rather as-if a-summit and-roof of-evils
omnium quoddam, quo non facile eis improperentur a
all a-certain by-which not easily to-them be-reproached by
quoquam admissa prisca vel nova et cupiditatis gulaeque
anyone committed old or new and of-greed and-of-gluttony
desideria utpote praepositi multorum facilius rapiant,
the-desires as-being set-over many more-easily they-may-seize
scelestae vitae structurae superponunt. nam si talis profecto
of-wicked life on-the-structures they-place-on-top for if such surely
coemptionis condicio ab impudentibus istis non dicam
of-the-purchase the-condition by shameless these not I-may-say
apostolo Petro, sed cuilibet sancto sacerdoti pioque regi
to-the-apostle Peter but to-any holy priest and-pious king
ingesta fuisset, eadem responsa accepissent, quae ab
offered had-been the-same answers they-would-have-received as from
apostolo auctor eorundem magus Simon dicente Petro:
the-apostle the-author of-the-same the-magus Simon saying Peter
'pecunia tua tecum sit in perditionem'. sed forte heu,
money your with-you be to perdition but perhaps alas
qui ambitores istos ordinant, immo potius humiliant atque
who canvassers these ordain or rather humble and
pro benedictione maledicunt, dum ex peccatoribus non
for blessing curse while from sinners not
paenitentes, quod rectius fuerat, sed sacrilegos et desperatos
penitent which more-right had-been but sacrilegious and desperate
faciunt et Iudam quodammodo in Petri cathedra domini
they-make and Judas in-a-way in of-Peter in-the-chair of-the-Lord
traditorem ac Nicolaum in loco Stephani martyris statuunt
the-traitor and Nicolas in the-place of-Stephen the-martyr they-set
inmundae haereseos adinventorem, eodem modo sacerdotio
of-unclean heresy the-inventor in-the-same way to-the-priesthood

adsciti sunt: et ideo non magnopere detestantur in filiis,
admitted they-were and therefore not greatly do-they-detest in (their)-sons
quin immo venerantur, quod similiter ut patribus subinde
but rather venerate what similarly as to-the-fathers forthwith
venisse certissimum est. etenim eos, si in parochiam
to-have-come most-certain it-is for them if in the-parish
resistentibus sibi et tam pretiosum quaestum denegantibus
to-those-resisting them and so precious gain denying
severe commessoribus huiuscemodi margaritam invenire non
severely to-the-fellow-feasters of-this-kind the-pearl to-find not
possint, praemissis ante sollicite nuntiis transnavigare maria,
they-can sent-ahead before anxiously messengers to-sail-across seas
terrasque spatiosas transmeare non tam piget quam delectat,
and-lands spacious to-cross not so-much it-irks as it-delights
ut omnino talis species inaequiparabilisque pulchritudo et,
that altogether such beauty and-incomparable loveliness and
ut verius dicam, zabolica illusio vel venditis omnibus
as more-truly I-may-say devilish illusion even sold all
copiis comparetur. dein cum magno apparatu magnaque
resources be-bought then when with-great display and-great
fantasia vel potius insania repedantes ad patriam ex
fantasy or rather madness returning to the-fatherland from
erecto erectiorem incessum pingunt et dudum summitates
erect a-more-erect gait they-paint and long-since the-summits
montium conspicantes nunc recte ad aethera vel ad summa
of-the-mountains looking-at now straight to the-air or to the-highest
nubium vellera luminum semidormitantes acies librant ac
of-the-clouds fleeces of-the-eyes half-sleeping the-edges they-poise and
sese nova quaedam plasmata, immo diabolica organa, ut
themselves new certain figments or-rather devilish organs as
quondam Novatus Romae, dominicae mulcator margaritae,
once Novatus at-Rome of-the-Lord's the-mauler pearl

porcus niger, patriae ingerunt, violenter manus non tam
the-swine black on-the-fatherland force violently hands not so-much
venerabilibus aris quam flammis inferni ultricibus dignas in
on-the-venerable altars as for-the-flames of-hell avenging worthy in
tali schema positi sacrosanctis Christi sacrificiis extensuri.
such a-figure placed over-the-most-holy of-Christ sacrifices about-to-stretch-out
Quid tu, infelix populе, a talibus, ut dixit apostolus,
why you O-unhappy people from such as said the-apostle
bestiis ventris praestolaris? hisne corrigeris, qui se
beasts of-the-belly do-you-expect by-these-ones shall-you-be-corrected who themselves
ipsos non modo ad bona non invitant, sed secundum
selves not only to good-things not invite but according-to
prophetae exprobrationem laborant, ut inique agant?
of-the-prophet the-reproach labor that wickedly they-may-act
talibusne oculis illustraberis, qui haec tantum avide
by-such eyes shall-you-be-enlightened who these-things only greedily
speculantur, quae proclive vitiis, id est Tartari portis,
observe which sloping to-vices that is of-Tartarus to-the-gates
ducant? vel certe secundum salvatoris dictum, si non istos
lead or surely according-to of-the-savior the-saying if not these
rapacissimos ut Arabiae lupos, ac si Loth ad montem,
most-rapacious as of-Arabia wolves as if Lot to the-mountain
igneum Sodomorum imbrem praepropere fugeritis, caeci
fiery of-the-Sodomites the-rain too-hastily you-shall-have-fled blind
educti a caecis pariter in inferni foveam cadetis.
led by the-blind together into of-hell the-pit you-shall-fall
Sed forsitan aliquis dicat: non ita omnes episcopi vel
but perhaps someone may-say not so all bishops or
presbyteri, ut superius comprehensi, quia non scismatis, non
presbyters as above included because not of-schism not
superbiae, non inmunditiae infamia maculantur, mali sunt.
of-pride not of-uncleanness by-infamy are-stained evil they-are

quod nec vehementer et nos diffitemur. sed licet sciamus
which not vehemently also we deny but although we-know
eos castos esse et bonos, breviter tamen respondebimus. quid
them chaste to-be and good briefly yet we-shall-answer what
profuit Heli sacerdoti, quod solus non violaverit praecepta
profited Eli the-priest that alone not he-had-violated the-precepts
domini, rapiendo in fuscinulis antequam adeps domino
of-the-Lord by-seizing with forks before the-fat to-the-Lord
offerretur ex ollis carnes, dum eadem mortis ira, qua
was-offered from the-pots meats while by-the-same of-death wrath by-which
filii sunt, multatur? quis rogo eorum ob invidiam melioris
the-sons are he-is-punished who I-ask of-them for envy of-the-better
hostiae caelestique igni in caelis evectae, ut Abel, occisus?
victim and-by-heavenly fire to the-heavens carried as Abel was-slain
qui etiam mediocris verbi aspernantur convicium. quis perosus
who even of-moderate word scorn the-reproach who hated
est consilium malignantium et cum impiis non sedit, ut
has the-counsel of-the-malignant and with the-impious not has-sat so-that
de eo veridice quasi de Enoch diceretur: 'ambulavit Enoch
about him truly as-if about Enoch it-were-said walked Enoch
cum deo et non inveniebatur' in mundi scilicet vanitate
with God and not was-found in of-the-world namely the-vanity
omnis post idola proclive id temporis claudicare relicto
all after idols sloping at-that of-time limping left
deo insipientis? quis eorum salutari in arca, hoc est nunc
God the-foolish who of-them saving in the-ark that is now
ecclesia, nullum deo adversantem, ut Noe diluvii tempore,
the-church no-one to-God opposing as Noah of-the-flood in-the-time
non admisit, ut perspicue monstraretur non nisi innoxios
not admitted so-that plainly it-be-shown not except the-innocent
vel paenitentes egregios in dominica domu esse debere? quis
or the-penitent outstanding in the-Lord's house to-be to-be-bound who

victoribus solum et in tricentenario numero, hoc est trinitatis
to-the-victors only and in the-three-hundred number that is of-the-Trinity
sacramento, liberato iusto regum quinque victriciumque
by-the-sacrament freed the-just-man of-the-kings five and-of-the-victorious
turmarum exercitus ferales vincentibus et nequaquam aliena
troops the-armies deadly conquering and by-no-means another's
cupientibus sacrificium offerens, ut Melchisedech, benedixit?
desiring a-sacrifice offering as Melchizedek blessed
quis sponte proprium in altari capite caedendum, ut
who of-his-own-accord his-own on the-altar with-the-head to-be-cut as
Habraham, deo iubente optulit filium, ut simile quoddam
Abraham to-God ordering offered son that similar something
huic impleret Christi mandatum dicentis oculum dextrum
to-this he-might-fulfill of-Christ the-command saying the-eye right
scandalizantem evelli debere et prophetae praecaveret
offending to-be-plucked ought and of-the-prophet should-beware
se maledictum esse gladium et sanguinem prohibentem?
himself accursed to-be the-sword and blood forbidding
quis memoriam malefacti de corde radicitus, ut Ioseph,
who the-memory of-wrongdoing from the-heart by-the-roots as Joseph
evulsit? quis in monte cum domino locutus et
tore-out who on the-mountain with the-Lord having-spoken and
nequaquam concrepantibus tubis exinde perterritus duas
by-no-means at-the-resounding trumpets thence terrified two
tabulas cornutamque faciem aspectu incredulis inhabilem et
tablets and-a-horned face to-sight to-the-unbelieving unbearable and
horrendam tropico sensu, ut Moyses, advexit? quis eorum pro
horrible in-tropical sense as Moses brought who of-them for
peccatis populi exorans imo de pectore clamavit, ut ipse,
the-sins of-the-people praying deepest from breast cried as he

domine, inquiens, 'peccavit populus iste peccatum grande:
O-Lord saying has-sinned people this a-sin great
quod si dimittis eis, dimitte: alioquin dele me de libro tuo'?
which if you-forgive them forgive otherwise blot-out me from book your

§§ 70–73

70–73 · THE OLD TESTAMENT SAINTS

Which of these priests has the zeal of Phinehas, Joshua's labor for Israel, Jephthah's sacrifice of his only daughter, Gideon's faith, the strength of Samson, the integrity of Samuel, or Elijah's fire against Baal's prophets? Which has Elisha's sight, Isaiah's cleansed lips, or Jeremiah's endurance? And which has suffered like the apostles, James, Stephen, Peter, and Paul, whom Gildas recalls one by one?

Quis zelo dei accensus mirabili ad ultionem fornicationis
who with-zeal of-God kindled wonderful to vengeance of-fornication
sine dilatione, sanando paenitentiae medicamine stupri
without delay by-healing of-penitence with-the-medicine of-lust
affectum, ne ira populo inardesceret, sicut Finees
the-affection lest wrath against-the-people should-blaze as Phinehas
sacerdos, ut per hoc in aevo reputaretur illi iustitia,
the-priest so-that through this for ever should-be-reckoned to-him justice
strenue consurrexit? quis vero eorum vel in extirpationem
vigorously rose-up who but of-them either into extirpation
usque ad internicionem de terra repromissionis septem
all-the-way to destruction from the-land of-promise of-seven
gentium morali intellegentia, vel ad constabilitionem spiritalis
nations in-moral understanding or for the-establishment of-the-spiritual
Israel pro eis Iesum Nave imitatus est? quis eorum
Israel for them Joshua son-of-Nun imitated has who of-them
populo dei finales terminos trans Iordanem, ut sciretur
to-the-people of-God final boundaries across the-Jordan so-that it-be-known

quid cui tribui conveniat, sicut supradicti, Finees scilicet
what to-whom to-be-allotted is-fitting as the-above-said Phinehas namely
et Iesus, sagaciter divisere, ostendit? quis ut adversariorum
and Joshua shrewdly divided has-shown who so-that of-the-adversaries
plebi dei innumera prosterneret gentium milia, unicam
to-the-people of-God countless he-might-lay-low of-nations thousand only
filiam, quae propria voluptas intellegitur, imitans et in hoc
daughter who his-own pleasure is-understood imitating and in this
apostolum dicentem: 'non quaerens quod mihi utile est,
the-apostle saying not seeking what to-me useful is
sed quod multis, ut salvi fiant', obviantem victoribus
but what to-many that saved they-may-be meeting the-victors
cum tympanis et choris, id est carnalibus desideriis, in
with drums and choirs that is fleshly desires as
sacrificium votivae placationis, ut Iepte, mactavit? quis eorum
a-sacrifice of-votive appeasement as Jephthah slew who of-them
ad conturbanda fuganda sternendaque superbarum gentium
for confounding putting-to-flight and-laying-low of-proud nations
castra, mysterii trinitatis, ut supra diximus, cum lagoenas
the-camps of-the-mystery of-the-Trinity as above we-have-said with jars
viris tenentibus egregias in manibus sonantesque tubas,
by-the-men holding outstanding in hands and-sounding trumpets
id est propheticos et apostolicos sensus, ut dixit dominus
that is the-prophetic and apostolic senses as said the-Lord
prophetae: 'exalta quasi tuba vocem tuam': et psalmista
to-the-prophet raise as-if a-trumpet voice your and the-psalmist
de apostolis: 'in omnem terram exivit sonus eorum' et
about the-apostles into all the-earth has-gone-out sound their and
lagoenas splendidissimo ignis lumine noctu coruscantes, quae
the-jars with-the-most-splendid of-fire light by-night flashing which
accipiuntur in sanctorum corporibus bonis operibus annexis
are-understood in of-the-saints the-bodies with-good works joined

et sancti spiritus igni ardentibus, ut apostolus, 'habentes',
and of-the-holy spirit with-fire burning as the-apostle having
inquit, 'thesaurum istum in vasis fictilibus', post idolatriae
he-says treasure this in vessels earthen after of-idolatry
luci, quod moraliter interpretatum condensae et fuscae
of-the-grove which morally interpreted of-the-dense and dark
cupiditatis, succisionem silvae et evidentia signa Iudaici
of-greed the-cutting-down of-the-forest and evident signs of-the-Jewish
velleris imbris caelestis expertis et gentilis rore sancti
fleece of-the-shower heavenly devoid and of-the-gentile with-the-dew of-the-holy
spiritus madefacti fide non dubia, ut Gedeon, processit?
spirit soaked with-faith not doubtful as Gideon went-forth
Quis eorum mori exoptans mundo et vivere Christo
who of-them to-die desiring to-the-world and to-live to-Christ
luxuriosos gentium convivas laudantes deos suos, id est,
the-luxurious of-the-gentiles banqueters praising gods their that is
sensus, extollentes divitias, ut apostolus 'et avaritia', inquit,
the-senses exalting riches as the-apostle and avarice he-says
'quae est simulacrorum servitus', concussis duabus virtute
which is of-idols servitude shaken two by-the-strength
brachiorum columnis, quae intelleguntur in voluptatibus nequam
of-the-arms the-columns which are-understood in pleasures wicked
animae carnisque, quibus domus humanae omnis nequitiae
of-soul and-of-flesh by-which the-house human of-all wickedness
quodammodo pangitur ac fulcimentatur, tam innumerabiles, ut
in-a-way is-fixed and propped so countless as
Sampson, prostravit? quis orationibus holocaustoque lactantis
Samson laid-low who by-prayers and-the-burnt-offering of-a-suckling
agni Philistinorum metum depellens insperatas tonitruorum
lamb of-the-Philistines the-fear driving-away unhoped-for of-thunders
voces nubiumque imbres concitans absque adulatione regem
voices and-of-clouds rains stirring without flattery a-king

constituens, eundem deo non placentem abiciens, uncto pro
establishing the-same to-God not pleasing casting-off anointed for
illo meliore in regno, ut Samuel, valedicturus populo
him a-better-one in the-kingdom as Samuel about-to-say-farewell to-the-people
astabit hoc modo dicens: 'ecce praesto sum, loquimini coram
shall-stand in-this way saying behold here I-am speak before
domino et Christo eius, utrum bovem cuiusquam tulerim
the-Lord and Christ his whether the-ox of-anyone I-have-taken
an asinum, si quempiam calumniatus sum, si oppressi
or ass if anyone slandered I-have if I-have-oppressed
aliquem, si de manu cuiusquam munus accepi? cui
anyone if from the-hand of-anyone a-gift I-have-received to-whom
a populo responsum est dicente: non es calumniatus
by the-people answered it-was saying not you-have slandered
nos neque oppressisti neque tulisti de manu alicuius
us nor have-you-oppressed nor have-you-taken from the-hand of-anyone
quippiam'. quis eorum, igne caelesti centum superbos exurens,
anything who of-them with-fire heavenly a-hundred proud burning
quinquaginta humiles servans et absque adulationis fuco,
fifty humble saving and without of-flattery dye
non deum per prophetas, sed idolum Accaron consulenti,
not God through the-prophets but the-idol of-Ekron to-him-consulting
mortem imminentem iniquo regi annuntians, omnes
death impending to-the-wicked king announcing all
prophetas simulacri Baal, qui interpretati accipiuntur sensus
the-prophets of-the-image of-Baal who interpreted are-understood the-senses
humani invidiae avaritiae, ut iam diximus, semper intenti,
human of-envy of-avarice as already we-have-said always intent
mucrone corusco, hoc est verbo dei, ut Helias egregius
with-sword flashing that is with-the-word of-God as Elijah the-outstanding
vates, prostravit et zelo dei commotus, iniquorum
seer laid-low and by-the-zeal of-God moved of-the-wicked

terrae imbres adimens aetherales, ac si fortissimo penurii
from-the-land the-rains taking-away heavenly as if with-a-most-strong of-want
clustello tribus annis sexque mensibus obseratos, fame
bolt for-three years and-six months locked-up with-famine
siti moribundus in deserto conquestus est: domine,
with-thirst dying in the-desert complained has O-Lord
inquiens, 'prophetas tuos occiderunt et altaria tua suffoderunt
saying prophets your they-have-killed and altars your have-undermined
et ego relictus sum solus et quaerunt animam meam?'
and I left am alone and they-seek soul my
Quis eorum carissimum discipulum terrenis extra solitum
who of-them the-dearest disciple with-earthly beyond custom
ponderibus oneratum, quae ante ea a se magnopere licet
weights loaded which before them by him greatly though
rogato ut acciperet despecta fuissent, etsi non perpetua
asked that he-might-receive despised had-been even-if not with-perpetual
lepra, ut Helisaeus, saltim expulsione multavit? et quis ex
leprosy as Elisha at-least with-expulsion has-punished and who of
illis puero in vitae desperatione aestuanti atque inproviso
them to-the-boy in of-life desperation burning and unexpectedly
super bellico hostium apparatu civitatem, in qua erant,
over the-warlike of-the-enemies apparatus the-city in which they-were
obsidentium tremefacto inter nos, ut ille, animae visus, ferventi
of-the-besiegers terrified inner (eyes) as he of-the-soul the-sight by-fervent
exoratione ad deum facta, ita ut intueri poterit auxiliarium
prayer to God made so that to-behold he-could of-the-auxiliary
caelestis exercitus, armatorum curruum ceu equitum ignito
heavenly army of-armed chariots as-if of-horsemen with-fiery
vultu fulgentium montem plenum, patefecit, et credere
face shining the-mountain full opened and to-believe
quin fortior fortior esset ad salvandum quam inimici ad
that the-stronger stronger was for saving than the-enemies for

pugnandum? et quis eorum corporis tactu mortui scilicet
fighting and who of-them of-the-body by-the-touch dead namely
mundo, viventis autem deo, alii diverso funere occubanti
to-the-world living but to-God to-another of-a-different death lying-dead
procul dubio mortuo deo, vitiis vero viventi quasi supra dictus
beyond doubt dead to-God to-vices but living as-if the-above said
proficiet, ita ut statim prosiliens Christo grates pro sanitate
shall-profit so that at-once leaping-up to-Christ thanks for health
agat cunctorum paene mortalium ore desperata?
he-may-give of-all almost of-mortals by-the-mouth despaired-of
Cuius eorum, carbone ignito de altari forcipe Cherubin
whose of-them by-a-coal fiery from the-altar with-the-tongs of-the-Cherub
advecto, ut peccata sua delerentur humilitate confessionis,
brought that sins his might-be-destroyed by-the-humility of-confession
labia, ut Esaiae, mundata sunt et efficaci oratione sibi
the-lips as of-Isaiah cleansed were and by-effective prayer to-himself
adiuncta pii regis Ezechiae, supplantatione centum
joined of-the-pious king Hezekiah by-the-overthrow a-hundred
octoginta quinque milia exercitus Assyriorum nullo apparente
eighty five thousand of-the-army of-the-Assyrians no appearing
vulneris vestigio angeli manu, ut supra dicti, prostrata
of-a-wound trace of-the-angel by-the-hand as above said laid-low
sunt? quis eorum ob praecepta dei et minas caelitus
were who of-them for the-precepts of-God and threats from-heaven
datas veritatemque vel non audientibus proferendam squalores
given and-truth even not to-those-hearing to-be-brought-forth the-filth
pedoresque carcerum, ut momentaneas mortes, ut beatus
and-stench of-prisons as momentary deaths as blessed
Ieremias excepit? et ne multa: quis eorum, ut magister
Jeremiah received and lest much who of-them as the-master
gentium dixit, errare in montibus et in speluncis et in
of-the-gentiles said to-wander in mountains and in caves and in

cavernis terrae, lapidari, secari, totius mortis genere pro
the-hollows of-the-earth to-be-stoned to-be-sawn of-every of-death by-kind for
nomine domini attemptari, sicut sancti prophetae, perpessus est?
the-name of-the-Lord to-be-tried as the-holy prophets endured has
Sed quid immoramur in exemplis veteribus, ac si non
but why do-we-linger in examples old as if not
essent in novo ulla? audiant itaque nos, qui absque ullo
there-were in the-new any let-hear and-so us who without any
labore angustum hoc iter Christianae religionis praetento
labor narrow this way of-Christian religion held-forth
tantum sacerdotali nomine intrare se putant, carpentes
only the-priestly name to-enter themselves think plucking
paucos flores veluti summos de extento sanctorum novi
few flowers as-if the-highest from the-extended of-the-holy new
testamenti tironum amoenoque prato. quis vestrum, qui
testament of-the-recruits and-pleasant meadow who of-you who
torpetis potius quam sedetis legitime in sacerdotali sede,
are-torpid rather than sit lawfully in the-priestly seat
eiectus de consilio impiorum, post diversarum plagas
cast-out from the-council of-the-impious after of-various the-blows
virgarum ut sancti apostoli, quod dignus habitus est pro
of-rods as the-holy apostles that worthy held he-was for
Christo vero deo contumeliam pati, toto corde trinitati
Christ the-true God insult to-suffer with-whole heart to-the-Trinity
gratias egit? quis ob testimonium verum deo ferendum
thanks gave who for testimony true to-God to-be-borne
fullonis vecte cerebro percussus, ut Iacobus primus in
of-a-fuller by-the-bar on-the-brain struck as James first in
novo dumtaxat episcopus testamento, corporaliter interiit?
the-new namely bishop testament bodily perished
quis gladio vestrum ab iniquo principe, ut Iacobus Iohannis
who by-sword of-you by a-wicked prince as James of-John

frater, capite caesus est? quis, ut protominister martyrque
the-brother in-the-head struck was who as the-first-minister and-martyr
euangelicus, hoc solum criminis habens, quod viderit deum,
of-the-gospel this alone of-crime having that he-saw God
quem perfidi videre nequiverant, nefandis manibus lapidatus
whom the-faithless to-see had-not-been-able by-unspeakable hands stoned
est? quis inversis pedibus crucis affixus pro reverentia
was who with-reversed feet of-the-cross fixed for reverence
Christi patibulo, quem non minus morte quam vita
of-Christ to-the-gibbet whom not less by-death than by-life
honoraturus, ut clavicularius ille caelorum regni idoneus,
about-to-honor as the-key-bearer that of-the-heavens of-the-kingdom fit
extremum halitum fudit? quis ex vobis gladii ictu
the-last breath poured-out who of you of-the-sword by-the-stroke
veridicantis pro confessione Christi post vincula carceris,
of-one-speaking-truth for the-confession of-Christ after the-chains of-prison
naufragia marum, virgarum caedem, post fluminum latronum
the-shipwrecks of-seas of-rods the-beating after of-rivers of-robbers
gentium Iudaeorum pseudoapostolorum continua pericula, post
of-gentiles of-Jews of-false-apostles continual perils after
famis ieiunii vigiliarum labores, post perpetem sollicitudinem
of-famine of-fasting of-vigils the-labors after the-perpetual anxiety
omnium ecclesiarum, post aestum pro scandalizantibus, post
of-all the-churches after the-heat for those-offended after
infirmitatem pro infirmis, post admirabilem praedicando
weakness for the-weak after the-wonderful by-preaching
Christi evangelium orbis paene circuitum, ut vas
of-Christ the-gospel of-the-world almost circuit as the-vessel
electionis magisterque gentium electus capite plexus est?
of-election and-master of-the-gentiles chosen in-the-head struck was

§§ 74–76

74–76 · IGNATIUS, POLYCARP, BASIL

Gildas quotes Ignatius' letter to the Romans, longing for the beasts so that he may begin to be Christ's disciple, and sets it against the priests' pride, likened to Lucifer's. He adds Polycarp at the stake and Basil before the Arian prince. Then he turns to the prophets' threats against negligent priests, beginning with the doom pronounced on Eli's house.

Quis vestrum, ut sanctus martyr Ignatius Antiochiae urbis
who of-you as the-holy martyr Ignatius of-Antioch the-city
episcopus, post admirabiles in Christo actus ob testimonium
bishop after admirable in Christ deeds for the-testimony
eius leonum molis Romae confractus est? cuius verba
his of-lions by-the-millstones at-Rome broken was whose words
cum ad passionem duceretur audientes, si aliquando vultus
when to the-passion he-was-led hearing if ever faces
vestri rubore confusi sunt, non solum in comparatione
your with-redness confounded are not only in comparison
eius vos non putabitis sacerdotes, sed ne mediocres quidem
with-him you not shall-think priests but not ordinary even
Christianos esse. ait enim in epistola, quam ad Romanam
Christians to-be he-says for in the-letter which to the-Roman
ecclesiam misit: 'a Syria usque Romam cum bestiis terra
church he-sent from Syria all-the-way-to Rome with beasts by-land
marique depugno die ac nocte conexus et colligatus decem
and-by-sea I-fight by-day and by-night bound and tied-together to-ten
leopardis, militibus dico ad custodiam datis, qui ex beneficiis
leopards soldiers I-mean to guard given who from kindnesses
nostris saeviores fiunt. sed ego eorum nequitiis magis erudior,
our more-savage become but I their by-wickednesses more am-taught

nec tamen in hoc iustificatus sum. o salutares bestias, quae
nor yet in this justified am-I O saving beasts which
praeparantur mihi, quando venient? quando emittentur?
are-prepared for-me when shall-they-come when shall-they-be-sent-forth
quando eis frui licebit carnibus meis? quas ego
when them to-enjoy shall-it-be-allowed with-flesh my which I
exopto acriores parari et invitabo ad devorationem mei
desire fiercer to-be-prepared and I-shall-invite to the-devouring of-me
et deprecabor, ne forte, ut in nonnullis fecerunt, timeant
and I-shall-pray lest perhaps as in some they-have-done they-fear
attingere corpus meum: quin immo, et si cunctabuntur,
to-touch body my nay rather even if they-shall-hesitate
ego vim faciam, ego me ingeram. date, quaeso, veniam, ego
I force shall-make I myself shall-thrust give I-beg pardon I
novi, quid expediat mihi: nunc incipio esse Christi discipulus:
know what is-expedient for-me now I-begin to-be of-Christ a-disciple
facessat invidia vel humani affectus, vel nequitiae spiritalis,
let-depart envy whether of-human feeling or of-wickedness spiritual
ut in Iesum Christum adipisci merear ignes, cruces,
that in Jesus Christ to-attain I-may-deserve fires crosses
bestias, dispersiones ossium discerptionesque membrorum ac
beasts scatterings of-bones and-tearings of-limbs and
totius corporis poenae et omnia in me unum supplicia
of-the-whole body punishments and all on me one torments
diaboli arte quaesita complentur, dummodo Iesum Christum
of-the-devil by-art sought are-fulfilled provided Jesus Christ
merear adipisci'. quid ad haec dormitantibus animae oculis
I-may-deserve to-attain why to these with-sleeping of-soul eyes
aspicitis? quid talia surdis sensuum auribus auscultatis?
do-you-look why such-things with-deaf of-the-senses ears do-you-listen
discutite, quaeso, tenebrosam atramque cordis vestri caliginem
shake-off I-beg the-dark and-black of-heart your gloom

teporis, ut veritatis et humilitatis praefulgidum lumen
of-tepidity that of-truth and of-humility the-very-bright light
videre possitis. Christianus non mediocris, sed perfectus,
to-see you-may-be-able a-Christian not ordinary but perfect
sacerdos non vilis, sed summus, martyr non segnis, sed
a-priest not mean but highest a-martyr not sluggish but
praecipuus dicit: nunc incipio esse Christi discipulus. et
outstanding says now I-begin to-be of-Christ a-disciple and
vos, ac si Lucifer ille de caelo proiectus, verbis, non
you as if Lucifer that from heaven cast in-words not
potestate erigimini et quodammodo sub dente ruminatis et
in-power are-lifted-up and in-a-way under the-tooth you-chew and
gestibus praetenditis, quae antea actor vester depinxerat, 'in
by-gestures you-hold-forth what before author your had-depicted into
caelum', inquiens, 'conscendam et ero similis altissimo'.
heaven saying I-shall-ascend and shall-be like to-the-most-high
et iterum: 'ego fodi et bibi aquam et exsiccavi vestigio
and again I have-dug and drunk water and dried-up with-the-track
pedum meorum omnes rivos aggerum'. multo rectius
of-feet my all the-streams of-the-dams much more-rightly
oportebat vos imitari illum et audire, qui totius bonitatis
it-behooved you to-imitate him and to-hear who of-all goodness
et humilitatis vere invictum exemplar est, dicentem per
and of-humility truly the-unconquered pattern is saying through
prophetam: 'ego autem sum vermis et non homo, opprobrium
the-prophet I but am a-worm and not a-man the-reproach
hominum et abiectio plebis'. o mirabile quoddam dixisse
of-men and the-castaway of-the-people O wonderful a-certain-thing to-have-said
eum opprobrium hominum, cum omnis mundi opprobria
him the-reproach of-men when of-all the-world the-reproaches
deleverit: et iterum in euangelio. 'non possum ego a
he-destroyed and again in the-gospel not can I from

me ipso facere quicquam', cum ipse coaevus patri ac
me myself to-do anything though he coeval with-the-Father and
spiritui sancto, communis eiusdemque substantiae, caelum
the-spirit holy shared and-of-the-same substance heaven
et terram cum omni eorum inaestimabili ornamento fecerit,
and earth with all their inestimable ornament made
non alterius sed propria potestate; et vos arroganter verba
not another's but by-his-own power and you arrogantly words
exaltasse, propheta dicente: 'quid superbit terra et cinis?'
to-have-exalted the-prophet saying why is-proud earth and ash
Sed ad propositum revertar: quis, inquam, ex vobis, ut
but to the-purpose I-shall-return who I-say of you as
Smyrnensis ecclesiae pastor egregius Polycarpus Christi
of-Smyrna of-the-church the-shepherd outstanding Polycarp of-Christ
testis, mensam humane hospitibus ad ignem cum avide
the-witness a-table humanely to-the-guests to the-fire with greedily
trahentibus apposuit et obiectus flammis pro Christi caritate
dragging set and cast to-the-flames for of-Christ love
dixit: 'qui dedit mihi ignis ferre supplicium, dabit, ut
said he-who gave me of-fire to-bear the-punishment shall-give that
sine clavorum confixione flammas immobiliter perferam'.
without of-nails the-fixing the-flames immovably I-may-bear
unum adhuc praeter magnam verbis volans sanctorum
one still besides the-great with-words flying-over of-the-saints
silvam exempli gratia ponam, Basilium scilicet Caesariensem
forest of-example for-the-sake I-shall-set Basil namely of-Caesarea
episcopum, qui, cum ab iniquo principe minae huiuscemodi
the-bishop who when by a-wicked prince threats of-this-kind
intentarentur, quod, nisi in crastinum Arriano caeno, ut
were-held-out that unless on the-morrow by-the-Arian mud as
ceteri, macularetur, esset omnino moriturus, dixisse
the-others he-were-stained he-would-be altogether about-to-die to-have-said

fertur: 'ego sane ero cras, qui hodie sum: tu te utinam
is-reported I indeed shall-be tomorrow who today I-am you yourself would-that
non mutares'. et iterum: 'utinam haberem aliquid digni
not you-changed and again would-that I-had something of-worthy
muneris, quod offerrem huic, qui maturius Basilium de
gift which I-might-offer to-this-one who more-quickly Basil from
nodo follis huius absolveret'. quis ex vobis apostolici sermonis
the-knot of-bag this should-loose who of you of-the-apostolic word
regulam, quae ab omnibus semper sanctis sacerdotibus
the-rule which by all always holy priests
quibusque temporibus extantibus humanam suggestionem
in-all times existing human suggestion
praecipitanter ad nequitiam festinantem, recutientibus servata
headlong to wickedness hastening driving-back kept
est, in concussione tyrannorum indirupte custodivit, hoc
was in the-shaking of-tyrants unbrokenly has-kept in-this
modo dicens: 'oboedire oportet magis deo quam hominibus'.
way saying to-obey it-behooves rather God than men
Igitur confugientes solito more ad domini misericordiam
therefore fleeing in-the-usual manner to of-the-Lord the-mercy
sanctorumque prophetarum eius voces, ut illi pro nobis
and-of-the-holy prophets his the-voices that they for us
oraculorum suorum iacula inperfectis pastoribus, ut antea
of-oracles their the-darts at-the-imperfect shepherds as before
tyrannis, quis compuncti sanentur, librent, videamus quid
at-the-tyrants by-which pierced they-may-be-healed may-poise let-us-see what
dominus per prophetas ad desides et inhonestos sacerdotes
the-Lord through the-prophets to the-slothful and dishonorable priests
et non bene populum tam exempla quam verba docentes
and not well the-people as-much by-examples as by-words teaching
minarum loquatur. nam et Heli ille sacerdos in Silo pro eo,
of-threats may-speak for also Eli that priest in Shiloh for that

quod non digno deo zelo severe in filios contemnentes
that not with-worthy of-God zeal severely on the-sons despising
deum ultus fuerat, sed molliter et clementer, utpote paterno
God avenged had but softly and mildly as with-fatherly
affectu, admonuerat, tali animadversione damnatur, dicente
feeling had-admonished with-such punishment is-condemned saying
ad eum propheta: 'haec dicit dominus: manifeste ostendi
to him the-prophet these-things says the-Lord manifestly I-showed
me ad domum patris tui, cum essent in Aegypto servientes
myself to the-house of-father your when they-were in Egypt serving
Pharaonis, et elegi domum patris tui ex omnibus tribubus
of-Pharaoh and I-chose the-house of-father your out-of all tribes
Israel mihi in sacerdotio'. et post pauca: 'quare respexisti
of-Israel for-me in the-priesthood and after a-few-words why have-you-looked
in incensum meum et in sacrificium meum improbo oculo
on incense my and on sacrifice my with-wicked eye
et honorificasti filios tuos plus quam me, ut benediceres
and have-honored sons your more than me so-that you-blessed
eos a primordio in omnibus sacrificiis coram me?' 'et nunc
them from the-beginning in all sacrifices before me and now
sic dicit dominus: quoniam qui honorificant me, honorabo
so says the-Lord since who honor me I-shall-honor
eos: et qui pro nihilo habent me, ad nihilum redigentur. ecce
them and who for nothing hold me to nothing shall-be-reduced behold
dies venient et disperdam nomen tuum et semen domus
days shall-come and I-shall-destroy name your and the-seed of-the-house
patris tui'. 'et hoc tibi signum sit, quod veniet super duos
of-father your and this to-you a-sign be that shall-come upon two
filios tuos Ofni et Finees; in uno die morientur ambo
sons your Hophni and Phinehas on one day shall-die both
in gladio virorum'. si haec itaque patiuntur, qui verbis
by the-sword of-men if these-things and-so suffer who with-words

tantum subiectos et non condigna ultione emendant, quid
only the-subjects and not with-worthy vengeance amend what
ipsis fiet, qui ad mala hortantur peccando et trahunt?
to-them shall-be-done who to evils exhort by-sinning and drag

§§ 77–80

77–80 · THE PROPHETS AGAINST THE PRIESTS

The prophet from Judah who ate at Bethel against God's command is killed by a lion. Isaiah condemns the priests drunk with wine, the mocking rulers who made a covenant with death, and the people who honor God with their lips; Jeremiah says the priests did not ask where the Lord is, and that the prophets prophesied lies while the people loved it.

Quid illi quoque perspicuum est vero vati post
what to-that-one also plain is the-true seer after
expletionem signi ab eodem praedicti et restitutionem
the-fulfillment of-the-sign by him foretold and the-restoration
aridae manus impio regi misso a Iudaea prophetare in
of-the-withered hand to-the-impious king sent from Judea to-prophesy in
Bethel prohibitoque, ne quid ibidem cibi gustaret, ac decepto
Bethel and-forbidden lest anything there of-food he-should-taste and deceived
ab alio, ut dicebatur, propheta, ut parum quid panis et
by another as was-said prophet so-that a-little something of-bread and
aquae sumeret, obtigit, dicente ad eum suo hospite: 'haec
of-water he-took befell saying to him his host these-things
dicit dominus deus: quia inoboediens fuisti ori
says the-Lord God because disobedient you-have-been to-the-mouth
domini et non custodisti mandatum, quod praecepit dominus
of-the-Lord and not you-have-kept the-command which commanded the-Lord
deus tuus et reversus es et comedisti panem et bibisti
God your and returned you-have and eaten bread and drunk

aquam in hoc loco, in quo mandaveram tibi, ne manducares
water in this place in which I-had-commanded you lest you-eat
panem nec biberes aquam, non ponetur corpus tuum in
bread nor drink water not shall-be-placed body your in
sepulcro patrum tuorum. et factum est', inquit, 'postquam
the-tomb of-fathers your and done it-was he-says after
manducavit panem et bibit aquam, stravit sibi asinam
he-ate bread and drank water he-saddled for-himself ass
suam et abiit: et invenit eum leo in via et occidit eum?'
his and went-away and found him a-lion on the-way and killed him
Esaiam quoque sanctum prophetam de sacerdotibus hoc
Isaiah also the-holy prophet about the-priests in-this
modo loquentem audite: 'vae impio in malum, retributio
way speaking hear woe to-the-impious into evil the-repayment
enim manuum eius fiet ei. populum meum exactores
for of-hands his shall-be-done to-him people my exactors
sui spoliaverunt et mulieres dominatae sunt eius. populе
its have-despoiled and women ruled have it O-people
meus, qui beatum te dicunt, ipsi te decipiunt et viam
my who blessed you call they you deceive and the-way
gressuum tuorum dissipant. stat ad iudicandum dominus et
of-steps your scatter stands for judging the-Lord and
stat ad iudicandos populos. dominus ad iudicium veniet
stands for judging the-peoples the-Lord to judgment shall-come
cum senibus populi sui et principibus eius. vos depasti
with the-elders of-people his and princes its you grazed-down
estis vineam meam, rapina pauperis in domo vestra. quare
have vineyard my the-plunder of-the-poor in house your why
atteritis populum meum et facies pauperum commolitis? dicit
do-you-crush people my and the-faces of-the-poor grind says
dominus exercituum'. et item: 'vae qui condunt leges iniquas
the-Lord of-hosts and likewise woe who make laws unjust

et scribentes iniustitiam scripserunt, ut opprimerent in iudicio
and writing injustice have-written that they-might-oppress in judgment
pauperes et vim facerent causae humilium populi mei, ut
the-poor and force might-do to-the-cause of-the-humble of-people my that
essent viduae praeda eorum et pupillos diriperent. quid
might-be widows the-prey their and orphans they-might-plunder what
facietis in die visitationis et calamitatis de longe venientis?'
shall-you-do on the-day of-visitation and of-calamity from afar coming
et infra: 'verum hi quoque prae vino nescierunt et prae
and below truly these also because-of wine have-not-known and because-of
ebrietate erraverunt, sacerdotes nescierunt prae ebrietate,
drunkenness have-erred the-priests have-not-known because-of drunkenness
absorpti sunt a vino, erraverunt in ebrietate, nescierunt
swallowed-up they-are by wine they-have-erred in drunkenness have-not-known
videntem, ignoraverunt iudicium. omnes enim mensae repletae
the-seer have-not-known judgment all for tables filled
sunt vomitu sordium, ita ut non esset ultra locus.'
are with-vomit of-filth so that not there-were further a-place
'Propterea audite verbum domini, viri illusores, qui
therefore hear the-word of-the-Lord O-men mockers who
dominamini super populum meum, qui est in Hierusalem.
rule over people my which is in Jerusalem
dixistis enim: percussimus foedus cum morte et cum inferno
you-have-said for we-have-struck a-treaty with death and with hell
fecimus pactum. flagellum inundans cum transierit, non
we-have-made a-pact the-scourge overflowing when it-shall-have-passed not
veniet super nos, quia posuimus mendacium spem nostram
shall-come upon us because we-have-made a-lie hope our
et mendacio protecti sumus.' et post aliquanta: 'et subvertet
and by-a-lie protected we-are and after some-things and shall-overturn
grando spem mendacii et protectionem aquae inundabunt,
hail the-hope of-the-lie and the-protection waters shall-overflow

et delebitur foedus vestrum cum morte et pactum
and shall-be-destroyed treaty your with death and pact
vestrum cum inferno non stabit: flagellum inundans cum
your with hell not shall-stand the-scourge overflowing when
transierit, eritis et in conculcationem: quandocumque
it-shall-have-passed you-shall-be also for trampling whenever
pertransierit, tollet vos'. et iterum: 'et dixit dominus:
it-shall-have-passed-through it-shall-take you and again and said the-Lord
eo quod appropinquat populus iste ore suo et labiis
for-that that draws-near people this with-mouth its and with-lips
glorificant me, cor autem eorum longe est a me: ideo ecce
they-glorify me heart but their far is from me therefore behold
ego addam, ut admirationem faciam populo huic miraculo
I shall-add that wonder I-may-make to-people this with-a-miracle
grandi et stupendo. peribit enim sapientia a sapientibus
great and astounding shall-perish for wisdom from wise-ones
eius et intellectus prudentium eius abscondetur. vae qui
its and the-understanding of-prudent-ones its shall-be-hidden woe who
profundi estis corde, ut a domino abscondatis consilium,
deep are in-heart that from the-Lord you-may-hide counsel
quorum sunt in tenebris opera et dicunt: quis videt nos? et
whose are in darkness works and they-say who sees us and
quis novit nos? perversa enim haec vestra cogitatio'. et post
who knows us perverse for this your thought and after
aliquanta: 'haec dicit dominus: caelum sedes mea et terra
some-things these-things says the-Lord heaven seat my and the-earth
scabellum pedum meorum est. quae ista est domus, quam
the-footstool of-feet my is what that is house which
aedificabitis mihi? et quis erit locus quietis meae? omnia
you-shall-build for-me and what shall-be the-place of-rest my all
haec manus mea fecit et facta sunt universa ista, dicit
these-things hand my has-made and made are all these says

dominus. ad quem autem aspiciam nisi ad pauperculum et
the-Lord to whom but shall-I-look except to the-poor-one and
contritum spiritu et trementem sermones meos? qui immolat
contrite in-spirit and trembling-at words my who sacrifices
bovem, quasi qui interficiat virum: qui mactat pecus, quasi
an-ox as-if who should-kill a-man who slays a-beast as-if
qui excerebret canem: qui offert oblationem, quasi
who should-dash-out-the-brains-of a-dog who offers an-oblation as-if
qui sanguinem suillum offerat: qui recordatur thuris, quasi
who blood of-swine should-offer who remembers incense as-if
qui benedicat idolo. haec omnia elegerunt in viis suis
who should-bless an-idol these-things all they-have-chosen in ways their
et in abominationibus suis anima eorum delectata est'.
and in abominations their soul their delighted is
Hieremias quoque virgo prophetaque quid insipientibus
Jeremiah also virgin and-prophet what to-the-foolish
loquatur pastoribus, attendite: 'haec dicit dominus: quid
he-says shepherds attend these-things says the-Lord what
invenerunt patres vestri in me iniquitatis, quia elongaverunt
found fathers your in me of-iniquity because they-removed-far
a me et ambulaverunt post vanitatem et vani facti sunt?'
from me and walked after vanity and vain made are
et paulo post: 'et ingressi contaminastis terram meam et
and a-little after and having-entered you-have-defiled land my and
hereditatem meam posuistis in abominationem. sacerdotes
inheritance my you-have-made into an-abomination the-priests
non dixerunt: ubi est dominus? et tenentes legem nescierunt
not said where is the-Lord and holding the-law knew-not
me et pastores praevaricati sunt in me. propterea adhuc
me and the-shepherds transgressed have against me therefore still
iudicio contendam vobiscum, ait dominus, et cum filiis
in-judgment I-shall-contend with-you says the-Lord and with sons

vestris disceptabo'. item post aliquanta: 'stupor et mirabilia
your I-shall-dispute likewise after some-things stupor and marvels
facta sunt in terra: prophetae praedicabant mendacium et
made are in the-land the-prophets preached lies and
sacerdotes applaudebant manibus suis et populus meus dilexit
the-priests applauded with-hands their and people my loved
talia. quid igitur fiet in novissimis eius?' 'cui loquar
such-things what therefore shall-be-done in the-last-things its to-whom shall-I-speak
et contestabor, ut audiat? ecce incircumcisae aures eorum
and shall-I-testify that he-may-hear behold uncircumcised the-ears their
et audire non possunt. ecce verbum domini factum est illis
and to-hear not they-can behold the-word of-the-Lord made is to-them
in opprobrium et non suscipiunt illud': quia extendam
into reproach and not they-receive it because I-shall-stretch-out
'manum meam super habitantes terram, dicit dominus. a
hand my over those-inhabiting the-land says the-Lord from
minore quippe usque ad maiorem omnes avaritiae student et
the-lesser indeed all-the-way to the-greater all to-avarice are-devoted and
a propheta usque ad sacerdotem cuncti faciunt dolum. et
from the-prophet all-the-way to the-priest all do guile and
curabant contritionem filiae populi mei cum ignominia
they-were-healing the-crushing of-the-daughter of-people my with ignominy
dicentes: pax, pax, et non erit pax. confusi sunt, qui
saying peace peace and not there-shall-be peace confounded are who
abominationem fecerunt. quin potius confusione non sunt
abomination have-done nay rather with-confusion not they-are
confusi et erubescere nescierunt. quam ob rem cadent
confounded and to-blush have-not-known for which reason they-shall-fall
inter ruentes, in tempore visitationis eorum corruent, dicit
among the-falling in the-time of-visitation their they-shall-collapse says
dominus'. et iterum: 'omnes isti principes declinantium
the-Lord and again all these princes of-those-turning-aside

ambulantes fraudulenter aes et ferrum universi corrupti sunt,
walking deceitfully bronze and iron all corrupted are
defecit sufflatorium in igne, frustra conflavit conflator, malitiae
has-failed the-bellows in the-fire in-vain has-smelted the-smelter the-malices
autem eorum non sunt consumptae, argentum reprobum
but their not are consumed silver rejected
vocate eos, quia dominus proiecit illos'. et post pauca:
call them because the-Lord has-cast-away them and after a-few-words
'ego sum, ego sum, ego vidi, dicit dominus. ite ad locum
I am I am I have-seen says the-Lord go to place
meum in Silo, ubi habitavit nomen meum a principio, et
my in Shiloh where dwelt name my from the-beginning and
videte quae fecerim ei propter malitiam populi mei Israel.
see what I-did to-it because-of the-malice of-people my Israel
et nunc quia fecistis omnia opera haec, dicit dominus:
and now because you-have-done all works these says the-Lord
et locutus sum ad vos mane consurgens et loquens et
and spoken I-have to you early rising and speaking and
non audistis, et vocavi vos et non respondistis, faciam
not you-have-heard and I-have-called you and not you-have-answered I-shall-do
domui huic, in qua invocatum est nomen meum et in qua
to-house this in which invoked is name my and in which
vos habetis fiduciam, et loco, quem dedi vobis et patribus
you have trust and to-the-place which I-gave to-you and to-fathers
vestris, sicut feci Silo et proiciam vos a facie mea'.
your as I-did to-Shiloh and I-shall-cast you from face my

§§ 81–85

81–85 · JEREMIAH, JOEL, HOSEA, AMOS

Jeremiah says the shepherds acted foolishly and scattered the flock, and that false prophets promise peace where there is none. Joel calls the drunken priests to weep and pray for the people. Hosea calls them a snare on Tabor, and Amos says God hates their feasts, and that a famine of the word of God now rages.

Et iterum: ‘filii mei exierunt a me et non subsistunt,
and again sons my have-gone-out from me and not stand
et non est qui extendat ultra tentorium meum et erigat
and not there-is who stretches-out further tent my and raises
pelles meas, quia stulte egerunt pastores et dominum non
curtains my because foolishly have-acted the-shepherds and the-Lord not
quaesierunt. propterea non intellexerunt et grex eorum
they-have-sought therefore not they-have-understood and flock their
dispersus est’. et post aliquanta: ‘quid est quod dilectus
scattered is and after some-things what is that beloved
meus in domo mea facit scelera multa? numquid carnes
my in house my does crimes many surely flesh
sanctae auferent a te malitias tuas, in quibus gloriata
holy shall-take-away from you malices your in which gloried
es? olivam uberem pulchram fructiferam speciosam vocavit
you-have an-olive fertile beautiful fruitful comely called
dominus nomen tuum. ad vocem loquelae grandes exarsit
the-Lord name your at the-voice of-speech great blazed
ignis in ea et combusta sunt fruteta eius’. et iterum:
fire in it and burned are thickets its and again
‘venite, congregamini, omnes bestiae terrae, properate ad
come be-gathered all beasts of-the-earth hasten to
devorandum. pastores multi demoliti sunt vineam meam,
devour shepherds many demolished have vineyard my

conculcaverunt partem meam, dederunt portionem meam
they-have-trampled portion my they-have-made portion my
desiderabilem in desertum solitudinis'. itemque 'loquitur:
desirable into a-desert of-wilderness and-likewise he-speaks
'haec dicit dominus populo huic, qui dilexit movere
these-things says the-Lord to-people this which loved to-move
pedes suos et non quievit et domino non placuit. nunc
feet its and not rested and to-the-Lord not it-pleased now
recordabitur iniquitatum eorum et visitabit peccata illorum'.
he-shall-remember iniquities their and shall-visit sins their
'prophetae dicunt eis: non videbitis gladium et fames non
the-prophets say to-them not you-shall-see the-sword and famine not
erit in vobis, sed pacem veram dabit dominus vobis
shall-be among you but peace true shall-give the-Lord to-you
in loco isto. et dixit dominus ad me: falso prophetae
in place this and said the-Lord to me falsely the-prophets
vaticinantur in nomine meo, non misi eos et non praecepi
prophesy in name my not I-sent them and not I-commanded
eis, visionem mendacem et divinationem et fraudulentiam
them a-vision lying and divination and deceit
et seductionem cordis sui prophetant vobis. ideo haec
and the-seduction of-heart their they-prophesy to-you therefore these-things
dicit dominus: in gladio et fame consumentur prophetae illi
says the-Lord by sword and famine shall-be-consumed prophets those
et populi, quibus prophetaverunt, proiecti erunt in viis
and the-peoples to-whom they-have-prophesied cast-out shall-be in the-ways
Hierusalem prae fame et gladio, et non erit qui sepeliat'.
of-Jerusalem because-of famine and sword and not shall-be who buries
Et iterum: 'vae pastoribus, qui disperdunt et dilacerant
and again woe to-the-shepherds who destroy and tear-apart
gregem pascuae meae, dicit dominus. ideo haec dicit
the-flock of-pasture my says the-Lord therefore these-things says

dominus deus Israel ad pastores qui pascunt populum
the-Lord God of-Israel to the-shepherds who feed people
meum: vos dispersistis gregem meum et eiecistis eos et
my you have-scattered flock my and have-cast-out them and
non visitastis illos. ecce, ego visitabo super vos malitiam
not have-visited them behold I shall-visit upon you the-malice
studiorum vestrorum, dicit dominus'. 'propheta namque et
of-pursuits your says the-Lord the-prophet for and
sacerdos polluti sunt et in domu mea inveni malum
the-priest polluted are and in house my I-have-found evil
eorum, dicit dominus: et idcirco via eorum erit quasi
their says the-Lord and therefore the-way their shall-be as-if
lubricum in tenebris, impellentur enim et corruent in ea,
slippery in darkness they-shall-be-driven for and shall-fall in it
afferam enim super eos mala, annum visitationis eorum,
I-shall-bring for upon them evils the-year of-visitation their
dicit dominus. et in prophetis Samariae vidi fatuitatem,
says the-Lord and in the-prophets of-Samaria I-have-seen folly
et prophetabant in Baal et decipiebant populum meum
and they-prophesied in Baal and deceived people my
Israel. et in prophetis Ierusalem vidi similitudinem
Israel and in the-prophets of-Jerusalem I-have-seen a-likeness
adulterium et iter mendacii: et confortaverunt manus
adultery and the-way of-lying and they-have-strengthened the-hands
pessimorum, ut non converterentur unusquisque a malitia
of-the-worst so-that not should-turn each-one from malice
sua: facti sunt mihi omnes Sodoma et habitatores eius quasi
his made are to-me all Sodom and inhabitants its as-if
Gomorrha. propterea haec dicit dominus ad prophetas: ecce
Gomorrah therefore these-things says the-Lord to the-prophets behold
ego cibabo eos absinthio et potabo eos felle. a
I shall-feed them with-wormwood and shall-give-to-drink them with-gall from

prophetis enim Ierusalem est egressa pollutio super omnem
the-prophets for of-Jerusalem has gone-out pollution over all
terram. haec dicit dominus exercituum: nolite audire verba
the-earth these-things says the-Lord of-hosts do-not hear the-words
prophetarum, qui prophetant vobis et decipiunt vos: visionem
of-the-prophets who prophesy to-you and deceive you a-vision
enim cordis sui loquuntur, non de ore domini. dicunt
for of-heart their they-speak not from the-mouth of-the-Lord they-say
enim his, qui me blasphemant, locutus est dominus: pax
for to-those who me blaspheme spoken has the-Lord peace
erit vobis: et omni, qui ambulant in pravitate cordis sui,
shall-be to-you and to-all who walk in the-depravity of-heart his
dixerunt: non veniet super eos malum. quis enim affuit
they-have-said not shall-come upon them evil who for has-been-present
in consilio domini et vidit et audivit sermonem eius?
in the-counsel of-the-Lord and has-seen and heard word his
quis consideravit verbum illius et audivit? ecce, turbo
who has-considered word his and heard behold the-whirlwind
dominicae indignationis egreditur et tempestas erumpens
of-the-Lord's indignation goes-out and a-storm bursting
super caput impiorum veniet: non revertetur furor domini,
upon the-head of-the-impious shall-come not shall-turn-back the-fury of-the-Lord
usque dum faciat et usque dum compleat cogitationem
all-the-way until he-does and all-the-way until he-fulfills the-thought
cordis sui. in novissimis diebus intellegetis consilium eius'.
of-heart his in the-last days you-shall-understand counsel his
Parum namque cogitatis vel facitis, quod sanctus quoque Ioel
little for you-think or do what holy also Joel
monens inertes sacerdotes ac deflens detrimentum populi
warning the-idle priests and lamenting the-loss of-the-people
pro iniquitatibus eorum edixit: 'expergiscimini, qui estis
for iniquities their declared awake you-who are

ebrii a vino vestro, et plorate et lamentamini omnes, qui
drunk from wine your and weep and lament all who
bibitis vinum in ebrietatem, quia ablata est ab ore vestro
drink wine to drunkenness because taken-away is from mouth your
iucunditas et gaudium. lugete, sacerdotes, qui deservitis
pleasantness and joy mourn O-priests who serve
altario, quia miseri facti sunt campi. lugeat terra, quia
the-altar because wretched made are the-fields let-mourn the-earth because
miserum factum est frumentum et siccatum est vinum,
wretched made is the-grain and dried-up is the-wine
diminutum est oleum, aruerunt agricolae. lugete, possessiones,
diminished is the-oil have-withered the-farmers mourn O-possessions
pro tritico et hordeo, quia periit vindemia ex agro,
for wheat and barley because has-perished the-vintage from the-field
vitis arefacta est, ficus diminutae sunt: granata et palma
the-vine dried-up is the-fig diminished are pomegranates and palm
et malum et omnia ligna agri arefacta sunt, quoniam
and apple and all the-trees of-the-field dried-up are since
confuderunt gaudium filii hominum'. quae omnia spiritaliter
have-confounded joy the-sons of-men which all spiritually
intellegenda erunt vobis, ne tam pestilenti fame verbi
to-be-understood shall-be by-you lest so pestilent by-famine of-the-word
dei animae vestrae arescerent. et iterum: 'flete, sacerdotes,
of-God souls your should-wither and again weep O-priests
qui deservitis domino, dicentes: parce, domine, populo tuo et
who serve the-Lord saying spare O-Lord people your and
ne des hereditatem tuam in opprobrium et ne dominentur
not give inheritance your into reproach and not let-rule
eorum gentes, uti ne dicant gentes: ubi est deus eorum?'
them the-nations so-that not say the-nations where is God their

sed haec vos nequaquam auditis, sed omnia, quibus
but these-things you by-no-means hear but all-things by-which
propensius divini furoris indignatio inardescat, admittitis.
more-readily of-divine fury the-indignation may-blaze you-admit
Quid etiam sanctus Osee propheta sacerdotibus vestri moduli
what also holy Hosea the-prophet to-the-priests of-your measure
dixerit, signanter attendite: 'audite haec, sacerdotes, et
has-said pointedly attend hear these-things O-priests and
intendat domus Israel et domus regis, infigite auribus
let-attend O-house of-Israel and O-house of-the-king fix in-ears
vestris, quoniam ad vos est iudicium, quia laqueus facti
your since to you is the-judgment because a-snare made
estis speculationi et velut retiaculum extensum super
you-are to-the-watch-place and as-if a-little-net stretched over
Thabor': quod indicatores venationis confinxerunt.
Tabor which the-tellers of-the-hunt have-fashioned
Vobis etiam a domino alienatio huiuscemodi intendatur
to-you also from the-Lord estrangement of-this-kind be-directed
per prophetam Amos dicentem: 'odio habui et repuli
through the-prophet Amos saying in-hatred I-have-had and have-rejected
dies festos vestros et non accipiam odorem in sollemnibus
days festival your and not I-shall-accept the-odor in solemn
conventionibus vestris, quia etsi obtuleritis holocaustomata
assemblies your because even-if you-shall-have-offered burnt-offerings
et hostias vestras, non accipiam ea. et salutare
and victims your not I-shall-accept them and the-saving-offering
declarationis vestrae non aspiciam. transfer a me sonum
of-declaration your not I-shall-regard take-away from me the-sound
cantionum tuarum, et psalmum organum tuorum non audiam'.
of-songs your and the-psalm of-instruments your not I-shall-hear
famis etenim evangelici cibi, culina ipsa vestrae animae viscera
famine for of-gospel of-food kitchen the-very of-your soul the-bowels

excomedens grassatur in vobis, sicut supra dictus propheta
devouring rages among you as above said the-prophet
praedixit. 'ecce', inquiens, 'dies veniunt, dicit dominus et
foretold behold saying days come says the-Lord and
inmittam famem in terra, non famem panis neque sitim aquae,
I-shall-send famine on the-earth not famine of-bread nor thirst of-water
sed famem in audiendo verbum dei et movebuntur aquae
but famine in hearing the-word of-God and shall-be-moved the-waters
a mari usque ad mare et ab aquilone usque ad orientem,
from sea all-the-way to sea and from the-north all-the-way to the-east
percurrent quaerentes verbum domini, et non invenient'.
they-shall-run-through seeking the-word of-the-Lord and not they-shall-find

§§ 86–92

86–92 · MICAH, ZEPHANIAH, ZECHARIAH, MALACHI, EZEKIEL

Micah's princes flay the people and judge for gifts while their prophets divine for money, Zephaniah's priests profane the holy things, and Zechariah's shepherds have no pity on the flock. Malachi rebukes priests who offer the lame and the sick, and recalls Levi's covenant of truth; Ezekiel condemns the false prophets and the watchman who does not warn. Then the gospel: you are the salt of the earth.

Auribus quoque percipite sanctum Micheam ac si caelestem
with-ears also perceive holy Micah as if a-heavenly
quandam tubam adversus subdolos populi principes concisius
certain trumpet against the-deceitful of-the-people princes more-curtly
personantem: 'audite nunc', inquiens, 'principes domus Iacob:
sounding hear now saying O-princes of-the-house of-Jacob
nonne vobis est, ut cognoscatis iudicium odientibus bona
not for-you is-it that you-should-know judgment hating good-things
et quaerentibus maligna, rapientibus pelles eorum ab
and seeking malignant-things snatching skins their from

eis et carnes eorum ab ossibus eorum? quemadmodum
them and flesh their from bones their as
comederunt carnes plebis meae et pelles eorum ab eis
they-have-eaten the-flesh of-people my and skins their from them
excoriaverunt, ossa eorum confregerunt et laniaverunt quasi
they-have-flayed bones their they-have-broken and torn as-if
carnes in olla? succlamabunt ad deum et non exaudiet eos
flesh in a-pot they-shall-cry-out to God and not he-shall-hear them
et avertet faciem suam ab eis in illo tempore, propter
and he-shall-turn-away face his from them in that time because-of
quod malitiose gesserunt in adinventionibus suis super ipsos.
that maliciously have-acted in inventions their upon themselves
haec dicit dominus super prophetas, qui seducunt populum
these-things says the-Lord upon the-prophets who seduce people
meum, qui mordent dentibus suis et praedicant in eum
my who bite with-teeth their and preach to it
pacem, et non est data in os eorum: excitavi in eum
peace and not is given into mouth their I-have-raised against him
bellum. propterea nox erit vobis ex visione et tenebrae
war therefore night shall-be to-you from vision and darkness
vobis erunt ex divinatione et occidet sol super prophetas
to-you shall-be from divination and shall-set the-sun upon the-prophets
et contenebrescet super eos dies et confundentur videntes
and shall-grow-dark over them the-day and shall-be-confounded the-seers
somnia et deridebuntur divini et obtrectabunt adversus
dreams and shall-be-mocked the-diviners and shall-disparage against
omnes ipsi, quoniam non erit, qui exaudiat eos, si non
all themselves since not there-shall-be who hears them if not
ego implevero fortitudinem in spiritu domini et iudicio
I shall-have-filled strength in the-spirit of-the-Lord and in-judgment
et potestate, ut annuntiem domui Iacob impietates suas
and in-power that I-may-announce to-the-house of-Jacob impieties its

et Israel peccata sua. audite haec itaque, duces domus
and to-Israel sins its hear these-things and-so O-leaders of-the-house
Iacob, et residui domus Israel, qui abominamini iudicium
of-Jacob and O-remnants of-the-house of-Israel who abominate judgment
et omnia recta pervertitis, qui aedificatis Sion in sanguine
and all right-things pervert who build Zion in blood
et Hierusalem in iniquitatibus: duces eius cum muneribus
and Jerusalem in iniquities leaders its with gifts
iudicant et sacerdotes eius cum mercede respondebant
judge and priests its for a-fee answered
et prophetae eius cum pecunia divinabant et in domino
and prophets its for money divined and on the-Lord
requiescebant dicentes: nonne dominus in nobis est? non
rested saying not the-Lord among us is not
venient super nos mala. ideo propter vos Sion sicut ager
shall-come upon us evils therefore because-of you Zion as a-field
arabitur et Hierusalem sicut specula pomarii erit
shall-be-plowed and Jerusalem as the-watchtower of-an-orchard shall-be
et mons domus sicut locus silvae'. et post aliquanta:
and the-mountain of-the-house as a-place of-forest and after some-things
'heu me, quia factus sum sicut qui colligit stipulam in
alas me because made I-am as one-who gathers stubble in
messe et sicut racemus in vindemia, cum non sit botrus
harvest and as a-cluster in the-vintage when not there-is a-bunch
ad manducandum: primitiva, heu me, anima quia periit
for eating first-fruits alas me soul because has-perished
terrenis operibus, semper peccatorum reverentia exoritur
with-earthly works always of-sins reverence arises
reverens a terra, et qui corrigat inter homines, non est.
reverent from the-earth and who corrects among men not there-is
omnes in sanguinem iudicio contendunt, et unusquisque
all in blood in-judgment contend and each-one

proximum suum tribulatione tribulavit, in malum manus
neighbor his with-tribulation has-afflicted for evil hands
suas praeparat'.
his he-prepares
Quid Sophonias etiam propheta egregius de vestris olim
what Zephaniah also the-prophet outstanding about your once
comessoribus disceptaverit, attendite, de Hierusalem namque
fellow-feasters has-disputed attend about Jerusalem for
loquebatur, quae spiritaliter ecclesia vel anima intellegitur: 'o',
he-spoke which spiritually the-church or the-soul is-understood O
inquiens, 'quae erat splendida et liberata civitas, confidens
saying who was splendid and freed city trusting
columba, non obaudivit vocem nec percepit disciplinam, in
a-dove not has-obeyed the-voice nor received discipline in
domino non confisa est et ad deum suum non accessit'.
the-Lord not trusted has and to God her not has-drawn-near
et id quare, ostendit: 'principes eius sicut leo rugientes,
and that why he-shows princes her as a-lion roaring
iudices sicut lupi Arabiae non relinquebant in mane,
judges as wolves of-Arabia not they-left for the-morning
prophetae eius spiritum portantes viri contemptoris,
prophets her the-spirit bearing of-a-man of-a-despiser
sacerdotes eius profanabant sancta et impie agebant in
priests her profaned holy-things and impiously acted in
lege. dominus autem iustus in medio eius et non faciet
the-law the-Lord but just in the-midst of-her and not shall-do
iniustum: mane mane dabit iudicium suum'.
unjust-thing morning by-morning he-shall-give judgment his
Sed et beatum Zachariam prophetam monentem vos in
but also blessed Zechariah the-prophet warning you in
verbo dei audite: 'haec enim dicit omnipotens dominus:
the-word of-God hear these-things for says the-almighty Lord

iudicium iustum iudicate et misericordiam et miserationem
judgment just judge and mercy and compassion
facite unusquisque ad fratrem suum, et viduam et orfanum
do each-one to brother his and the-widow and the-orphan
et advenam et pauperem per potentiam nolite nocere et
and the-stranger and the-poor through power do-not harm and
malitiam unusquisque fratris sui non reminiscatur in corde
the-malice each-one of-brother his not remember in heart
suo: et contumaces fuerunt, ne observarent, et dederunt
his and stubborn they-were lest they-should-observe and they-gave
dorsum stultitiae et aures suas degravaverunt, ut non
the-back to-folly and ears their made-heavy so-that not
audirent, et cor suum statuerunt insuadibile, ne audirent
they-should-hear and heart their they-made unpersuadable lest they-should-hear
legem meam et verba, quae misit dominus omnipotens in
law my and the-words which sent the-Lord almighty in
spiritu suo in manibus prophetarum priorum et facta est ira
spirit his by the-hands of-the-prophets former and made was wrath
magna a domino omnipotente'. et iterum: 'quoniam qui
great from the-Lord almighty and again since who
loquebantur, locuti sunt molestias et divini visa falsa et
spoke spoken have troubles and the-diviners seen false-things and
somnia falsa loquebantur et vana consolabantur, propter
dreams false spoke and vain-things consoled because-of
hoc aridi facti sunt sicut oves, et afflicti sunt quoniam
this dry made they-are as sheep and afflicted they-are since
non erat sanitas. super pastores exacervata est iracundia
not there-was health over the-shepherds made-bitter is anger
mea et super agnos visitabo'. et post pauca: 'vox
my and on the-lambs I-shall-visit and after a-few-words the-voice
lamentantium pastorum, quia misera facta est magnitudo
of-the-lamenting shepherds because wretched made is greatness

eorum. vox rugientium leonum, quoniam miser factus est
their the-voice of-roaring lions since wretched made is
decursus Iordanis. haec dicit dominus omnipotens: qui
the-course of-the-Jordan these-things says the-Lord almighty who
possidebant, interficiebant, et non paenituit eos. et, qui
possessed killed and not it-repented them and who
vendebant eas, dicebant: benedictus dominus, et ditati sumus
sold them said blessed the-Lord and enriched we-are
et pastores earum nihil parsi sunt in eis propter quod
and shepherds their nothing spared have on them because-of which
non parcam iam super inhabitantes terram, dicit dominus'.
not I-shall-spare now over those-inhabiting the-land says the-Lord
Quid praeterea sanctus Malachias propheta vobis denuntiaverit,
what moreover holy Malachi the-prophet to-you has-announced
audite. 'vos', inquiens, 'sacerdotes, qui spernitis nomen meum
hear you saying O-priests who spurn name my
et dixistis: in quo spernimus nomen tuum? offerendo ad
and you-have-said in what do-we-spurn name your by-offering at
altare meum panes pollutos: et dixistis: in quo polluimus
altar my loaves polluted and you-have-said in what have-we-polluted
eos? in eo quod dixistis: mensa domini pro nihilo est,
them in that that you-have-said the-table of-the-Lord for nothing is
et quae superposita sunt, sprevistis: quoniam, si adducatis
and what placed-upon-it are you-have-despised since if you-bring
caecum ad victimam, nonne malum? si ammoveatis claudum
a-blind-one for a-victim not evil if you-bring-up a-lame-one
aut languidum, nonne malum? offer itaque illud praeposito
or a-sick-one not evil offer then it to-governor
tuo, si suscipiet illud, si accipiet personam tuam,
your whether he-shall-accept it whether he-shall-receive person your
dicit dominus omnipotens. et nunc exorate faciem dei
says the-Lord almighty and now entreat the-face of-God

vestri et deprecamini eum: in manibus vestris facta sunt
your and beseech him by hands your done are
haec, si accipiam ex vobis personas vestras'. et iterum:
these-things if I-shall-receive from you persons your and again
'et intulistis de rapina claudum et languidum et
and you-have-brought from plunder the-lame and the-sick and
intulistis munus. numquid suscipiam illud de manu vestra?
you-have-brought a-gift surely shall-I-accept it from hand your
dicit dominus. maledictus dolosus, qui habet in grege
says the-Lord cursed the-deceitful-one who has in flock
suo masculum et votum faciens immolat debile domino,
his a-male and a-vow making sacrifices a-weak-one to-the-Lord
quia rex magnus ego sum, dicit dominus exercituum, et
because a-king great I am says the-Lord of-hosts and
nomen meum horribile in gentibus. et nunc ad vos
name my dreadful among the-nations and now to you
mandatum hoc, o sacerdotes, si nolueritis audire
command this O priests if you-shall-have-been-unwilling to-hear
et ponere super cor, ut detis gloriam nomini meo, ait
and to-place upon the-heart that you-may-give glory to-name my says
dominus exercituum, mittam in vos egestatem et maledicam
the-Lord of-hosts I-shall-send on you want and I-shall-curse
benedictionibus vestris, quoniam non posuistis super cor.
blessings your since not you-have-placed upon the-heart
ecce ego proiciam vobis brachium et dispergam super
behold I shall-cast-away for-you the-arm and shall-scatter upon
vultum vestrum stercus sollemnitatum vestrarum'. sed interea
face your the-dung of-solemnities your but meanwhile
ut avidius organa nequitiae praeparetis ad bona, quid
that more-greedily organs of-wickedness you-may-prepare for good-things what
de sancto sacerdote dicat, si quantulumcunque adhuc interni
about the-holy priest he-says if any-little-bit still of-inner

auditus in vobis remanet, auscultate: 'pactum meum', inquiens,
hearing in you remains listen covenant my saying
'fuit cum eo', de Levi namque vel Moyse secundum historiam
was with him about Levi for or Moses according-to history
loquebatur, 'vitae et pacis, dedi ei timorem, et timuit me,
he-spoke of-life and of-peace I-gave him fear and he-feared me
a facie nominis mei pavebat. lex veritatis fuit in ore
from the-face of-name my he-trembled the-law of-truth was in mouth
eius et iniquitas non est inventa in labiis eius, in pace
his and iniquity not was found on lips his in peace
et in aequitate ambulavit mecum et multos avertit ab
and in equity he-walked with-me and many he-turned-away from
iniquitate. labia enim sacerdotis custodient scientiam et legem
iniquity the-lips for of-the-priest shall-keep knowledge and the-law
requirent ex ore eius, quia angelus domini exercituum est'.
they-shall-seek from mouth his because the-angel of-the-Lord of-hosts he-is
nunc item mutavit sensum et malos increpare non desinit,
now likewise he-has-changed sense and the-evil to-rebuke not ceases
'vos', inquiens, 'recessistis de via et descandalizastis
you saying have-withdrawn from the-way and have-scandalized
plurimos in lege et irritum fecistis pactum cum Levi,
very-many in the-law and void have-made the-covenant with Levi
dicit dominus exercituum. propter quod et ego dedi vos
says the-Lord of-hosts because-of which also I have-made you
contemptibiles et humiles in omnibus populis, sicut non
contemptible and humble among all peoples as not
servastis vias meas et accepistis faciem in lege. numquid
you-have-kept ways my and have-respected face in the-law surely
non pater unus omnium nostrum? numquid non deus unus
not father one of-all of-us surely not God one
creavit nos? quare ergo despicit unusquisque fratrem suum?'
has-created us why therefore despises each-one brother his

et iterum: ‘ecce veniet dominus exercituum et quis poterit
and again behold shall-come the-Lord of-hosts and who shall-be-able
cogitare diem adventus eius? et quis stabit ad videndum
to-think-of the-day of-coming his and who shall-stand for seeing
eum? ipse enim egredietur quasi ignis ardens et quasi poa
him he for shall-go-forth as-if fire burning and as-if the-herb
lavantium, et sedebit conflans et emundans argentum, et
of-the-washers and he-shall-sit smelting and cleansing silver and
purgabit filios Levi, et colabit eos quasi aurum et quasi
shall-purge the-sons of-Levi and shall-strain them as-if gold and as-if
argentum’. et post pauca: ‘invaluerunt super me verba
silver and after a-few-words have-prevailed over me words
vestra, dicit dominus, et dixistis: vanus est qui servit deo,
your says the-Lord and you-have-said vain is who serves God
et quod emolumentum, quia custodivimus praecepta eius et
and what profit because we-have-kept precepts his and
quia ambulavimus coram domino exercituum tristes? ergo
because we-have-walked before the-Lord of-hosts sad therefore
nunc beatos dicemus arrogantes, si quidem aedificati sunt
now blessed we-shall-call the-arrogant if indeed built-up are
facientes iniquitatem, temptaverunt deum et salvi facti sunt’.
those-doing iniquity they-have-tempted God and saved made are
Quid vero Ezechiel propheta dixerit, attendite: ‘vae, inquiens,
what but Ezekiel the-prophet has-said attend woe saying
super vae veniet et nuntius super nuntium erit et quaeretur
upon woe shall-come and message upon message shall-be and shall-be-sought
visio a propheta et lex peribit a sacerdote et consilium
a-vision from the-prophet and the-law shall-perish from the-priest and counsel
de senioribus’. et iterum: ‘haec dicit dominus: eo quod
from the-elders and again these-things says the-Lord for-that that
sermones vestri sunt mendaces et divinationes vestrae vanae,
words your are lying and divinations your vain

propter hoc ecce ego ad vos, dicit dominus, extendam
because-of this behold I to you says the-Lord I-shall-stretch-out
manum meam super prophetas, qui vident mendacia et eos
hand my over the-prophets who see lies and those
qui loquuntur vana: in disciplina populi mei non erunt
who speak vain-things in the-discipline of-people my not they-shall-be
et in scriptura domus Israel non scribentur et in terram
and in the-writing of-the-house of-Israel not shall-be-written and into the-land
Israel non intrabunt et scietis quia ego dominus. propterea
of-Israel not shall-enter and you-shall-know that I the-Lord because
populum meum seduxerunt dicentes: pax domini, et non
people my they-have-seduced saying peace of-the-Lord and not
est pax domini. hic struit parietem et ipsi ungunt eum
there-is peace of-the-Lord this-one builds a-wall and they daub it
et cadet'. et post aliquanta: 'vae his, qui concinnant
and it-shall-fall and after some-things woe to-those who sew
cervicalia subtus omnem cubitum manus et faciunt velamina
pillows under every elbow of-the-hand and make veils
super omne caput universae aetatis ad subvertendas animas.
over every head of-every age for overturning souls
animaeque subversae sunt populi mei et animas possidebant
and-the-souls overturned are of-people my and souls they-possessed
et contaminabant me ad populum meum propter manum
and polluted me to people my for a-handful
plenam hordei et propter fragmentum panis ad occidendas
full of-barley and for a-fragment of-bread for killing
animas, quas non oportebat mori, et ad liberandas animas,
souls which not it-was-fitting to-die and for freeing souls
quas non oportebat vivere, dum loquimini populo exaudienti
which not it-was-fitting to-live while you-speak to-the-people hearing
vana eloquia'. et infra: 'fili hominis dic, tu es terra quae non
vain utterances and below O-son of-man say you are a-land which not

compluitur neque pluvia facta est super te in die irae, in
is-rained-on nor rain made is upon you on the-day of-wrath in
qua principes in medio eius sicut leones rugientes rapientes
which the-princes in the-midst of-it as lions roaring seizing
rapinas, animas devorantes in potentia et pretia accipientes
plunder souls devouring in power and prices receiving
et viduae tuae multiplicatae sunt in medio tui et sacerdotes
and widows your multiplied are in the-midst of-you and priests
eius despexerunt legem meam et polluebant sancta mea.
its have-despised law my and polluted holy-things my
inter sanctum et pollutum non distinguebant et intermedium
between holy and polluted not they-distinguished and the-interval
inmundi et mundi non dividebant et a sabbatis meis
of-the-unclean and of-the-clean not they-divided and from sabbaths my
obvelabant oculos suos et polluebant in medio eorum'.
they-veiled eyes their and they-polluted in the-midst of-them
Et iterum: 'et quaerebam ex eis virum recte conversantem
and again and I-sought among them a-man rightly conducting-himself
et stantem ante faciem meam omnino in tempora terrae,
and standing before face my altogether in the-times of-the-land
ne in fine delerem eam, et non inveni. et effudi in eam
lest in the-end I-should-destroy it and not I-found and I-poured on it
animum meum in igne irae meae ad consumendum eos:
spirit my in the-fire of-wrath my for consuming them
vias eorum in caput eorum dedi, dicit dominus'. et post
the-ways their on head their I-gave says the-Lord and after
aliquanta: 'et factus est sermo domini ad me dicens: fili
some-things and made was the-word of-the-Lord to me saying O-son
hominis, loquere filiis populi mei et dices ad eos: terra
of-man speak to-the-sons of-people my and you-shall-say to them a-land
in quam ego gladium superinducam, et acceperit populus
into which I a-sword shall-bring and shall-have-taken the-people

terrae hominem unum ex ipsis et dederit eum
of-the-land a-man one out-of themselves and shall-have-given him
sibi in speculatorem et viderit gladium venientem
to-themselves as watchman and he-shall-have-seen the-sword coming
super terram et tuba canuerit et significaverit populo
upon the-land and the-trumpet shall-have-sounded and shall-have-signaled to-the-people
et audierit qui audit vocem tubae et non observaverit,
and shall-have-heard he-who hears the-voice of-the-trumpet and not shall-have-heeded
et venerit gladius et comprehenderit eum, sanguis eius
and shall-have-come the-sword and shall-have-seized him the-blood his
super caput eius erit: quia, cum vocem tubae audisset, non
upon head his shall-be because when the-voice of-the-trumpet he-had-heard not
observavit, sanguis eius in ipso erit: et hic, quia custodivit
he-heeded blood his on himself shall-be and this-one because he-kept
animam suam, liberavit. et speculator si viderit gladium
soul his has-freed and the-watchman if he-shall-have-seen the-sword
venientem et non significaverit tuba et populus non
coming and not shall-have-signaled with-the-trumpet and the-people not
observaverit, et veniens gladius acceperit ex eis animam
shall-have-heeded and coming the-sword shall-have-taken from them a-soul
et ipsa propter iniquitatem suam capta est et sanguinem de
and it because-of iniquity its taken is and the-blood from
manu speculatoris requiram. et tu, fili hominis, speculatorem
the-hand of-the-watchman I-shall-require and you O-son of-man watchman
te dedi domui Israel et audies ex ore meo verbum,
you I-have-given to-the-house of-Israel and you-shall-hear from mouth my the-word
cum dicam peccatori: morte morieris, et non loqueris,
when I-shall-say to-the-sinner by-death you-shall-die and not you-speak
ut avertat se a via sua impius, et ipse iniquus in
that he-may-turn himself from way his the-impious and he wicked in
iniquitate sua morietur, sanguinem autem eius de manu tua
iniquity his shall-die blood but his from hand your

requiram. tu vero si praedixeris impio viam eius, ut
I-shall-require you but if you-shall-have-foretold to-the-impious way his that
avertat se ab ea, et non se averterit a via sua,
he-may-turn himself from it and not himself shall-have-turned from way his
hic sua impietate morietur et tu animam tuam eripuisti'.
this-one in-his impiety shall-die and you soul your have-rescued
Sed sufficiant haec pauca de pluribus prophetarum testimonia,
but let-suffice these few out-of many of-the-prophets testimonies
quis retunditur superbia vel ignavia sacerdotum contumacium,
by-which is-blunted the-pride or sloth of-priests stubborn
ne putent nos propria potius adinventione quam legis
lest they-think us by-our-own rather invention than of-the-law
sanctorumve auctoritate eis talia denuntiare. videamus
or-of-the-saints authority to-them such-things to-announce let-us-see
igitur quid euangelica tuba mundo personans inordinatis
therefore what the-gospel trumpet to-the-world sounding to-the-disorderly
sacerdotibus eloquatur: non enim de illis, ut iam diximus, qui
priests may-utter not for about those as already we-have-said who
apostolicam sedem legitime obtinent quique bene norunt largiri
the-apostolic seat lawfully hold and-who well know to-bestow
spiritalia conservis suis in tempore cibaria, si qui tamen
spiritual to-fellow-servants their in time foods if any yet
multi in praesentiarum sunt, sed de pastoribus imperitis, qui
many in the-present there-are but about the-shepherds unskilled who
derelinquunt oves et pascunt vana et non habent verba
abandon the-sheep and feed vain-things and not have the-words
pastoris periti, nobis sermo est. evidens ergo indicium est
of-a-shepherd skilled to-us the-speech is evident therefore a-sign it-is
non esse eum legitimum pastorem, sed ne mediocrem quidem
not to-be him a-lawful shepherd but not ordinary even
Christianum, qui haec non tam nostra, qui valde exigui
a-Christian who these-things not so-much ours who very small

sumus, quam veteris novique testamenti decreta recusarit
are as of-the-old and-new testament the-decrees shall-have-refused
vel infitiatus fuerit, sicut bene quidam nostrorum ait:
or denied shall-have as well a-certain-one of-ours says
'optabiliter cupimus, ut hostes ecclesiae sint nostri quoque
desirably we-desire that the-enemies of-the-church be ours also
absque ullo foedere hostes, et amici ac defensores nostri
without any treaty enemies and the-friends and defenders our
non solum foederati, sed etiam patres ac domini habeantur'.
not only allies but also fathers and lords be-held
conveniant namque singuli vero examine conscientiam
let-meet for each with-true examination conscience
suam, et ita deprehendent, an secundum rectam rationem
his and so they-shall-find whether according-to right reason
sacerdotali cathedrae insideant. videamus, inquam, quid salvator
on-the-priestly chair they-sit let-us-see I-say what the-savior
mundi factorque dicat. 'vos estis', inquit, 'sal terrae: quod
of-the-world and-maker says you are he-says the-salt of-the-earth that
si sal evanuerit, in quo salietur? ad nihilum valet
if the-salt shall-have-vanished in what shall-it-be-salted for nothing it-avails
ultra, nisi ut proiciatur foras et conculcetur ab hominibus'.
further except that it-be-cast out and be-trodden by men

§§ 93–97

Gildas applies Christ's words: the light of the world set on a lampstand, the beam in one's own eye, wolves in sheep's clothing, the blind leading the blind, the scribes who shut the kingdom of heaven, and the wicked servant who beats his fellows. Paul's first letter, on those given over to a reprobate sense, fits these priests.

Hoc unum testimonium ad confutandos impudentes quosque
this one testimony for confuting the-shameless all
abunde sufficere posset. sed ut evidentioribus adhuc
abundantly to-suffice could but that by-more-evident still
astipulationibus, quantis semetipsos intolerabilibus scelerum
attestations by-how-great themselves intolerable of-crimes
fascibus falsi hi sacerdotes opprimant, verbis Christi
with-bundles false these priests oppress by-the-words of-Christ
comprobetur, aliqua annectenda sunt. sequitur enim: 'vos estis
it-be-proved some-things to-be-joined are follows for you are
lux mundi. non potest civitas abscondi supra montem posita,
the-light of-the-world not can a-city to-be-hidden upon a-mountain placed
neque accendunt lucernam et ponunt eam sub modio, sed
nor do-they-light a-lamp and place it under a-bushel but
supra candelabrum, ut luceat omnibus, qui in domo sunt'.
upon a-lampstand that it-may-shine for-all who in the-house are
quis ergo sacerdotum huius temporis ita ignorantiae caecitate
who therefore of-the-priests of-this time so of-ignorance by-blindness
possessus, ut lux clarissimae lucernae in aliqua domu
possessed that as-the-light of-a-most-bright lamp in some house
cunctis noctu residentibus scientiae simul et bonorum
to-all by-night sitting of-knowledge at-the-same-time and of-good
operum lampade luceat? quis ita universis ecclesiae filiis
works with-the-lamp he-may-shine who so to-all of-the-church the-sons

tutum publicum conspicuumque refugium, ut est civibus
a-safe public and-conspicuous refuge as is to-the-citizens
firmissima forte ut editi montis civitas vertice constituta,
a-most-strong perhaps as of-a-lofty mountain a-city on-the-summit set
habetur? sed et quod sequitur: 'sic luceat lux vestra coram
is-held but also what follows so let-shine light your before
hominibus, ut videant opera vestra bona et magnificent
men that they-may-see works your good and magnify
patrem vestrum, qui in caelis est': quis eorum uno saltim die
father your who in heaven is who of-them on-one at-least day
potest implere? quin potius densissima quaedam eorum nebula
can to-fulfill but rather a-most-dense certain of-them cloud
atraque peccaminum omni insulae ita incumbit nox, ut omnes
and-black of-sins on-all the-island so lies night that all
paene a via recta avertat ac per invios impeditosque
almost from the-way right it-turns and through pathless and-obstructed
scelerum calles errare faciat, quorum non modo pater
of-crimes tracks to-wander makes of-whom not only the-father
caelestis non laudatur per opera, sed etiam intolerabiliter
heavenly not is-praised through works but also intolerably
blasphematur. velim quidem haec scripturae sacrae testimonia
is-blasphemed I-should-wish indeed these of-scripture sacred testimonies
huic epistolae inserta vel inserenda, sicut nostra mediocritas
into-this letter inserted or to-be-inserted as our mediocrity
posset, omnia utcumque historico vel morali sensu interpretari.
could all somehow in-historical or moral sense to-interpret
Sed, ne in inmensum modum opusculum hoc his, qui
but lest to immense measure little-work this for-those who
non tam nostra quam dei despiciunt fastidiunt avertunt,
not so-much ours as of-God despise loathe turn-away
proteletur, simpliciter et absque ullo verborum circuitio
be-protracted simply and without any of-words circumlocution

congesta vel congerenda sunt. et post pauca: 'qui enim
gathered or to-be-gathered they-are and after a-few-words who for
solverit unum de mandatis istis minimis et docuerit
shall-have-loosed one of commands these least and shall-have-taught
sic homines, minimus vocabitur in regno caelorum'. et
so men least shall-be-called in the-kingdom of-the-heavens and
iterum: 'nolite iudicare, ut non iudicemini: in quo enim
again do-not judge that not you-be-judged in what for
iudicio iudicaveritis, iudicabitur de vobis'. quis, rogo,
judgment you-shall-have-judged it-shall-be-judged of you who I-ask
vestrum respiciet id quod sequitur? 'quid autem vides',
of-you shall-regard that which follows why but do-you-see
inquit, 'festucam in oculo fratris tui et trabem in oculo
he-says the-mote in the-eye of-brother your and the-beam in eye
tuo non consideras? aut quomodo dicis fratri tuo: sine
your not consider or how do-you-say to-brother your let
eiciam festucam de oculo tuo et ecce, trabes in oculo tuo
I-may-cast-out the-mote from eye your and behold a-beam in eye your
est'. vel quod 'sequitur: 'nolite dare sanctum canibus neque
is or what follows do-not give the-holy-thing to-dogs nor
miseritis margaritas vestras ante porcos, ne forte conculcent
cast pearls your before swine lest perhaps they-trample
eas pedibus suis et conversi disrumpant vos', quod saepissime
them with-feet their and turned tear-apart you which most-often
vobis evenit. et populum monens, ne a dolosis doctoribus,
to-you has-happened and the-people warning lest by deceitful teachers
ut estis vos, seduceretur, dixit: 'attendite vobis a falsis
as are you it-be-seduced he-said attend to-yourselves from false
prophetis, qui veniunt ad vos in vestimentis ovium, intrinsecus
prophets who come to you in clothing of-sheep inwardly
autem sunt lupi rapaces: a fructibus eorum cognoscetis
but they-are wolves rapacious from fruits their you-shall-know

eos. numquid colligunt de spinis uvas aut de tribulis
them is-it that-they-gather from thorns grapes or from thistles
ficus? sic omnis arbor bona bonos fructus facit et mala
figs so every tree good good fruits makes and the-bad
malos'. et infra: 'non omnis, qui dicit mihi: domine, domine,
bad and below not everyone who says to-me O-Lord Lord
intrabit in regnum caelorum, sed qui facit voluntatem patris
shall-enter into the-kingdom of-the-heavens but who does the-will of-father
mei, qui in caelis est, ipse intrabit in regnum caelorum'.
my who in heaven is he shall-enter into the-kingdom of-the-heavens
Quid sane vobis fiet, qui, ut propheta dixit, labiis
what indeed to-you shall-be-done who as the-prophet said with-lips
tantum et non corde deum adhaeretis? qualiter autem
only and not with-heart to-God cling how but
impletis quod sequitur: 'ecce', inquiens, 'ego mitto vos sicut
do-you-fulfill what follows behold saying I send you as
oves in medio luporum', qui versa vice ut lupi in gregem
sheep in the-midst of-wolves who turned in-turn as wolves into the-flock
ovium proceditis? vel quod ait: 'estote prudentes sicut
of-sheep advance or what he-says be prudent as
serpentes et simplices sicut columbae?' prudentes quidem
serpents and simple as doves prudent indeed
estis, ut aliquem ore exitiabili mordeatis, non ut
you-are so-that someone with-mouth deadly you-may-bite not that
caput vestrum, quod est Christus, obiectu quodammodo
head your which is Christ by-the-interposition in-a-way
corporis defendatis, quem totis operum malorum conatibus
of-the-body you-may-defend whom with-all of-works evil with-efforts
conculcatis. nec enim simplicitatem columbarum habetis, quin
you-trample nor for the-simplicity of-doves have-you but
potius corvino assimilati nigrori ac semel de arca, id est
rather to-the-raven-like likened blackness and once from the-ark that is

ecclesia evolitantes inventis carnalium voluptatum fetoribus
the-church flying-out having-found of-fleshly pleasures the-stenches
nusquam ad eam puro corde revolastis. sed videamus
never to it with-pure heart have-you-flown-back but let-us-see
et cetera: 'nolite', ait, 'timere eos, qui occidunt corpus,
also the-rest do-not he-says fear those who kill the-body
animam autem non possunt occidere, sed timete eum qui
the-soul but not can to-kill but fear him who
potest et animam et corpus perdere in gehennam'. quidnam
can both the-soul and the-body to-destroy into Gehenna which
horum feceritis, recogitate. quem vero vestrum sequens
of-these you-shall-have-done reconsider whom but of-you the-following
testimonium non in profunda cordis arcana vulneret, quod
testimony not in the-depths of-the-heart secret-places would-wound which
de pravis antistitibus salvator ad apostolos loquitur? 'sinite
about the-depraved bishops the-savior to the-apostles speaks let
illos, caeci sunt duces caecorum: caecus autem si caeco
them blind they-are leaders of-the-blind the-blind but if to-the-blind
ducatum praestet, ambo in foveam cadent'. egent sane
leadership offer both into the-pit shall-fall need indeed
populi, quibus praeestis vel potius quos decepistis, audire.
the-peoples whom you-govern or rather whom you-have-deceived to-hear
Attendite verba domini ad apostolos et turbas loquentis,
attend-to the-words of-the-Lord to the-apostles and the-crowds speaking
quae et vos, ut audio, in medium crebro proferre non
which also you as I-hear into the-open often to-bring-forth not
pudet. 'super cathedram Moysi sederunt scribae et Pharisaei.
are-ashamed upon the-chair of-Moses have-sat the-scribes and the-Pharisees
omnia ergo quaecumque dixerint vobis, servate et
all therefore whatever they-shall-have-said to-you keep and
facite: secundum vero opera eorum nolite facere. dicunt enim
do according-to but works their do-not do they-say for

et ipsi non faciunt'. periculosa certe ac supervacua
and they-themselves not do dangerous certainly and superfluous
sacerdotibus doctrina est, quae pravis operibus obfuscatur.
for-priests teaching is which by-depraved works is-darkened
'vae vobis, hypocritae, qui clauditis regnum caelorum ante
woe to-you hypocrites who shut the-kingdom of-the-heavens before
homines, vos autem non intratis nec introientes sinitis
men you but not enter nor those-entering allow
intrare'. non solum enim prae tantis malorum criminibus,
to-enter not only for because-of so-great of-evils crimes
quae geritis in futuro, sed etiam pro his, qui vestro cotidie
which you-commit in the-future but also for those who by-your daily
exemplo pereunt, poenali poena plectemini: quorum
example perish with-penal punishment you-shall-be-punished whose
sanguis in die iudicii de vestris manibus requiretur. sed
blood on the-day of-judgment from your hands shall-be-required but
quid mali, quod servi parabola praetenderit, inspicite,
what of-evil that of-the-servant the-parable held-forth look-into
dicentis in corde suo: moram facit dominus meus venire.
saying in heart his delay makes lord my to-come
qui pro hoc forsitan inceperat percutere conservos suos
who because-of this perhaps had-begun to-strike fellow-servants his
manducans et bibens cum ebriis. 'veniet ergo', inquit,
eating and drinking with the-drunk shall-come therefore he-says
'dominus servi illius in die, qua non sperat, et hora,
the-lord of-servant that on the-day in-which not he-hopes and in-the-hour
qua ignorat, et dividet eum', a sanctis scilicet
in-which he-knows-not and shall-divide him from the-holy-ones namely
sacerdotibus, 'partemque eius ponet cum hypocritis', cum
the-priests and-portion his shall-place with the-hypocrites with
eis certe, qui sub sacerdotali tegmine multum obumbrant
those certainly who under the-priestly covering much overshadow

nequitiae, ‘illic’, inquiens, ‘erit fletus et stridor dentium’,
wickedness there saying shall-be weeping and gnashing of-teeth
quibus in hac vita non crebro evenit ob cotidianas ecclesiae
which in this life not often happens because-of the-daily of-the-church
matris ruinas filiorum vel desideria regni caelorum.
mother ruins of-the-sons or the-desires of-the-kingdom of-the-heavens
Sed videamus, quid Christi verus discipulus magister gentium
but let-us-see what of-Christ the-true disciple the-master of-the-gentiles
Paulus, qui omni ecclesiastico doctori imitandus est, sicut
Paul who by-every church teacher to-be-imitated is as
ipse hortatur: ‘imitatores mei estote’, inquiens, ‘sicut et ego
he exhorts imitators of-me be saying as also I
Christi’, in tali negotio praeloquatur in prima epistola dicens:
of-Christ in such business may-say-beforehand in the-first letter saying
‘quia cum cognoverunt deum, non sicut deum magnificaverunt
because when they-knew God not as God they-magnified
aut gratias egerunt, sed evanuerunt in cogitationibus suis
or thanks gave but became-vain in thoughts their
et obcaecatum est insipiens cor eorum dicentes se
and darkened was foolish heart their saying themselves
esse sapientes, stulti facti sunt’. licet hoc gentibus dici
to-be wise fools made they-are although this to-the-gentiles to-be-said
videatur, intuemini tamen, quia competenter istius aevi
may-seem behold yet that fittingly of-that age
sacerdotibus cum populis coaptabitur. et post pauca. ‘qui
to-the-priests with the-peoples it-shall-be-fitted and after a-few-words who
commutaverunt’, inquit, ‘veritatem dei in mendacium et
have-changed he-says the-truth of-God into a-lie and
coluerunt et servierunt creaturae potius quam creatori, qui est
worshiped and served the-creature rather than the-creator who is
benedictus in saecula, propterea tradidit illos deus in passiones
blessed for ages therefore handed-over them God into passions

ignominiae'. et iterum: 'et sicut non probaverunt deum
of-ignominy and again and as not they-approved God
habere in notitiam, tradidit illos deus in reprobum sensum,
to-have in knowledge handed-over them God into a-reprobate sense
ut faciant quae non conveniunt, repletos omni iniquitate
that they-may-do what not are-fitting filled with-all iniquity
malitia impudicitia fornicatione avaritia nequitia, plenos
malice shamelessness fornication avarice with-wickedness full
invidia homicidio', scilicet animarum populi, 'contentione
of-envy of-homicide namely of-the-souls of-the-people of-contention
dolo malignitate, susurrones, detractores, deo odibiles,
of-guile of-malignity whisperers detractors to-God hateful
contumeliosos, superbos, elatos, inventores malorum, parentibus
insolent proud haughty inventors of-evils to-parents
inoboedientes, insensatos, incompositos, sine misericordia,
disobedient senseless disorderly without mercy
sine affectione, qui cum iustitiam dei cognovissent, non
without affection who though the-justice of-God they-had-known not
intellexerunt, quoniam qui talia agunt, digni sunt morte'.
understood that who such-things do worthy are of-death

§§ 98–102

No priest is free of Paul's charge, which condemns those who consent to sin as well as those who commit it. Gildas cites Paul on the day of judgment, on dying to sin and putting on Christ, on the building that fire will test, on the temple of God, on the old leaven, on false apostles disguised as angels of light, and on not walking as the gentiles do.

Quisnam supradictorum his omnibus in veritate caruit? si
who-then of-the-above-said of-these all in truth has-lacked if
enim esset, forte caperetur subiecto sensu, in quo
for there-were-one perhaps he-would-be-caught by-the-subjoined sense in which
ait: 'non solum qui faciunt ea, sed etiam qui consentiunt
he-says not only who do them but also who consent
facientibus', nullo scilicet hoc malo eorum exstante immuni.
with-those-doing none namely from-this evil of-them standing immune
et infra: 'tu autem secundum duritiam tuam et cor
and below you but according-to the-hardness your and heart
impaenitens thesaurizas tibi iram in die irae et
impenitent treasure-up for-yourself wrath on the-day of-wrath and
revelationis iusti iudicii dei, qui reddet unicuique secundum
of-the-revelation of-the-just judgment of-God who shall-render to-each-one according-to
opera sua'. et iterum: 'non est enim acceptio personarum
works his and again not is for respect of-persons
apud deum. quicumque enim sine lege peccaverunt, sine
with God whoever for without law have-sinned without
lege et peribunt: quicumque in lege peccaverunt, per legem
law also shall-perish whoever in the-law have-sinned through the-law
iudicabuntur. non enim auditores legis iusti sunt apud deum,
shall-be-judged not for the-hearers of-the-law just are with God

sed factores legis iustificabuntur'. quid ergo severitatis ingruit
but the-doers of-the-law shall-be-justified what therefore of-severity falls
his, qui non solum implenda non faciunt et prohibita
on-those who not only the-things-to-be-fulfilled not do and the-forbidden
non declinant, sed etiam ipsam verborum dei lectionem vel
not avoid but even the-very of-the-words of-God reading even
tenuiter auribus ingestam pro saevissimo angue refugiunt?
slightly to-the-ears thrust as a-most-savage snake flee
Sed transeamus ad sequentia. 'quid ergo', inquit, 'dicemus?
but let-us-pass to the-following what therefore he-says shall-we-say
permanebimus in peccato, ut gratia abundet? absit. qui enim
shall-we-remain in sin that grace may-abound far-be-it who for
mortui sumus peccato, quomodo iterum vivemus in illo?'
dead are to-sin how again shall-we-live in it
et post aliquanta: 'quis nos', ait, 'separabit a caritate
and after some-things who us he-says shall-separate from the-love
Christi? tribulatio? an angustia? an persecutio? an fames? an
of-Christ tribulation or distress or persecution or famine or
nuditas? an periculum? an gladius?' quem vestrum, quaeso,
nakedness or peril or sword whom of-you I-ask
talis intimo corde occupabit affectus, qui non modo pro
such in-inmost heart shall-occupy feeling who not only for
pietate non laboratis, sed etiam ut inique agatis et
piety not labor but also that wickedly you-may-act and
Christum offendatis, multa patimini? vel quod sequitur:
Christ offend many-things suffer or what follows
'nox praecessit, dies autem appropinquavit. abiciamus ergo
the-night has-gone-before the-day but has-drawn-near let-us-cast-off therefore
opera tenebrarum et induamus arma lucis sic ut in die
the-works of-darkness and let-us-put-on the-arms of-light so that in the-day
honeste ambulemus, non in comessationibus et ebrietatibus,
honestly we-may-walk not in revelings and drunkennesses

non in cubilibus et impudicitiis, non in contentione et
not in beds and lewdnesses not in contention and
aemulatione, sed induite dominum Iesum Christum et
rivalry but put-on the-Lord Jesus Christ and
carnis curam ne feceritis in concupiscentiis'.
of-the-flesh care do-not make in lusts
Et iterum ad Corinthios in prima epistola. 'ut sapiens',
and again to the-Corinthians in the-first letter as a-wise
inquit, 'architectus fundamentum posui, alter superaedificat.
he-says architect the-foundation I-have-laid another builds-on
unusquisque autem videat', quomodo superaedificet.
each-one but let-him-see how he-builds-on
fundamentum 'enim aliud nemo potest ponere praeter id quod
foundation for other no-one can to-lay besides that which
est Iesus Christus. si quis autem superaedificet super hoc
is Jesus Christ if anyone but builds-on upon this
aurum et argentum, lapides pretiosos, ligna, faenum, stipulam,
gold and silver stones precious wood hay stubble
unumquodque opus manifestum erit; dies enim domini
each work manifest shall-be the-day for of-the-Lord
declarabit illud, quia in igne revelabitur et uniuscuiusque
shall-declare it because in fire it-shall-be-revealed and of-each-one
opus quale sit, ignis probabit. si cuius opus manserit,
the-work of-what-sort it-is the-fire shall-prove if of-anyone work shall-have-remained
qui superaedificaverit, mercedem accipiet. si cuius opus
which he-has-built-on reward he-shall-receive if of-anyone work
arserit, detrimentum patietur. nescitis, quia templum
shall-have-burned loss he-shall-suffer do-you-not-know that the-temple
dei estis et spiritus dei habitat in vobis? si quis autem
of-God you-are and the-spirit of-God dwells in you if anyone but
templum dei violaverit, disperdet illum deus'. et iterum:
the-temple of-God shall-have-violated shall-destroy him God and again

‘si quis videtur apud vos sapiens esse in hoc saeculo, stultus
if anyone seems among you wise to-be in this age a-fool
fiat, ut sit sapiens. sapientia enim huius mundi
let-him-become that he-may-be wise the-wisdom for of-this world
stultitia est apud deum’. et post aliquanta: ‘non bona gloriatio
folly is with God and after some-things not good glorying
vestra. nescitis, quia modicum fermentum totam massam
your do-you-not-know that a-little leaven the-whole lump
corrumpit? expurgate igitur vetus fermentum, ut sitis nova
corrupts purge therefore the-old leaven that you-may-be a-new
conspersio’. quomodo expurgabitur vetus fermentum, id est
sprinkling how shall-be-purged the-old leaven that is
peccatum, quod a diebus in dies cunctis conatibus cumulatur?
sin which from days to days by-all efforts is-heaped-up
et iterum: ‘scripsi vobis in epistola, ne commisceamini
and again I-wrote to-you in the-letter that-not you-mingle
fornicariis, non utique fornicariis huius mundi aut avaris
with-fornicators not surely with-the-fornicators of-this world or the-avaricious
aut rapacibus aut idolis servientibus: alioquin debueratis
or the-rapacious or idols serving otherwise you-would-have-had
de hoc mundo exire. nunc autem scripsi vobis non
from this world to-go-out now but I-have-written to-you not
commisceri, si quis nominatur frater et est fornicator aut
to-mix if anyone is-named a-brother and is a-fornicator or
avarus aut idolis serviens aut maledicus aut ebriosus aut
avaricious or idols serving or a-slanderer or a-drunkard or
rapax, cum huiusmodi nec cibum quidem sumere’. sed latro
rapacious with of-this-kind not food even to-take but the-robber
nequaquam pro furto vel latrocinio furem alium damnat, quem
by-no-means for theft or robbery a-thief other condemns whom
potius optat tuetur amat utpote sui sceleris consortem.
rather he-chooses protects loves as of-his crime the-partner

Item in epistola ad Corinthios secunda: 'ideo', inquit,
likewise in the-letter to the-Corinthians second therefore he-says
'habentes hanc administrationem, iuxta quod misericordiam
having this administration according-to which mercy
consecuti sumus, non deficiamus: sed abiciamus occulta
obtained we-have not let-us-fail but let-us-cast-away the-hidden-things
dedecoris non ambulantes in astutia neque adulterantes
of-shame not walking in craftiness nor adulterating
verbum dei', per malum exemplum scilicet et per
the-word of-God through evil example namely and through
adulationem. in subsequentibus autem ita de malis doctoribus
flattery in the-following but so about the-evil teachers
dicit: 'nam eiusmodi pseudoapostoli sunt operarii subdoli
he-says for of-this-kind false-apostles are workers deceitful
transfigurantes se in apostolos Christi. et non mirum:
transforming themselves into apostles of-Christ and not wonderful
ipse enim Satanas transfigurat se in angelum lucis. non
himself for Satan transforms himself into an-angel of-light not
est magnum igitur, si ministri eius transfigurentur ut angeli
is great therefore if ministers his be-transformed as angels
iustitiae, quorum finis erit secundum opera eorum'.
of-justice whose end shall-be according-to works their
Attendite quoque, quid ad Ephesios dicat. an nescitis vos
attend also what to the-Ephesians he-says or do-you-not-know you
pro hoc in aliquo reos teneri? 'hoc', inquiens, 'dico et testificor
for this in something guilty to-be-held this saying I-say and testify
in domino, ut iam non ambuletis sicut gentes ambulant in
in the-Lord that now not you-walk as the-gentiles walk in
vanitate sensus sui, tenebris obscuratum habentes intellectum,
the-vanity of-the-sense their with-darkness darkened having understanding
alienati a via dei per ignorantiam, quae est in illis
estranged from the-way of-God through ignorance which is in them

propter caecitatem cordis eorum, qui desperantes semet ipsos
because-of the-blindness of-heart their who despairing them themselves
tradiderunt impudicitiae in operationem omnis immunditiae
have-handed-over to-shamelessness into the-working of-all uncleanness
et avaritiae'. et quis vestrum sponte expleverit
and avarice and who of-you of-his-own-accord shall-have-fulfilled
id quod sequitur: 'propterea nolite fieri imprudentes, sed
that which follows therefore do-not become imprudent but
intellegentes, quae sit voluntas dei, et nolite inebriari
understanding what is the-will of-God and do-not be-drunk
vino, in quo est luxuria, sed replemini spiritu sancto'.
with-wine in which is luxury but be-filled with-the-spirit holy

§§ 103–106

103–106 · THE READINGS OF ORDINATION

Paul to the Thessalonians, Timothy, and Titus describes the true priest, gentle as a nurse, chaste, a good soldier, sound in doctrine, and foretells perilous men of the last days. Gildas turns to the readings heard at the priests' own ordination, beginning with Peter's first letter: blessed be God, who has begotten us to an incorruptible inheritance; be sober, be holy, love one another.

Sed et quod ad Thessalonicenses dicit: 'neque enim fuimus
but also what to the-Thessalonians he-says nor for have-we-been
apud vos aliquando in sermone adulationis, sicut scitis, neque
among you ever in speech of-flattery as you-know nor
in occasione avaritiae, nec quaerentes ab hominibus gloriari
in occasion of-avarice nor seeking from men to-glory
neque a vobis neque ab aliis, cum possumus honori esse
nor from you nor from others though we-can for-honor to-be
ut ceteri apostoli Christi. sed facti sumus sicut parvuli in
as the-other apostles of-Christ but made we-are as little-ones in

medio vestrum vel tamquam si nutrix foveat parvulos suos,
the-midst of-you or as-if if a-nurse cherishes little-ones her
ita desiderantes vos cupide volebamus vobis tradere non
so desiring you eagerly we-wished to-you to-hand-over not
solum euangelium, sed etiam animas nostras'. si hunc vos
only the-gospel but also souls our if this you
apostoli retinetis in omnibus affectum, eius quoque cathedrae
of-the-apostle retain in all-things feeling his also the-chair
legitime insidere noscatis. vel etiam quod sequitur: 'scitis',
lawfully to-occupy you-may-know or also what follows you-know
inquit, 'quae praecepta dederim vobis. haec est voluntas dei,
he-says what precepts I-gave you this is the-will of-God
sanctificatio vestra, ut abstineatis vos a fornicatione et
sanctification your that you-abstain yourselves from fornication and
sciat unusquisque vestrum vas suum possidere in honore et
may-know each-one of-you vessel his to-possess in honor and
sanctificatione, non in passione desiderii, sicut et gentes quae
sanctification not in passion of-desire as also the-gentiles who
ignorant deum. et ne quis supergrediatur neque circumveniat
know-not God and lest anyone overreach nor circumvent
in negotio fratrem suum, quoniam vindex est dominus de
in business brother his since the-avenger is the-Lord of
his omnibus. non enim vocavit nos deus in inmunditiam,
these all not for has-called us God to uncleanness
sed in sanctificationem. itaque qui haec spernit, non
but to sanctification and-so who these-things spurns not
hominem spernit, sed deum'. quis etiam vestrum circumspecte
man spurns but God who also of-you circumspectly
cauteque custodivit id quod sequitur: 'mortificate ergo
and-cautiously has-kept that which follows mortify therefore
membra vestra, quae sunt super terram, fornicationem
members your which are upon the-earth fornication

immunditiam libidinem et concupiscentiam malam; propter
uncleanness lust and concupiscence evil because-of
quae venit ira dei in filios diffidentiae'. videtis enim
which comes the-wrath of-God upon the-sons of-unbelief you-see for
pro quibus peccatis ira dei potissimum consurgat.
for which sins the-wrath of-God especially rises
Audite itaque, quid de vobis prophetico spiritu sanctus idem
hear and-so what about you by-prophetic spirit holy the-same
apostolus vestrisque consimilibus praedixerit, ad Timotheum
apostle and-to-your like-ones foretold to Timothy
aperte scribens: 'hoc enim scitote, quod in novissimis diebus
openly writing this for know that in the-last days
instabunt tempora periculosa. erunt enim homines semet
shall-be-at-hand times perilous shall-be for men them
ipsos amantes, cupidi, elati, superbi, blasphemi, parentibus
themselves loving greedy haughty proud blasphemers to-parents
inoboedientes, ingrati, scelesti, sine affectione, incontinentes,
disobedient ungrateful wicked without affection incontinent
inmites, sine benignitate, proditores, protervi, tumidi,
ungentle without kindness traitors wanton swollen
voluptatum amatores magis quam dei, habentes quidem
of-pleasures lovers more than of-God having indeed
speciem pietatis, virtutem autem eius abnegantes. et hos
the-appearance of-piety the-power but its denying and these
devita', sicut et propheta dicit: 'odivi congregationem
avoid as also the-prophet says I-have-hated the-congregation
malignorum et cum impiis non sedebo'. et post aliquanta,
of-the-malignant and with the-impious not I-shall-sit and after some-things
quod nostro tempore videmus pullulare, ait: 'semper
what in-our time we-see to-sprout he-says always
discentes, et numquam ad scientiam veritatis pervenientes:
learning and never to the-knowledge of-truth arriving

quemadmodum enim Iamnes et Mambres restiterunt Moysi,
as for Jannes and Mambres withstood Moses
ita et isti resistunt veritati: homines corrupti mente, reprobi
so also these resist the-truth men corrupt in-mind reprobate
circa fidem, sed ultra non proficient. insipientia enim
about the-faith but further not they-shall-advance folly for
eorum manifesta erit omnibus, sicut et illorum fuit'.
their manifest shall-be to-all as also of-those was
Etenim evidenter ostendit, qualiter se exhibeant suo
for evidently he-shows how themselves should-show in-their
officio sacerdotes, ita ad Titum scribens: 'te ipsum praebe
office the-priests so to Titus writing you yourself show
exemplum bonorum operum, in doctrina, in integritate, in
an-example of-good works in doctrine in integrity in
gravitate, verbum sanum habens, irreprehensibile, ut is qui
gravity a-word sound having irreproachable so-that he who
ex adverso est vereatur, nullum malum habens dicere
on the-opposite-side is may-fear no evil having to-say
de nobis'. et iterum ad Timotheum: 'labora', inquit, 'sicut
about us and again to Timothy labor he-says as
bonus miles Christi Iesu. nemo militans deo implicat se
a-good soldier of-Christ Jesus no-one soldiering for-God entangles himself
negotiis saecularibus, ut placeat ei cui se probavit.
in-affairs secular that he-may-please him to-whom himself he-has-proved
nam et qui contendit in agone, non coronatur, nisi legitime
for also who contends in the-contest not is-crowned unless lawfully
certaverit'. haec quidem bonorum adhortatio. quod vero
he-shall-have-striven these-things indeed of-the-good the-exhortation what but
item comprehendit, malorum hominum, ut vos quibusque
likewise he-includes of-evil men as you to-all
intellegentibus apparetis, denuntiatio est: 'si quis', inquiens,
understanding appear the-denunciation is if anyone saying

‘aliter docet et non adquiescit sermonibus sanis domini
otherwise teaches and not acquiesces to-the-words sound of-Lord
nostri Iesu Christi et ei, quae secundum pietatem est,
our Jesus Christ and to-that which according-to piety is
doctrinae, superbus est, nihil sciens, sed languescens erga
doctrine proud he-is nothing knowing but languishing about
quaestiones et pugnas verborum, ex quibus oriuntur invidiae,
questions and fights of-words from which arise envies
contentiones, blasphemiae, suspiciones malae, conflictationes
contentions blasphemies suspicions evil conflicts
hominum mente corruptorum, qui veritate privati sunt,
of-men in-mind corrupt who of-truth deprived are
existimantium quaestum esse pietatem’.
thinking gain to-be piety
Sed quid sparsim positis amplius utentes testimoniis sensuum
but why scattered placed further using testimonies of-the-senses
ac diversorum undis in despecta ingenii nostri cymbula
and of-various on-the-waves in the-despised of-wit our little-boat
fluctuabimur? recurrere tandem aliquando usque ad lectiones
shall-we-toss to-run-back at-last at-length all-the-way to readings
illas, quae ad hoc non solum ut recitentur, sed etiam
those which for this not only that they-may-be-recited but also
adstipulentur benedictioni, qua initiantur sacerdotum vel
may-support the-blessing by-which are-initiated of-priests or
ministrorum manus, eosque perpetuo doceant, uti ne a
of-ministers the-hands and-them perpetually may-teach so-that not from
mandatis, quae fideliter continentur in eis, sacerdotali dignitate
the-commands which faithfully are-contained in them from-the-priestly dignity
degenerantes recedant, ex omni paene sanctarum scripturarum
degenerating they-depart from all almost of-the-holy scriptures
textu merito excerptae sunt, necessarium duximus; ut
text deservedly selected they-are necessary we-have-thought that

apertius cunctis pateat aeterna supplicia mansura eos
more-openly to-all it-may-be-plain eternal punishments about-to-remain for-them
et non esse sacerdotes vel dei ministros, qui earum doctrinas
and not to-be priests or of-God ministers who of-them the-doctrines
atque mandata opere secundum vires suas non adimpleverint.
and commands in-work according-to strength their not shall-have-fulfilled
audiamus ergo quid princeps apostolorum Petrus de tali
let-us-hear therefore what the-prince of-the-apostles Peter about such
negotio signaverit: 'benedictus', inquiens, deus 'et pater domini
business has-marked blessed saying God and father of-Lord
nostri Iesu Christi, qui per magnam misericordiam suam
our Jesus Christ who through great mercy his
regeneravit nos in spem vitae aeternae per resurrectionem
has-regenerated us into the-hope of-life eternal through the-resurrection
a mortuis domini nostri Iesu Christi in hereditatem
from the-dead of-Lord our Jesus Christ into an-inheritance
incorruptibilem inmarcescibilem incontaminatam conservatam
incorruptible unfading undefiled kept
in caelis in vos, qui in virtute dei custodimini'. quare enim
in heaven for you who in the-power of-God are-guarded why for
insipienter a vobis violatur talis hereditas, quae non sicut
foolishly by you is-violated such an-inheritance which not as
terrena decidua, sed inmarcescibilis atque aeterna est? et
earthly falling but unfading and eternal is and
post aliquanta: 'propter quod succincti estote lumbos mentis
after some-things because-of which girded be in-the-loins of-mind
vestrae, sobrii, perfecte sperantes in eam, quae offertur vobis,
your sober perfectly hoping in that which is-offered to-you
gratiam in revelatione Iesu Christi'. rimamini namque pectoris
grace in the-revelation of-Jesus Christ search for of-breast
vestri profunda, an sobrii sitis et perfecte sacerdotalem
your the-depths whether sober you-are and perfectly the-priestly

gratiam examinandam in domini revelatione conservetis. et
grace to-be-examined in of-the-Lord the-revelation keep and
iterum dicit: 'quasi filii benedictionis non configurantes vos
again he-says as sons of-blessing not conforming yourselves
illis prioribus ignorantiae vestrae desideriis, sed secundum
to-those former of-ignorance your desires but according-to
eum qui vos vocavit sanctos, et vos sancti in omni
him who you called holy also you holy in all
conversatione estote. propter quod scriptum est: sancti estote,
conduct be because-of which written it-is holy be
quia ego sum sanctus'. quis rogo vestrum ita sanctitatem
because I am holy who I-ask of-you so holiness
toto animi ardore sectatus est, ut hoc, quantum in se
with-the-whole of-mind ardor pursued has that this as-much-as in him
est, avide festinaret implere? sed videamus, quid in eiusdem
is greedily he-might-hasten to-fulfill but let-us-see what in of-the-same
secunda lectione contineatur: 'carissimi', inquit, 'animas
the-second reading is-contained dearest he-says souls
vestras castificate ad oboediendum fidei per spiritum in
your make-chaste for obeying the-faith through the-spirit in
caritate, in fraternitate. ex corde vero invicem diligentes
love in brotherhood from the-heart true one-another loving
perseveranter, quasi renati non ex semine corruptibili, sed
perseveringly as reborn not from seed corruptible but
incorruptibili verbo dei vivi et permanentis in aeternum'.
incorruptible by-the-word of-God living and remaining for ever

§§ 107–110

107–110 · THE ORDINATION CHARGE

The priests heard at their ordination that Judas bought a field with the reward of iniquity, as they seek gain; that Matthias was chosen by Christ; that a bishop must be blameless, the husband of one wife, sober, and not greedy; and that Peter received the keys. Unrepentant, they bind nothing in heaven. Gildas closes with a prayer for the few good shepherds.

Haec quidem ab apostolo mandata et in die vestrae
these-things indeed by the-apostle commanded and on the-day of-your
ordinationis lecta, ut ea indirupte custodiretis, sed nequaquam
ordination read that them unbrokenly you-might-keep but by-no-means
a vobis in iudicio impleta, sed nec multum cogitata vel
by you in judgment fulfilled but not-even much thought-of or
intellecta sunt. et infra: 'deponentes igitur omnem malitiam
understood they-are and below laying-aside therefore all malice
et omnem dolum et simulationem et invidiam et detractiones
and all guile and pretense and envy and detractions
sic ut modo geniti infantes rationabiles et sine dolo lac
so as just born infants rational and without guile milk
concupiscite, ut eo crescatis in salutem, quoniam dulcis
desire that by-it you-may-grow to salvation since sweet
est dominus'. recogitate, an haec quoque surdis auribus
is the-Lord reconsider whether these also with-deaf ears
a vobis audita crebrius conculcentur. et iterum: 'vos autem
by you heard more-often are-trampled and again you but
genus electum: regale sacerdotium, gens sancta, populus in
a-race chosen a-royal priesthood a-nation holy a-people for
adoptionem, ut virtutes annuntietis eius, qui de tenebris vos
adoption that the-virtues you-may-announce of-him who from darkness you

vocavit in illud tam admirabile lumen suum'. non solum enim
called into that so admirable light his not only for
per vos virtutes dei non annuntiantur, sed etiam pravissimis
through you the-virtues of-God not are-announced but also by-most-depraved
vestris apud incredulos quosque despiciuntur exemplis. audistis
your among the-unbelieving all are-despised examples you-heard
forte in eodem die, quod in lectione actus apostolorum
perhaps on the-same day that in the-reading of-the-acts of-the-apostles
lectum est, Petro in medio discipulorum surgente qui dixit:
read was Peter in the-midst of-the-disciples rising who said
'viri fratres, oportet scripturam impleri, quam praedixit
O-men brothers it-behooves the-scripture to-be-fulfilled which foretold
spiritus sanctus per os David de Iuda'. et paulo post:
the-spirit holy through the-mouth of-David about Judas and a-little after
'hic itaque adquisivit agrum de mercede iniquitatis'. hoc
this-one and-so acquired a-field from the-reward of-iniquity this
securo vel potius hebeti corde, quasi non de vobis lectum
with-a-secure or rather dull heart as-if not about you read
fuisset, audistis. quis, quaeso, vestrum non quaerit agrum
it-had-been you-heard who I-ask of-you not seeks a-field
de mercede iniquitatis? Iudas namque loculos compilabat, vos
from the-reward of-iniquity Judas for the-purses pillaged you
ecclesiae donaria filiorumque animas eius vastatis. ille adiit
of-the-church the-offerings and-of-the-sons the-souls her lay-waste he approached
Iudaeos, ut deum venderet, vos tyrannos et patrem vestrum
the-Jews that God he-might-sell you the-tyrants and father your
diabolum, ut Christum despiciatis. ille triginta argenteis
the-devil that Christ you-may-despise he for-thirty silver-pieces
venalem habuit omnium salvatorem, vos vel uno obolo.
for-sale had of-all the-savior you even for-one farthing

Quid plura? fertur vobis in medium Matthiae in confusionem
why more-things is-brought to-you into the-open of-Matthias to confusion
vestram exemplum, sanctorum quoque apostolorum, electione
your the-example of-the-holy also apostles by-the-choice
vel iudicio Christi non propria voluntate sortiti, ad
or by-the-judgment of-Christ not by-their-own will allotted to
quod caeci effecti non videtis, quam longe a meritis
which blind made not you-see how far from the-merits
eius distetis, dum in amorem et effectum Iudae
his you-stand-apart while into the-love and effect of-Judas
traditoris sponte corruistis. apparet ergo eum, qui
the-traitor of-your-own-accord you-have-collapsed it-appears therefore him who
vos sacerdotes sciens ex corde dicit non esse eximium
you priests knowing from the-heart says not to-be an-outstanding
Christianum. sane quod sentio, proferam. posset quidem
Christian indeed what I-feel I-shall-bring-forth could indeed
lenior fieri increpatio, sed quid prodest vulnus manu
milder to-be-made the-rebuke but what profits a-wound with-the-hand
tantum palpare unguentove ungere, quod tumore iam
only to-stroke or-with-ointment to-anoint which with-swelling already
vel fetore sibi horrescens cauterio et publico ignis
or with-stench to-itself shuddering of-the-cautery and public of-fire
medicamine eget? si tamen ullo modo sanari possit
medicine needs if yet in-any way to-be-healed it-can
aegro nequaquam medelam quaerente et ab hoc medico
the-sick-man by-no-means remedy seeking and from this physician
longius recedente. o inimici dei et non sacerdotes, veterani
farther withdrawing O enemies of-God and not priests veterans
malorum et non pontifices, traditores et non sanctorum
of-evils and not pontiffs traitors and not of-the-holy
apostolorum successores et non Christi ministri, auscultastis
apostles successors and not of-Christ ministers you-have-listened

quidem secundae lectionis apostoli Pauli verborum sonum,
indeed of-the-second reading of-the-apostle Paul of-the-words the-sound
sed in nullo modo monita virtutemque servastis et
but in no way the-admonitions and-power have-you-kept and
simulacrorum modo, quae non vident neque audiunt,
of-images in-the-manner which not see nor hear
eodem die altari astitistis, tunc et cotidie vobis intonantis:
on-the-same day at-the-altar you-stood then and daily to-you thundering
fratres, inquit, 'fidelis sermo est' et omni acceptione
O-brothers he-says faithful the-saying is and of-all acceptance
dignus. ille dixit fidelem et dignum, vos ut infidelem et
worthy he said faithful and worthy you as faithless and
indignum sprevistis. 'si quis episcopatum cupit, bonum opus
unworthy have-spurned if anyone the-episcopate desires a-good work
desiderat'. vos episcopatum magnopere avaritiae gratia, non
he-desires you the-episcopate greatly of-avarice for-the-sake not
spiritalis profectus obtentu cupitis et bonum opus illi
of-spiritual progress under-pretext desire and good work to-it
condignum nequaquam habetis. 'oportet ergo huiusmodi
worthy by-no-means have it-behooves therefore of-this-kind
irreprehensibilem esse'. in hoc namque sermone lacrimis magis
blameless to-be in this for word with-tears more
quam verbis opus est, ac si dixisset apostolus eum esse
than with-words need there-is as if had-said the-apostle him to-be
omnibus irreprehensibiliorem debere. 'unius uxoris virum'.
than-all more-blameless to-be-bound of-one wife the-husband
quod ita apud nos quoque contemnitur, quasi non audiretur
which so among us also is-despised as-if not it-were-heard
vel idem dicere et virum uxorum? 'sobrium, prudentem'.
or the-same to-say and husband of-wives sober prudent
quis etiam ex vobis hoc aliquando inesse sibi saltem
who also of you this ever to-be-present in-himself at-least

optavit? 'hospitalem': id si forte casu evenerit,
has-wished hospitable that if perhaps by-chance it-shall-have-happened
popularis aurae potius quam praecepti gratia factum, non
of-the-popular breeze rather than of-the-precept for-the-sake done not
prodest, domino salvatore ita dicente: 'amen dico vobis,
profits the-Lord savior so saying amen I-say to-you
receperunt mercedem suam'. ornatum, 'non vinolentum, non
they-have-received reward their orderly not given-to-wine not
percussorem, sed modestum, non litigiosum, non cupidum'.
a-striker but modest not quarrelsome not greedy
o feralis inmutatio! o horrenda praeceptorum caelestium
O deadly change O horrible of-precepts heavenly
conculcatio! nonne infatigabiliter ad haec expugnanda vel
trampling not untiringly for these-things to-be-attacked or
potius obruenda actuum verborumque arma corripitis,
rather to-be-overwhelmed of-deeds and-of-words the-arms do-you-seize
pro quis conservandis atque firmandis, si necesse fuisset,
for which to-be-preserved and to-be-confirmed if necessary it-had-been
et poena ultro subeunda et vita ponenda erat?
even punishment willingly to-be-undergone and life to-be-laid-down was
Sed videamus et sequentia: 'domum', inquit, 'suam bene
but let-us-see also the-following house he-says his well
regentem, filios habentem subditos cum omni castitate'.
ruling sons having subject with all chastity
ergo imperfecta est patrum castitas, si eidem non
therefore imperfect is of-the-fathers the-chastity if to-the-same not
et filiorum adcumuletur. sed quid erit, ubi nec pater
also of-the-sons it-be-added but what shall-be where neither the-father
nec filius mali genitoris exemplo pravatus conspicitur
nor the-son of-an-evil begetter by-the-example depraved is-seen
castus? 'si quis autem domui suae praeesse nescit, quomodo
chaste if anyone but over-house his to-preside knows-not how

ecclesiae dei diligentiam adhibebit?' haec sunt verba, quae
on-the-church of-God diligence shall-be-bestow these are the-words which
indubitatis effectibus approbantur. 'diaconos similiter pudicos,
by-undoubted effects are-approved deacons likewise chaste
non bilingues, non vino multum deditos, non turpe lucrum
not double-tongued not to-wine much given not base gain
sectantes, habentes mysterium fidei in conscientia pura. hi
pursuing having the-mystery of-faith in conscience pure these
autem probentur primum et sic ministrent nullum crimen
but let-be-proved first and so let-them-minister no crime
habentes'. his nimirum horrescens diu immorari unum
having on-these surely shuddering long to-linger one
veridice possum dicere, quin haec omnia in contrarios actus
truly I-can to-say that these all into contrary acts
mutentur, ita ut clerici, quod non absque dolore cordis fateor,
are-changed so that clerics which not without pain of-heart I-confess
impudici, bilingues, ebrii, turpis lucri cupidi, habentes fidem
unchaste double-tongued drunk of-base gain desirous having faith
et, ut verius dicam, infidelitatem in conscientia impura, non
and as more-truly I-may-say unbelief in conscience impure not
probati in bono, sed in malo opere praesciti ministrantes et
proved in good but in evil work foreknown ministering and
innumera crimini habentes sacro ministerio adsciscantur.
countless crimes having to-the-sacred ministry are-admitted
audistis etiam illo die, quo multo dignius multoque
you-heard also on-that day on-which much more-worthily and-much
rectius erat, ut ad carcerem vel catastam poenalem quam
more-rightly it-was that to prison or the-scaffold penal than
ad sacerdotium traheremini, domino sciscitanti, quem se
to the-priesthood you-should-be-dragged the-Lord asking whom himself
esse putarent discipuli, Petrum respondisse: 'tu es Christus
to-be they-thought the-disciples Peter to-have-answered you are the-Christ

filius dei vivi' eique dominum pro tali confessione
the-son of-God living and-to-him the-Lord for such confession
dixisse: 'beatus es, Simon Bar Iona, quia caro et sanguis
to-have-said blessed are-you Simon son-of Jonah because flesh and blood
non revelavit tibi, sed pater meus qui in caelis est'. ergo
not has-revealed to-you but father my who in heaven is therefore
Petrus a deo patre doctus recte Christum confitetur: vos
Peter by God the-father taught rightly Christ confesses you
autem moniti a patre vestro diabolo inique salvatorem malis
but warned by father your the-devil wickedly the-savior by-evil
actibus denegatis. vero sacerdoti dicitur: 'tu es Petrus et
deeds deny to-the-true priest it-is-said you are Peter and
super hanc petram aedificabo ecclesiam meam': vos quidem
upon this rock I-shall-build church my you indeed
assimilamini 'viro stulto, qui aedificavit domum suam super
are-likened to-a-man foolish who built house his upon
arenam'. notandum vero est, quod insipientibus in aedificanda
sand to-be-noted but it-is that with-the-foolish in the-building
domo arenarum pendulae mobilitati dominus non cooperetur,
house of-the-sands hanging to-the-mobility the-Lord not cooperates
secundum illud: 'fecerunt sibi reges et non per me'.
according-to that they-have-made for-themselves kings and not through me
itidemque quod sequitur eadem sonat dicendo: 'et portae
and-likewise what follows the-same sounds by-saying and the-gates
inferni non praevalebunt' eiusque peccata intelleguntur. de
of-hell not shall-prevail and-whose sins are-understood about
vestra quid exitiabili structura pronuntiatur? 'venerunt flumina
your what deadly structure is-pronounced came floods
et flaverunt venti et impegerunt in domum illam et
and blew winds and struck against house that and
cecidit et fuit ruina eius magna'. Petro eiusque successoribus
it-fell and was ruin its great to-Peter and-to-his successors

dicit dominus: 'et tibi dabo claves regni caelorum':
says the-Lord and to-you I-shall-give the-keys of-the-kingdom of-the-heavens
vobis vero: 'non novi vos, discedite a me, operarii
to-you but not I-know you depart from me O-workers
iniquitatis, ut separati sinistrae partis cum haedis eatis in
of-iniquity that separated of-the-left side with the-goats you-may-go into
ignem aeternum'. itemque omni sancto sacerdoti promittitur:
fire eternal and-likewise to-every holy priest it-is-promised
'et quaecumque solveris super terram, erunt soluta
and whatever you-shall-have-loosed upon earth shall-be loosed
et in caelis: et quaecumque ligaveris super terram,
also in heaven and whatever you-shall-have-bound upon earth
erunt ligata et in caelis'. sed quomodo vos aliquid solvetis,
shall-be bound also in heaven but how you anything shall-loose
ut sit solutum et in caelis, a caelo ob scelera adempti
that it-be loosed also in heaven from heaven for crimes taken-away
et immanium peccatorum funibus compediti, ut Salomon
and of-monstrous sins with-ropes fettered as Solomon
quoque ait: 'criniculis peccatorum suorum unusquisque
also says with-the-little-hairs of-sins his each-one
constringitur?' quaque ratione aliquid in terra ligabitis,
is-bound by-what reason anything on earth shall-you-bind
quod supra modum etiam ligetur praeter vosmetipsos, qui
that above measure also be-bound besides yourselves who
ita ligati iniquitatibus in hoc mundo tenemini, ut in caelis
so bound by-iniquities in this world are-held that into heaven
nequaquam ascendatis, sed infaustis tartari ergastulis,
by-no-means you-ascend but into-the-ill-starred of-Tartarus prisons
non conversi in hac vita ad dominum, decidatis?
not turned in this life to the-Lord you-fall

Nec sibi quisquam sacerdotum de corporis mundi solum
nor himself anyone of-the-priests about of-body clean alone
conscientia supplaudat, cum eorum quis praeest, si qui
conscience should-applaud since of-those whom he-governs if any
propter eius imperitiam vel desidiam seu adulationem
because-of his inexperience or sloth or flattery
perierint, in die iudicii de eiusdem manibus, veluti
shall-have-perished on the-day of-judgment from of-the-same hands as-if
interfectoris, animae exquirantur. quia nec dulcior mors quae
of-the-killer the-souls may-be-required because not sweeter death which
infertur a bono quoque homine quam malo: alioquin
is-inflicted by a-good also man than by-a-bad-one otherwise
non dixisset apostolus velut paternum legatum suis
not would-have-said the-apostle as-if a-fatherly bequest to-his
successoribus derelinquens: 'mundus ego sum ab omnium
successors leaving clean I am from of-all
sanguine. non enim subterfugi, quo minus annuntiarem
the-blood not for I-have-shrunk by-which less I-should-announce
vobis omne mysterium dei'. multumque nam usu ac
to-you all the-mystery of-God and-much for by-use and
frequentia peccatorum inebriati et incessanter irruentibus vobis
frequency of-sins made-drunk and ceaselessly by-rushing to-you
scelerum cumulatorum ac si undis quassati unam veluti post
of-crimes heaped-up as if by-waves shaken one as-if after
naufragium, in qua ad vivorum terram evadatis, paenitentiae
shipwreck on which to of-the-living the-land you-may-escape of-penitence
tabulam toto animi nisu exquirite, ut avertatur furor
plank with-whole of-mind striving seek that may-be-turned-away the-fury
domini a vobis misericorditer dicentis: 'nolo mortem
of-the-Lord from you mercifully saying I-do-not-wish the-death
peccatoris, sed ut convertatur et vivat'. ipse omnipotens
of-the-sinner but that he-turn and live himself the-almighty

deus totius consolationis et misericordiae paucissimos bonos
God of-all consolation and mercy the-very-few good
pastores conservet ab omni malo et municipes faciat
shepherds may-keep from all evil and citizens make
subacto communi hoste civitatis Hierusalem caelestis, hoc est,
subdued the-common enemy of-the-city of-Jerusalem heavenly that is
sanctorum omnium congregationis, pater et filius et spiritus
of-the-saints all of-the-congregation the-father and the-son and the-spirit
sanctus, cui sit honor et gloria in saecula saeculorum. amen.
holy to-whom be honor and glory for ages of-ages amen

NENNIUS

Historia Brittonum

The History of the Britons

De sex aetatibus mundi §§ 1–6

1–6 · THE SIX AGES OF THE WORLD

The Historia counts the years from the beginning of the world to the flood, to Abraham, Moses, David, the Babylonian exile, and Christ's passion, and from the passion and the incarnation to its own day. It names the six ages, from Adam to Noah and on to John the Baptist and the judgment.

A principio mundi usque ad diluvium anni
from the-beginning of-the-world all-the-way to the-flood years
$\overline{\text{II}}$CCXLII. a diluvio usque ad Abraham
two-thousand-two-hundred-forty-two from the-flood all-the-way to Abraham
anni DCCCCXLII. ab Abraham usque ad Moysen anni
years nine-hundred-forty-two from Abraham all-the-way to Moses years
DCXL. a Moyse usque ad David anni D.
six-hundred-forty from Moses all-the-way to David years five-hundred
a David usque Nabuchodonosor anni sunt DLXVIIII.
from David all-the-way-to Nebuchadnezzar years are five-hundred-sixty-nine
ab Adam usque transmigrationem Babyloniae anni sunt
from Adam all-the-way-to the-transmigration of-Babylon years are
$\overline{\text{IIII}}$DCCCLXXVIIII.
four-thousand-eight-hundred-seventy-nine
a transmigratione Babyloniae usque ad Christum
from the-transmigration of-Babylon all-the-way to Christ
DLXVI. ab Adam vero usque ad passionem Christi
five-hundred-sixty-six from Adam but all-the-way to the-passion of-Christ
anni sunt $\overline{\text{V}}$CCXXVIII.
years are five-thousand-two-hundred-twenty-eight
a passione autem Christi peracti sunt anni DCCLXXXXVI.
from the-passion moreover of-Christ completed are years seven-hundred-ninety-six
ab incarnatione autem eius anni sunt DCCCXXXI.
from the-incarnation moreover his years are eight-hundred-thirty-one

Prima igitur aetas mundi ab Adam usque ad Noe.
the-first therefore age of-the-world from Adam all-the-way to Noah
secunda a Noe usque ad Abraham. tertia ab Abraham
the-second from Noah all-the-way to Abraham the-third from Abraham
usque ad David.
all-the-way to David
quarta a David usque ad Danihelem. quinta a Daniele
the-fourth from David all-the-way to Daniel the-fifth from Daniel
usque ad Iohannem Baptistam. sexta a Iohanne usque
all-the-way to John the-Baptist the-sixth from John all-the-way
ad iudicium, in quo dominus noster Iesus Christus veniet
to the-judgment in which Lord our Jesus Christ shall-come
iudicare vivos ac mortuos et seculum per ignem.
to-judge the-living and the-dead and the-world through fire

Historia Brittonum §§ 7–10

7–10 · BRITAIN AND BRUTUS

Britain, named for Brutus, a Roman consul, holds twenty-eight cities and four peoples: Scots, Picts, Saxons, and Britons. It has three islands and two great rivers. The Roman annals tell how a magus foretold that Silvius' son would kill his parents; the boy Brutus kills his father by chance, is exiled, founds Tours, and settles Britain.

Brittannia insula a quodam Bruto consule Romano dicta. haec
Britain the-island from a-certain Brutus a-consul Roman named this
consurgit ab Africo boreali ad occidentem versus: DCCC
rises from the-southwest to-the-north to the-west towards eight-hundred
in longitudine milium, CC in latitudine spatium habet. in
in length of-miles two-hundred in breadth a-space it-has in
ea sunt viginti octo civitates et innumerabilia promontoria cum
it are twenty eight cities and innumerable promontories with

innumeris castellis ex lapidibus et latere fabricatis et in ea
innumerable forts of stones and of-brick built and in it
habitant quattuor gentes Scotti Picti Saxones atque Brittones.
dwell four nations the-Scots the-Picts the-Saxons and the-Britons
Tres magnas insulas habet, quarum una vergit contra
three great islands it-has of-which one faces towards
Armoricas et vocatur insula Gueith: secunda sita est in
the-Armoricans and is-called the-island Gueith the-second placed is in
umbilico maris inter Hiberniam et Brittanniam et vocatur
the-navel of-the-sea between Ireland and Britain and is-called
nomen eius Eubonia, id est Manau: alia sita est in
name its Eubonia that is Man the-other placed is in
extremo limite orbis Brittanniae ultra Pictos et vocatur
the-farthest boundary of-the-world of-Britain beyond the-Picts and is-called
Orc. sic in proverbio antiquo dicitur, quando de iudicibus vel
Orc so in a-proverb old it-is-said when about judges or
regibus sermo fit: 'iudicavit Brittanniam cum tribus insulis'.
kings talk is-made he-judged Britain with three islands
Sunt in ea multa flumina, quae confluunt ad omnes
there-are in it many rivers which flow-together to all
partes, id est ad orientem, ad occidentem, ad meridiem, ad
parts that is to the-east to the-west to the-south to
septentrionem, sed tamen duo flumina praeclariora ceteris
the-north but yet two rivers more-famous than-the-other
fluminibus Tamesis ac Sabrinae quasi duo brachia Britanniae,
rivers the-Thames and the-Severn as-if two arms of-Britain
per quae olim rates vehebantur ad portandas divitias pro
through which once boats were-carried for carrying riches for
causa negotiationis. Brittones olim implentes eam a mari
the-sake of-trade the-Britons once filling it from sea
usque ad mare iudicaverunt.
all-the-way to sea judged

Si quis scire voluerit, quo tempore post diluvium
if anyone to-know shall-have-wished at-what time after the-flood
habitata est haec insula, hoc experimentum bifarie inveni.
inhabited was this island this proof in-two-ways I-have-found
In annalibus autem Romanorum sic scriptum est. Aeneas post
in the-annals moreover of-the-Romans so written it-is Aeneas after
Troianum bellum cum Ascanio filio suo venit ad Italiam et
the-Trojan war with Ascanius son his came to Italy and
superato Turno accepit Laviniam filiam Latini filii Fauni,
overcome Turnus received Lavinia the-daughter of-Latinus son of-Faunus
filii Pici, filii Saturni in coniugium et post mortem Latini
son of-Picus son of-Saturn in marriage and after the-death of-Latinus
regnum obtinuit Romanorum vel Latinorum. Aeneas autem
the-kingdom obtained of-the-Romans or of-the-Latins Aeneas moreover
Albam condidit et postea uxorem duxit et peperit ei
Alba founded and afterward a-wife married and she-bore to-him
filium nomine Silvium. Silvius autem duxit uxorem et gravida
a-son by-name Silvius Silvius moreover married a-wife and pregnant
fuit et nuntiatum est Aeneae, quod nurus sua gravida
she-was and announced it-was to-Aeneas that daughter-in-law his pregnant
esset et misit ad Ascanium filium suum, ut mitteret magum
was and he-sent to Ascanius son his that he-should-send magus
suum ad considerandam uxorem, ut exploraret quid haberet
his for examining the-wife that he-might-explore what she-had
in utero, si masculum vel feminam. et magus consideravit
in the-womb whether male or female and the-magus examined
uxorem et reversus est. propter hanc vaticinationem magus
the-wife and returned has because-of this prophecy the-magus
occisus est ab Ascanio, quia dixit Ascanio, quod masculum
killed was by Ascanius because he-said to-Ascanius that a-male
haberet in utero mulier et filius mortis erit, quia occidet
she-had in the-womb the-woman and a-son of-death he-shall-be because he-shall-kill

patrem suum et matrem suam et erit exosus omnibus
father his and mother his and shall-be hated by-all
hominibus. sic evenit: in nativitate illius mulier mortua
men so it-happened in the-birth of-him the-woman died
est et nutritus est filius et vocatum est nomen eius Bruto.
has and reared was the-son and called was name his Brutus
Post multum intervallum iuxta vaticinationem magi,
after long interval according-to the-prophecy of-the-magus
dum ipse ludebat cum aliis, ictu sagittae occidit patrem
while he played with others by-the-blow of-an-arrow he-killed father
suum non de industria, sed casu. et expulsus est ab
his not on purpose but by-chance and expelled was from
Italia et arminilis fuit et venit ad insulas maris Tyrreni
Italy and a-wanderer he-was and came to the-islands of-the-sea Tyrrhenian
et expulsus est a Graecis causa occisionis Turni, quem
and expelled was by the-Greeks for-the-sake of-the-killing of-Turnus whom
Aeneas occiderat, et pervenit ad Gallos usque et ibi
Aeneas had-killed and arrived to the-Gauls up-to and there
condidit civitatem Turonorum, quae vocatur Turnis. et
founded the-city of-Tours which is-called Turnis and
postea ad istam pervenit insulam, quae a nomine suo
afterward to this arrived island which from name his
accepit nomen, id est Brittanniam et implevit eam cum
received the-name that is Britain and filled it with
suo genere et habitavit ibi. ab illo autem die habitata
his race and dwelt there from that moreover day inhabited
est Brittannia usque in hodiernum diem.
is Britain all-the-way to the-present day

§§ 11–18

Britto reigned in Britain in Eli's time, while his brother Postumus ruled the Latins. The Picts take the Orkneys and the north; the Scots come from Spain to Ireland, Partholon first and later three sons of a soldier who perish attacking a glass tower. The Irish tell of a Scythian exiled from Egypt who wandered to Spain. A second account traces Britto from Alanus, of the race of Japheth.

Aeneas autem regnavit tribus annis apud Latinos. Ascanius
Aeneas moreover reigned for-three years among the-Latins Ascanius
regnavit annis XXXVII. post quem Silvius Aeneae filius
reigned years thirty-seven after whom Silvius of-Aeneas son
regnavit annis XII, Postumus annis triginta novem, a
reigned years twelve Postumus years thirty nine from
quo Albanorum reges Silvii appellati sunt, cuius frater erat
whom of-the-Albans the-kings Silvii called were whose brother was
Britto. quando regnabat Britto in Brittannia, Heli sacerdos
Britto when reigned Britto in Britain Eli the-priest
iudicabat in Israhel et tunc arca testamenti ab alienigenis
judged in Israel and then the-ark of-the-covenant by foreigners
possidebatur, Postumus frater eius apud Latinos regnabat.
was-possessed Postumus brother his among the-Latins reigned
Post intervallum multorum annorum non minus DCCC
after an-interval of-many years not less than-eight-hundred
Picti venerunt et occupaverunt insulas, quae vocantur
the-Picts came and occupied the-islands which are-called
Orcades, et postea ex insulis vastaverunt regiones multas et
the-Orkneys and afterward from the-islands laid-waste regions many and

occupaverunt eas in sinistrali plaga Brittanniae, et manent ibi
occupied them in the-left region of-Britain and remain there
tertiam partem Brittanniae tenentes usque in hodiernum diem.
the-third part of-Britain holding all-the-way to the-present day
Novissime autem Scotti venerunt a partibus Hispaniae ad
last moreover the-Scots came from the-parts of-Spain to
Hiberniam. primus autem venit Partholomus cum mille
Ireland first moreover came Partholon with a-thousand
hominibus de viris et mulieribus et creverunt usque ad
people of men and women and they-increased all-the-way to
quattuor milia hominum et venit mortalitas super eos
four thousand of-people and came a-mortality upon them
et in una septimana omnes perierunt et non remansit ex
and in one week all perished and not remained of
illis etiam unus. secundus venit ad Hiberniam Nimeth filius
them even one the-second came to Ireland Nimeth son
quidam Agnominis, qui fertur navigasse super mare annum et
a-certain of-Agnomen who is-said to-have-sailed upon the-sea a-year and
dimidium et postea tenuit portum in Hibernia fractis navibus
a-half and afterward held port in Ireland broken the-ships
eius et mansit ibidem per multos annos et iterum navigavit
his and remained there for many years and again sailed
cum suis et ad Hispaniam reversus est. et postea venerunt
with his-men and to Spain returned has and afterward came
tres filii militis Hispaniae cum triginta ciulis apud illos et
three sons of-a-soldier of-Spain with thirty keels among them and
cum triginta coniugibus in unaquaque ciula et manserunt ibi
with thirty wives in each keel and remained there
per spatium unius anni. et postea conspiciunt turrim vitream
for the-space of-one year and afterward they-see a-tower of-glass
in medio mari et homines conspiciebant super turrim et
in the-middle sea and men they-saw upon the-tower and

quaerebant loqui ad illos et numquam respondebant et ipsi
they-sought to-speak to them and never they-answered and they
uno anno ad oppugnationem turris properaverunt cum
in-one year to the-attack of-the-tower hastened with
omnibus ciulis suis et cum omnibus mulieribus excepta
all keels their and with all women excepted
una ciula, quae confracta est naufragio, in qua erant viri
one keel which wrecked was by-shipwreck in which were men
triginta totidemque mulieres. et aliae naves navigaverunt ad
thirty and-as-many women and the-other ships sailed for
expugnandam turrim, et dum omnes descenderant in litore,
storming the-tower and while all had-descended on the-shore
quod erat circa turrim, operuit illos mare et demersi sunt
which was around the-tower covered them the-sea and drowned they-were
et non evasit unus ex illis. et de familia illius ciulae,
and not escaped one of them and from the-household of-that keel
quae relicta est propter fractionem, tota Hibernia impleta est
which left was because-of the-wreck all Ireland filled was
usque in hodiernum diem. et postea venerunt paulatim
all-the-way to the-present day and afterward came gradually
a partibus Hispaniae et tenuerunt regiones plurimas.
from the-parts of-Spain and held regions very-many
Novissime venit Damhoctor et ibi habitavit cum omni
last came Damhoctor and there dwelt with all
genere suo usque hodie in Brittannia. Istoreth Istorini
race his all-the-way-to today in Britain Istoreth of-Istorinus
filius tenuit Dalrieta cum suis; Builc autem cum suis
son held Dalriada with his-men Builc moreover with his-men
tenuit Euboniam insulam et alias circiter; filii autem
held Eubonia the-island and others around the-sons moreover
Liethan obtinuerunt in regione Demetorum et in aliis
of-Liethan gained in the-region of-the-Demetae and in other

regionibus, id est Guir Cetgueli, donec expulsi sunt a
regions that is Gower Kidwelly until expelled they-were by
Cuneda et a filiis eius ab omnibus Brittannicis regionibus.
Cunedda and by sons his from all British regions
Si quis autem scire voluerit, quando vel quo tempore fuit
if anyone moreover to-know shall-have-wished when or at-what time was
inhabitabilis et deserta Hibernia, sic mihi peritissimi Scottorum
uninhabitable and deserted Ireland so to-me the-most-skilled of-the-Scots
nuntiaverunt. quando venerunt per mare rubrum filii Israhel,
announced when came through the-sea Red the-sons of-Israel
Aegyptii venerunt et secuti sunt et demersi sunt, ut in lege
the-Egyptians came and followed have and drowned were as in the-law
legitur. erat vir nobilis de Scythia cum magna familia
is-read there-was a-man noble from Scythia with a-great household
apud Aegyptios et expulsus est a regno suo et ibi erat,
among the-Egyptians and expelled was from kingdom his and there he-was
quando Aegyptii mersi sunt, et non perrexit ad persequendum
when the-Egyptians drowned were and not went for pursuing
populum dei. illi autem, qui superfuerant, inierunt consilium,
the-people of-God they moreover who had-survived entered counsel
ut expellerent illum, ne regnum illorum obsideret et
that they-should-expel him lest kingdom their he-should-besiege and
occuparet, quia fortes illorum demersi erant in rubrum
occupy because the-strong-ones of-them drowned had-been in the-Red
mare, et expulsus est. at ille per quadraginta et duos annos
sea and expelled was but he for forty and two years
ambulavit per Africam, et venerunt ad aras Filistinorum per
walked through Africa and they-came to the-altars of-the-Philistines by
lacum Salinarum et venerunt inter Rusicadam et montes
the-lake of-the-Salt-pans and came between Rusicada and the-mountains
Azariae et venerunt per flumen Malvam et transierunt per
of-Azaria and came by the-river Malva and crossed through

Maritaniam ad columnas Herculis et navigaverunt Tyrrenum
Mauretania to the-pillars of-Hercules and sailed the-Tyrrhenian
mare et pervenerunt ad Hispaniam usque et ibi habitaverunt
sea and arrived to Spain up-to and there dwelt
per multos annos et creverunt et multiplicati sunt nimis
for many years and grew and multiplied were exceedingly
et gens illorum multiplicata est nimis. et postea venerunt
and nation their multiplied was exceedingly and afterward came
ad Hiberniam post mille et duos annos, postquam mersi
to Ireland after a-thousand and two years after drowned
sunt Aegyptii in rubrum mare, et ad regiones Darieta, in
were the-Egyptians in the-Red sea and to the-regions of-Dalriada in
tempore, quo regnabat Brutus apud Romanos, a quo
the-time in-which reigned Brutus among the-Romans from whom
consules esse coeperunt, deinde tribuni plebis ac dictatores.
consuls to-be began then tribunes of-the-people and dictators
et consules rursum rem publicam obtinuerunt per annos
and consuls again the-state public held for years
CCCCXLVII, quae prius regia dignitate damnata fuerat.
four-hundred-forty-seven which before by-royal dignity condemned had-been
Brittones venerunt in tertia aetate mundi ad Brittanniam;
the-Britons came in the-third age of-the-world to Britain
Scotti autem in quarta obtinuerunt Hiberniam. Scotti autem,
the-Scots moreover in the-fourth gained Ireland the-Scots moreover
qui sunt in occidente, et Picti de aquilone pugnabant
who are in the-west and the-Picts from the-north fought
unanimiter et uno impetu contra Brittones indesinenter, quia
with-one-mind and with-one onset against the-Britons unceasingly because
sine armis utebantur Brittones. et post multum intervallum
without arms lived the-Britons and after long interval
temporis Romani monarchiam totius mundi obtinuerunt.
of-time the-Romans the-monarchy of-the-whole world gained

A primo anno, quo Saxones venerunt in Brittanniam
from the-first year in-which the-Saxons came into Britain
usque ad annum quartum Mermini regis supputantur anni
all-the-way to the-year fourth of-Merfyn king are-counted years
CCCCXXVIIII. a nativitate domini usque ad adventum
four-hundred-twenty-nine from the-nativity of-the-Lord all-the-way to the-coming
Patricii ad Scottos CCCCV anni sunt. a morte Patricii
of-Patrick to the-Scots four-hundred-five years are from the-death of-Patrick
usque ad obitum sanctae Brigidae sexaginta anni. a
all-the-way to the-death of-holy Brigid sixty years from
nativitate Columbae usque mortem Brigidae quattuor anni
the-nativity of-Columba all-the-way-to the-death of-Brigid four years
sunt. initium compoti: viginti tres cycli decemnovennales
are the-beginning of-the-reckoning twenty three cycles nineteen-year
ab incarnatione domini usque ad adventum Patricii in
from the-incarnation of-the-Lord all-the-way to the-coming of-Patrick into
Hiberniam et ipsi annos efficiunt numero CCCCXXXVIII, et
Ireland and they years make in-number four-hundred-thirty-eight and
ab adventu Patricii usque ad cyclum decemnovennalem, in
from the-coming of-Patrick all-the-way to the-cycle nineteen-year in
quo sumus, viginti duo cycli sunt, id est, CCCCXXI sunt,
which we-are twenty two cycles are that is four-hundred-twenty-one are
duo anni in ogdoade usque in hunc annum, in quo sumus.
two years in the-ogdoad all-the-way to this year in which we-are
Aliud experimentum inveni de isto Bruto ex veteribus
another proof I-have-found about this Brutus from the-old
libris veterum nostrorum. tres filii Noe diviserunt orbem
books of-elders our three sons of-Noah divided the-world
in tres partes post diluvium. Sem in Asia, Cham in Africa,
into three parts after the-flood Shem in Asia Ham in Africa
Iafeth in Europa dilataverunt terminos suos. primus homo
Japheth in Europe they-widened boundaries their the-first man

venit ad Europam de genere Iafeth Alanus cum tribus
came to Europe from the-race of-Japheth Alanus with three
filiis suis, quorum nomina sunt Hessitio, Armenon, Negue.
sons his whose names are Hessitio Armenon Negue
Hessitio autem habuit filios quattuor: hi sunt Francus,
Hessitio moreover had sons four these are Francus
Romanus, Britto, Albanus. Armenon autem habuit quinque
Romanus Britto Albanus Armenon moreover had five
filios: Gothus, Valagothus, Gebidus, Burgundus, Longobardus.
sons Gothus Valagothus Gebidus Burgundus Longobardus
Negue autem habuit tres filios: Vandalus, Saxo, Boguarus.
Negue moreover had three sons Vandalus Saxo Boguarus
ab Hisitione autem ortae sunt quattuor gentes Franci,
from Hisitio moreover sprung are four nations the-Franks
Latini, Albani et Britti. ab Armenone autem quinque:
the-Latins the-Albans and the-Britons from Armenon moreover five
Gothi, Valagothi, Gebidi, Burgundi, Longobardi. a Neguio
the-Goths the-Valagoths the-Gepids the-Burgundians the-Lombards from Neguio
vero quattuor Boguarii, Vandali, Saxones et Turingi. istae
but four the-Bavarians the-Vandals the-Saxons and the-Thuringians these
autem gentes subdivisae sunt per totam Europam. Alanus
moreover nations subdivided are through all Europe Alanus
autem, ut aiunt, filius fuit Fetebir, filii Ougomun, filii Thoi,
moreover as they-say son was of-Fetebir son of-Ougomun son of-Thoi
filii Boib, filii Simeon, filii Mair, filii Ethach, filii Aurthach,
son of-Boib son of-Simeon son of-Mair son of-Ethach son of-Aurthach
filii Ecthet, filii Oth, filii Abir, filii Ra, filii Ezra, filii Izrau,
son of-Ecthet son of-Oth son of-Abir son of-Ra son of-Ezra son of-Izrau
filii Baath, filii Iobaath, filii Iovan, filii Iafeth, filii Noe,
son of-Baath son of-Iobaath son of-Javan son of-Japheth son of-Noah
filii Lamech, filii Matusalae, filii Enoch, filii Iareth, filii
son of-Lamech son of-Methuselah son of-Enoch son of-Jared son

Malalehel, filii Cainan, filii Enos, filii Seth, filii Adam, filii
of-Mahalaleel son of-Cainan son of-Enos son of-Seth son of-Adam son
dei vivi. hanc peritiam inveni ex traditione veterum.
of-God living this lore I-have-found from the-tradition of-the-elders
Qui incolae in primo fuerunt Brittanniae Brittones a Bruto.
who inhabitants at first were of-Britain the-Britons from Brutus
Brutus filius Hisitionis, Hisition Alanei, Alaneus filius Reae
Brutus son of-Hisitio Hisitio of-Alaneus Alaneus son of-Rhea
Silviae, Rea Silvia filia Numae Pampilii, filii Ascanii; Ascanius
Silvia Rhea Silvia daughter of-Numa Pompilius son of-Ascanius Ascanius
filius Aeneae, filii Anchisae, filii Troi, filii Dardani, filii Flise,
son of-Aeneas son of-Anchises son of-Tros son of-Dardanus son of-Flise
filii Iuvani, filii Iafeth. Iafeth vero habuit septem filios. primus
son of-Javan son of-Japheth Japheth but had seven sons the-first
Gomer, a quo Galli; secundus Magog, a quo Scythas
Gomer from whom the-Gauls the-second Magog from whom the-Scythians
et Gothos; tertius Madai, a quo Medos; quartus Iuvan, a
and the-Goths the-third Madai from whom the-Medes the-fourth Javan from
quo Graeci; quintus Tubal, a quo Hiberei et Hispani et
whom the-Greeks the-fifth Tubal from whom the-Iberians and the-Spaniards and
Itali; sextus Mosoch, a quo Cappadoces; septimus Tiras,
the-Italians the-sixth Meshech from whom the-Cappadocians the-seventh Tiras
a quo Traces. hi sunt filii Iafeth filii Noe filii Lamech.
from whom the-Thracians these are the-sons of-Japheth son of-Noah son of-Lamech
Et redeam nunc ad id, de quo digressus sum.
and let-me-return now to that from which digressed I-have

§§ 19–30

Julius Caesar is beaten at the Thames and wins on his third attempt; Claudius, Severus with his wall, Carausius, Constantine, Maximus, and Maximianus follow, the last taking the British soldiers who settle Armorica. Lucius the British king is baptized. The Britons kill the Roman governors three times and three times beg for help, until Rome withdraws.

Romani autem, dum acciperent dominium totius mundi,
the-Romans moreover when they-received the-dominion of-the-whole world
ad Brittannos miserunt legatos, ut obsides et censum
to the-Britons sent envoys that hostages and tax
acciperent ab illis, sicut accipiebant ab universis regionibus
they-might-receive from them as they-received from all regions
et insulis. Brittanni autem, cum essent tyranni et tumidi,
and islands the-Britons moreover since they-were tyrannical and swollen
legationem Romanorum contempserunt. tunc Iulius Caesar,
the-embassy of-the-Romans despised then Julius Caesar
cum accepisset singulare imperium primus et obtinuisset,
when he-had-received sole empire first and had-held
iratus est valde et venit ad Brittanniam cum sexaginta ciulis
angry was greatly and came to Britain with sixty keels
et tenuit in ostium Tamesis, in quo naufragium perpessae
and held into the-mouth of-the-Thames in which shipwreck suffered
sunt naves illius, dum ipse pugnabat apud Dolobellum,
have ships his while he fought with Dolobellus
qui erat proconsul regi Brittannico, qui et ipse Bellinus
who was proconsul to-the-king British who also himself Bellinus
vocabatur, et filius erat Minocanni, qui occupavit omnes
was-called and son was of-Minocannus who occupied all

insulas Tyrreni maris et Iulius reversus est sine
the-islands of-the-Tyrrhenian sea and Julius returned has without
victoria caesis militibus et fractis navibus.
victory slain the-soldiers and broken the-ships
Et iterum post spatium trium annorum venit cum magno
and again after a-space of-three years he-came with a-great
exercitu trecentisque ciulis et pervenit usque ad ostium
army and-three-hundred keels and arrived all-the-way to the-mouth
fluminis, quod vocatur Tamesis. et ibi inierunt bellum et
of-the-river which is-called the-Thames and there they-entered battle and
multi ceciderunt de equis militibusque suis, quia supra
many fell of horses and-soldiers his because the-above
dictus proconsul posuerat sudes ferreos et semen bellicosum,
said proconsul had-placed stakes of-iron and seed warlike
id est Cetilou, in vada fluminis. discrimen magnum fuit
that is Cetilou in the-fords of-the-river a-crisis great it-was
militibus Romanorum haec ars invisibilis, et discesserunt
for-the-soldiers of-the-Romans this art invisible and they-departed
sine pace in illa vice. gestum est bellum tertio iuxta
without peace on that occasion waged was a-battle a-third-time beside
locum, qui dicitur Trinovantum. et accepit Iulius imperium
the-place which is-called Trinovantum and received Julius the-empire
Brittannicae gentis XLVII annis ante nativitatem Christi,
of-the-British nation forty-seven years before the-nativity of-Christ
ab initio autem mundi V̄CCXV.
from the-beginning moreover of-the-world five-thousand-two-hundred-fifteen
Iulius igitur primus in Brittanniam pervenit et regnum
Julius therefore first into Britain arrived and the-kingdom
et gentem tenuit, et in honorem illius Quintilem mensem
and the-nation held and in honor of-him Quintilis the-month
Iulium debere Romani decreverunt vocari. et idibus
July ought the-Romans decreed to-be-called and on-the-Ides

Martiis Gaius Iulius Caesar in curia occiditur, tenente
of-March Gaius Julius Caesar in the-senate-house is-killed holding
Octaviano Augusto monarchiam totius mundi, et censum
Octavian Augustus the-monarchy of-the-whole world and the-tax
a Brittannia ipse solus accepit, ut Virgilius ait:
from Britain he alone received as Virgil says

Purpurea intexti tollant aulaea Britanni.
the-purple woven may-raise curtains the-Britons

Secundus post hunc Claudius imperator venit et in
the-second after him Claudius the-emperor came and in
Brittannia imperavit annis quadraginta octo post adventum
Britain ruled years forty eight after the-coming
Christi et stragem et bellum fecit magnum non absque
of-Christ and slaughter and war made great not without
detrimento militum, tamen victor fuit in Brittannia. et
loss of-soldiers yet victor he-was in Britain and
postea cum ciulis perrexit ad Orcades insulas et subiecit
afterward with keels he-went to the-Orkney islands and subjected
sibi et fecit eas tributarias. in tempore illius quievit
to-himself and made them tributary in the-time of-him ceased
dare censum Romanis a Brittannia, sed Brittannicis
to-give tax to-the-Romans from Britain but to-the-British
imperatoribus redditum est. regnavit annis XIII mensibus
emperors returned it-was he-reigned years thirteen months
VIII. cuius monumentum in Mogantia apud Longobardos
eight whose monument in Mainz among the-Lombards
ostenditur: dum ad Romam ibat, ibi defunctus est.
is-shown while to Rome he-went there died he-has

Post CLXVII annos post adventum Christi Lucius
after one-hundred-sixty-seven years after the-coming of-Christ Lucius
Brittannicus rex cum omnibus regulis totius Brittannicae
the-British king with all the-petty-kings of-the-whole British
gentis baptismum suscepit missa legatione ab imperatore
nation baptism received sent an-embassy from the-emperor
Romanorum et a papa Romano Eucharisto.
of-the-Romans and from the-pope Roman Eucharistus
Tertius fuit Severus, qui transfretavit ad Brittannos; ubi,
the-third was Severus who crossed to the-Britons where
ut receptas provincias ab incursione barbarica faceret
that the-recovered provinces from incursion barbarian he-might-make
tutiores, murum et aggerem a mari usque ad mare per
safer a-wall and rampart from sea all-the-way to sea through
latitudinem Brittanniae, id est per CXXXII milia
the-breadth of-Britain that is through one-hundred-thirty-two thousand
passuum deduxit, et vocatur Brittannico sermone Guaul.
of-paces he-drew and it-is-called in-the-British speech Guaul
propterea iussit fieri inter Brittones et Pictos et Scottos,
for-this he-ordered to-be-made between the-Britons and the-Picts and the-Scots
quia Scotti ab occidente et Picti ab aquilone unanimiter
because the-Scots from the-west and the-Picts from the-north with-one-mind
pugnabant contra Brittones, nam et ipsi pacem inter se
fought against the-Britons for also they peace among themselves
habebant; et non multo post intra Brittanniam Severus moritur.
had and not much after within Britain Severus dies
Quartus fuit Karitius imperator et tyrannus, qui et ipse
the-fourth was Carausius emperor and tyrant who also himself
in Brittanniam venit tyrannide. qui propterea tyrannus fuit
into Britain came by-tyranny who therefore a-tyrant was
pro occisione Severi et cum omnibus ducibus Romanicae
for the-killing of-Severus and with all the-leaders of-the-Roman

gentis, qui erant cum eo in Brittannia, transverberavit
nation who were with him in Britain he-pierced
omnes regulos Brittannorum et vindicavit valde Severum
all the-petty-kings of-the-Britons and avenged greatly Severus
ab illis et purpuram Brittanniae occupavit.
on them and the-purple of-Britain seized
Quintus Constantinus Constantini magni filius fuit et ibi
the-fifth Constantine of-Constantine the-great the-son was and there
moritur et sepulcrum illius monstratur iuxta urbem, quae
dies and the-tomb of-him is-shown beside the-city which
vocatur Cair Segeint, ut litterae, quae sunt in lapide tumuli,
is-called Cair Segeint as the-letters which are on the-stone of-the-mound
ostendunt. et ipse seminavit tria semina, id est auri argenti
show and he sowed three seeds that is of-gold of-silver
aerisque, in pavimento supradictae civitatis, ut nullus pauper in
and-of-bronze in the-pavement of-the-above-said city that no poor-man in
ea habitaret umquam, et vocatur alio nomine Minmanton.
it should-dwell ever and it-is-called by-another name Minmanton
Sextus Maximus imperator regnavit in Brittannia. a
the-sixth Maximus the-emperor reigned in Britain from
tempore illius consules esse coeperunt et Caesares numquam
the-time of-him consuls to-be began and Caesars never
appellati sunt postea. et sanctus Martinus in tempore illius
called were afterward and holy Martin in the-time of-him
claruit in virtutibus et signis et cum eo locutus est.
shone in virtues and signs and with him spoken has
Septimus imperator regnavit in Brittannia Maximianus. ipse
the-seventh emperor reigned in Britain Maximianus he
perrexit cum omnibus militibus Brittonum a Brittannia et
went with all the-soldiers of-the-Britons from Britain and
occidit Gratianum regem Romanorum et imperium tenuit
killed Gratian king of-the-Romans and the-empire held

totius Europae et noluit dimittere milites, qui perrexerunt
of-the-whole Europe and he-would-not to-dismiss the-soldiers who went
cum eo, ad Brittanniam ad uxores suas et ad filios suos et
with him to Britain to wives their and to sons their and
ad possessiones suas, sed dedit illis multas regiones a stagno
to possessions their but he-gave them many regions from the-pool
quod est super verticem Montis Iovis usque ad civitatem,
which is upon the-summit of-the-Mount of-Jove all-the-way to the-city
quae vocatur Cant Guic, et usque ad cumulum occidentalem,
which is-called Cant Guic and all-the-way to the-heap western
id est, Cruc Ochidient. hi sunt Brittones Armorici et
that is Cruc Ochidient these are the-Britons Armorican and
numquam reversi sunt huc usque in hodiernum diem. propter
never returned have hither all-the-way to the-present day because-of
hoc Brittannia occupata est ab extraneis gentibus et cives
this Britain occupied was by foreign nations and the-citizens
expulsi sunt, usque dum deus auxilium dederit illis.
expelled were all-the-way until God help shall-have-given to-them
In veteri traditione seniorum nostrorum septem imperatores
in the-old tradition of-elders our seven emperors
fuerunt a Romanis in Brittannia; Romani autem dicunt
were from the-Romans in Britain the-Romans moreover say
novem. octavus fuit alius Severus, qui aliquando in Brittannia
nine the-eighth was another Severus who sometimes in Britain
manebat, aliquando ad Romam ibat et ibi defunctus est. nonus
stayed sometimes to Rome went and there died has the-ninth
fuit Constantius. ipse regnavit sexdecim annis in Brittannia
was Constantius he reigned sixteen years in Britain
et in sextodecimo anno imperii sui obiit in Brittannia.
and in the-sixteenth year of-empire his died in Britain

Hucusque regnaverunt Romani apud Brittones CCCCVIIII
thus-far reigned the-Romans among the-Britons four-hundred-nine
annis. Brittones autem deiecerunt regnum Romanorum neque
years the-Britons moreover threw-off the-rule of-the-Romans nor
censum dederunt illis neque reges illorum acceperunt,
tax gave to-them nor kings their received
ut regnarent super eos, neque Romani ausi sunt, ut
that they-should-reign over them nor the-Romans dared have that
venirent Brittanniam ad regnandum amplius, quia duces
they-should-come to-Britain for reigning further because leaders
illorum Brittones occiderant.
their the-Britons had-killed
Iterum repetendus est sermo de Maximiano tyranno.
again to-be-repeated is the-talk about Maximianus the-tyrant
Gratianus cum fratre Valentiano regnavit VI annis
Gratian with brother Valentinian reigned six years
et Ambrosius Mediolanensis episcopus clarus habetur
and Ambrose of-Milan bishop famous is-held
in catholicorum dogmate. Valentianus cum Theodosio
in of-the-catholics dogma Valentinian with Theodosius
regnavit annis VIII. synodus Constantinopolim colligitur a
reigned years eight a-synod at-Constantinople is-gathered by
CCCXVIII patribus, in qua omnes haereses damnantur.
three-hundred-eighteen fathers in which all heresies are-condemned
Hieronymus tum presbyter Bethleem toto mundo claruit.
Jerome then a-presbyter of-Bethlehem in-the-whole world shone
dum Gratianus imperium regebat in toto mundo, in
while Gratian the-empire ruled in the-whole world in
Brittannia per seditionem militum Maximus imperator
Britain through a-sedition of-the-soldiers Maximus emperor
factus est. qui mox dum in Gallias transfretaret, Gratianus
made was who soon while into the-Gauls he-crossed Gratian

Parassis Meroblaudis magistri militum proditione superatus
at-Paris of-Merobaudes master of-soldiers by-the-treachery overcome
est et fugiens Lugduni captus atque occisus est. Maximus
was and fleeing at-Lyon seized and killed was Maximus
Victorem filium suum consortem fecit. Martinus Turonensis
Victor son his partner made Martin of-Tours
episcopus in magnis virtutibus claruit. post multum
bishop in great virtues shone after long
intervallum temporis a Valentiniano et Theodosio consulibus
interval of-time by Valentinian and Theodosius consuls
in tertio ab Avvileua lapide spoliatus indumentis regiis
at the-third from Avvileua milestone stripped of-garments royal
sistitur et capite damnatur. cuius filius Victor eodem
is-set and by-the-head is-condemned whose son Victor in-the-same
anno ab Argabaste comite interfectus est in Gallia.
year by Arbogast the-count killed was in Gaul
Tribus vicibus occisi sunt duces Romanorum a Brittannis.
three times slain were the-leaders of-the-Romans by the-Britons
Brittones autem dum anxiebantur a barbarorum gentibus, id
the-Britons moreover while they-were-distressed by of-the-barbarians nations that
est Scottorum et Pictorum, flagitabant auxilium Romanorum,
is of-the-Scots and of-the-Picts demanded the-help of-the-Romans
et dum legati mittebantur cum magno luctu et cum
and when envoys were-sent with great grief and with
sablonibus super capita sua intrabant et portabant magna
sands upon heads their they-entered and carried great
munera secum consulibus Romanorum pro admisso scelere
gifts with-them to-the-consuls of-the-Romans for the-committed crime
occisionis ducum et suscipiebant consules grata dona
of-the-killing of-the-leaders and received the-consuls pleasing gifts

ab illis, et promittebant cum iuramento accipere iugum
from them and they-promised with an-oath to-accept the-yoke
Romanici iuris, licet durum fuisset.
of-Roman law although hard it-had-been
Et Romani venerunt cum maximo exercitu ad auxilium
and the-Romans came with a-very-great army to the-help
eorum et posuerunt imperatores in Brittannia et composito
of-them and placed emperors in Britain and arranged
imperatore cum ducibus revertebantur exercitus ad Romam
the-emperor with the-leaders returned the-armies to Rome
usque, et sic alternatim per CCCXLVIII annos faciebant.
up-to and so alternately for three-hundred-forty-eight years they-did
Brittones autem propter gravitatem imperii occidebant
the-Britons moreover because-of the-heaviness of-the-empire killed
duces Romanorum et auxilium postea petebant. Romani
the-leaders of-the-Romans and help afterward sought the-Romans
autem ad imperium auxiliumque et ad vindicandum veniebant
moreover to empire and-help and to avenging came
et spoliata Brittannia auro argentoque cum aere et omni
and despoiled Britain of-gold and-of-silver with bronze and every
pretiosa veste et melle cum magno triumpho revertebantur.
precious garment and honey with great triumph returned

§§ 31–35

Vortigern rules in fear of the Picts, the Scots, and Ambrosius. Hengist and Horsa, descended from Woden, arrive in three keels and are given Thanet. Germanus comes to preach: the tyrant Benli refuses him and is burned by fire from heaven, while the servant who sheltered him, whose calf was restored to life, becomes king of Powys.

Factum est autem post supra dictum bellum, quod fuit inter
done it-was moreover after the-above said war which was between
Brittones et Romanos, quando duces illorum occisi sunt, et
the-Britons and the-Romans when leaders their slain were and
occisionem Maximi tyranni transactoque Romanorum imperio
the-killing of-Maximus the-tyrant and-ended of-the-Romans the-empire
in Brittannia per quadraginta annos fuerunt sub metu.
in Britain for forty years they-were under fear
Guorthigirnus regnavit in Brittannia et dum ipse regnabat,
Vortigern reigned in Britain and while he reigned
urgebatur a metu Pictorum Scottorumque et a Romanico
he-was-pressed by fear of-the-Picts and-of-the-Scots and by the-Roman
impetu nec non et a timore Ambrosii. interea venerunt tres
onset nor not also by fear of-Ambrosius meanwhile came three
ciulae a Germania expulsae in exilio, in quibus erant Hors
keels from Germany expelled into exile in which were Horsa
et Hengist, qui et ipsi fratres erant, filii Guictglis, filii
and Hengist who also themselves brothers were sons of-Guictglis son
Guigta, filii Guectha, filii VVoden, filii Frealaf, filii Fredulf,
of-Guigta son of-Guectha son of-Woden son of-Frealaf son of-Fredulf
filii Finn, filii Fodepald, filii Geta, qui fuit, ut aiunt, filius
son of-Finn son of-Fodepald son of-Geta who was as they-say son

dei. non ipse est deus deorum, amen, deus exercituum,
of-a-god not he is God of-gods amen the-God of-hosts
sed unus est ab idolis eorum, quod ipsi colebant.
but one he-is of idols their which they worshiped
Guorthigirnus suscepit eos benigne et tradidit eis insulam,
Vortigern received them kindly and handed-over to-them the-island
quae in lingua eorum vocatur Tanet, Brittannico sermone
which in tongue their is-called Thanet in-the-British speech
Ruoihm. regnante Gratiano secundo cum Equitio Saxones
Ruoihm reigning Gratian for-the-second-time with Equitius the-Saxons
a Guorthigirno suscepti sunt anno CCCXLVII post
by Vortigern received were in-the-year three-hundred-forty-seven after
passionem Christi.
the-passion of-Christ
In tempore illius venit sanctus Germanus ad praedicandum
in the-time of-him came holy Germanus for preaching
in Brittannia et claruit apud illos in multis virtutibus et
in Britain and shone among them in many virtues and
multi per eum salvi facti sunt et plurimi perierunt.
many through him saved made were and very-many perished
Aliquanta miracula, quae per illum fecit deus, scribenda
some miracles which through him did God to-be-written
decrevi.
I-have-decided
Primum miraculum de miraculis eius. erat quidam rex
the-first miracle of the-miracles his there-was a-certain king
iniquus atque tyrannus valde, cui nomen erat Benli. illum
wicked and a-tyrant greatly to-whom the-name was Benli him
vir sanctus voluit visitare et properare ad iniquum regem,
the-man holy wished to-visit and to-hasten to the-wicked king
ut praedicaret illi. at cum ipse homo dei venisset ad ostium
that he-might-preach to-him but when he the-man of-God had-come to the-gate

urbis cum comitibus suis, venit portarius et salutavit eos et
of-the-city with companions his came the-porter and greeted them and
miserunt eum ad regem et rex durum responsum dedit illis
they-sent him to the-king and the-king a-hard answer gave to-them
et cum iuramento dixit: si fuerint vel si manserint
and with an-oath said if they-shall-have-been or if they-shall-have-stayed
usque ad caput anni, non venient umquam in medio
all-the-way to the-head of-the-year not they-shall-come ever into the-middle
urbis meae. dum ipsi expectarent ianuatorem, ut nuntiaret
of-city my while they waited-for the-doorkeeper that he-might-announce
illis sermonem tyranni, dies declinabat ad vesperum
to-them the-word of-the-tyrant the-day declined towards evening
et nox appropinquabat et nescierunt, quo irent. inter
and the-night drew-near and they-knew-not where they-should-go among
ea venit unus de servis regis e medio urbis
these came one of the-servants of-the-king from the-middle of-the-city
et inclinavit se ante virum dei et nuntiavit illis
and bowed himself before the-man of-God and announced to-them
omnia verba tyranni et invitavit illos ad casam suam et
all the-words of-the-tyrant and invited them to cottage his and
exierunt cum eo et benigne suscepit eos. et ille nihil
they-went-out with him and kindly he-received them and he nothing
habebat de omnibus generibus iumentorum excepta una vacca
had of all kinds of-beasts excepted one cow
cum vitulo, et occidit vitulum et coxit et posuit ante illos.
with a-calf and he-killed the-calf and cooked and placed before them
et praecepit sanctus Germanus, ut non confringeretur os
and commanded holy Germanus that not should-be-broken a-bone
de ossibus eius et sic factum est et in crastino vitulus
of bones its and so done it-was and on the-morrow the-calf
inventus est ante matrem suam sanus et vivus incolumisque.
found was before mother its sound and alive and-unharmed

Iterum de mane surrexerunt, ut impetrarent salutationem
again in-the morning they-rose that they-might-obtain the-greeting
tyranni. at ipsi, cum orarent et exspectarent iuxta portam
of-the-tyrant but they while they-prayed and waited beside the-gate
arcis, et ecce vir unus currebat et sudor illius a
of-the-citadel and behold a-man one ran and the-sweat of-him from
vertice ad plantas pedum distillabat. inclinabat se ante illos
the-crown to the-soles of-the-feet dripped he-bowed himself before them
et dixit sanctus Germanus: credis in sanctam trinitatem?
and said holy Germanus do-you-believe in the-holy Trinity
et respondit ille: credo, et baptizatus est et osculavit eum
and answered he I-believe and baptized he-was and he-kissed him
et dixit illi: vade in pace: in ista hora morieris et angeli
and said to-him go in peace in this hour you-shall-die and the-angels
dei in aere expectant te, ut gradieris cum illis ad deum,
of-God in the-air await you that you-may-walk with them to God
cui credidisti. et ipse laetus intravit in arcem et
in-whom you-have-believed and he glad entered into the-citadel and
praefectus tenuit illum et alligavit et ante tyrannum ductus et
the-prefect seized him and bound and before the-tyrant led and
interfectus est, quia mos erat apud nequissimum tyrannum,
killed was because the-custom was with the-most-wicked tyrant
nisi quis ante solis ortum pervenisset ad servitutem in
unless anyone before of-the-sun the-rising had-arrived for service in
arce, interficiebatur. et manserunt tota die iuxta portam
the-citadel he-was-killed and they-remained the-whole day beside the-gate
civitatis et non impetraverunt, ut salutarent tyrannum.
of-the-city and not obtained that they-might-greet the-tyrant
Solito ex more supra dictus adfuit servus et dixit illi
in-the-usual by custom above said came servant and said to-him
sanctus Germanus: cave, ne unus homo maneat de hominibus
holy Germanus beware lest one man remain of men

tuis in ista nocte in arce. et ipse reversus est in arcem
your in this night in the-citadel and he returned has into the-citadel
et deduxit filios suos, quorum numerus erat novem, et
and brought-out sons his whose number was nine and
ipsi ad supra dictum hospitium cum ipso reversi sunt. et
they to the-above said lodging with him returned have and
praecepit sanctus Germanus manere eos ieiunos et clausis
commanded holy Germanus to-remain them fasting and closed
ianuis dixit: vigilantes estote et si quid evenerit in
the-doors he-said watchful be and if anything shall-have-happened in
arce, nolite aspicere, sed orate indesinenter et ad deum
the-citadel do-not look but pray unceasingly and to God
vestrum clamate. et post modicum intervallum noctis ignis
your cry and after a-small interval of-the-night fire
de caelo cecidit et combussit arcem et omnes homines,
from heaven fell and burned the-citadel and all the-men
qui cum tyranno erant, et nusquam apparuerunt usque in
who with the-tyrant were and nowhere have-they-appeared all-the-way to
hodiernum diem, et arx non aedificata est usque hodie.
the-present day and the-citadel not built is all-the-way-to today
In crastino die ille vir, qui hospitalis fuit illis, credidit et
on the-next day that man who hospitable was to-them believed and
baptizatus est cum omnibus filiis suis et omnis regio cum
baptized was with all sons his and all the-region with
eis, cui nomen erat Catel. et benedixit ei et addidit
them to-whom the-name was Catel and he-blessed him and added
et dixit: non deficiet rex de semine tuo. ipse est Catell
and said not shall-fail a-king from seed your he is Catell
Durnluc, et tu rex eris ab hodierna die. et sic evenit;
Durnluc and you king shall-be from the-present day and so it-happened
et impletum est, quod dictum est per prophetam dicentem:
and fulfilled was what said was through the-prophet saying

‘suscitans de pulvere egenum, et de stercore erigens
raising from the-dust the-needy and from the-dung lifting
pauperem, ut sedeat cum principibus et solium gloriae
the-poor that he-may-sit with princes and the-throne of-glory
teneat.’ iuxta verba sancti Germani rex de servo factus
hold according-to the-words of-holy Germanus king from servant made
est, et omnes filii eius reges facti sunt, et a semine illorum
he-was and all sons his kings made were and from the-seed of-them
omnis regio Povisorum regitur usque in hodiernum diem.
all the-region of-the-Powysians is-ruled all-the-way to the-present day

§§ 36–39

36–39 · HENGIST’S DAUGHTER

When the Saxons multiply, the Britons can no longer feed them. Hengist invites more warriors and holds a feast at which Vortigern, drunk, falls in love with Hengist’s daughter and gives Kent for her. Octha and Ebissa take the north. Vortigern marries his own daughter, and Germanus and the British council condemn him.

Factum est autem postquam metati sunt Saxones in
done it-was moreover after encamped had the-Saxons in
supra dicta insula Tanet, promisit rex supra dictus
the-above said island Thanet promised the-king above said
dari illis victum et vestimentum absque defectione; et
to-be-given to-them food and clothing without failure and
placuit illis, et ipsi promiserunt expugnare inimicos eius
it-pleased them and they promised to-defeat the-enemies his
fortiter. at illi barbari cum multiplicati essent numero,
bravely but those barbarians when multiplied they-were in-number
non potuerunt Brittones cibare illos. cum postularent cibum
not could the-Britons to-feed them when they-demanded food

et vestimentum, sicut promissum erat illis, dixerunt
and clothing as promised it-had-been to-them said
Brittones: non possumus dare vobis cibum et vestimentum,
the-Britons not we-can to-give to-you food and clothing
quia numerus vester multiplicatus est, sed recedite a
because number your multiplied is but withdraw from
nobis, quia auxilio vestro non indigemus. et ipsi consilium
us because the-help your not we-need and they counsel
fecerunt cum maioribus suis, ut pacem disrumperent.
made with elders their that the-peace they-might-break
Hencgistus autem, cum esset vir doctus atque astutus
Hengist moreover since he-was a-man learned and cunning
et callidus, cum explorasset super regem inertem et super
and crafty when he-had-explored about the-king inert and about
gentem illius, quae sine armis utebatur, inito consilio
nation his which without arms lived having-entered counsel
dixit ad regem Brittannicum: pauci sumus; si vis, mittemus
said to the-king British few we-are if you-wish we-shall-send
ad patriam nostram et invitemus milites de militibus
to fatherland our and let-us-invite soldiers from the-soldiers
regionis nostrae, ut amplior sit numerus ad certandum pro
of-region our that larger be the-number for fighting for
te et pro gente tua. et ille imperavit ut facerent, et
you and for nation your and he commanded that they-should-do-so and
miserunt, et legati transfretaverunt trans Tithicam vallem,
they-sent and the-envoys crossed across the-Tithican valley
et reversi sunt cum ciulis sedecim, et milites electi venerunt
and returned have with keels sixteen and soldiers chosen came
in illis, et in una ciula ex eis venit puella pulchra facie
in them and in one keel of them came a-girl beautiful in-face
atque decorosa valde, filia Hencgisti. postquam autem
and comely very the-daughter of-Hengist after moreover

venissent ciulae, fecit Hencgistus convivium Guorthigirno et
had-come the-keels made Hengist a-banquet for-Vortigern and
militibus suis et interpreti suo, qui vocatur Ceretic et
for-soldiers his and for-interpreter his who is-called Ceretic and
puellam iussit ministrare illis vinum et siceram et inebriati
the-girl he-ordered to-serve them wine and strong-drink and drunk
sunt et saturati sunt nimis. illis autem bibentibus
they-were and sated they-were exceedingly them moreover drinking
intravit Satanas in corde Guorthigirni, ut amaret puellam,
entered Satan into the-heart of-Vortigern that he-should-love the-girl
et postulavit eam a patre suo per interpretem suum
and he-asked her from father her through interpreter his
et dixit: omne quod postulas a me impetrabis, licet
and he-said all that you-ask from me you-shall-obtain even-if
dimidium regni mei. et Hencgistus, inito consilio
the-half of-kingdom my and Hengist having-entered counsel
cum suis senioribus, qui venerunt secum de insula Oghgul,
with his elders who came with-him from the-island Oghgul
quid peterent regi pro puella, unum consilium cum
what they-should-ask of-the-king for the-girl one counsel with
illis omnibus fuit, ut peterent regionem, quae in lingua
them all there-was that they-should-ask the-region which in tongue
eorum vocatur Canturguoralen, in nostra autem Chent. et
their is-called Canturguoralen in ours moreover Kent and
dedit illis Guoyrancgono regnante in Cantia et inscius erat,
he-gave to-them Guoyrancgonus reigning in Kent and unaware he-was
quia regnum ipsius tradebatur paganis et ipse solus in
that kingdom his was-handed-over to-pagans and himself alone into
potestatem illorum clam dari, et sic data est puella illi
the-power of-them secretly to-be-given and so given was the-girl to-him
in coniugium et dormivit cum ea et amavit eam valde.
in marriage and he-slept with her and loved her greatly

Et dixit Hencgistus ad Guorthigirnum: ego sum pater
and said Hengist to Vortigern I am father
tuus et consiliator tui, et noli praeterire consilium meum
your and counselor your and do-not pass-by counsel my
umquam, quia non timebis te superari ab ullo homine
ever because not you-shall-fear yourself to-be-overcome by any man
neque ab ulla gente, quia gens mea valida est. invitabo
nor by any nation because nation my strong is I-shall-invite
filium meum cum fratueli suo, bellatores enim viri sunt, ut
son my with cousin his warriors for men they-are that
dimicent contra Scottos, et da illis regiones, quae sunt in
they-may-fight against the-Scots and give them the-regions which are in
aquilone iuxta murum, qui vocatur Guaul. et iussit ut
the-north beside the-wall which is-called Guaul and he-ordered that
invitaret eos et invitavit: Octha et Ebissa cum quadraginta
he-should-invite them and he-invited Octha and Ebissa with forty
ciulis. at ipsi cum navigarent circa Pictos, vastaverunt Orcades
keels but they while they-sailed around the-Picts laid-waste the-Orkney
insulas et venerunt et occupaverunt regiones plurimas
islands and came and occupied regions very-many
ultra mare Frenessicum usque ad confinium Pictorum. et
beyond the-sea Frenessic all-the-way to the-border of-the-Picts and
Hencgistus semper ciulas ad se paulatim invitavit, ita ut
Hengist always keels to himself gradually invited so that
insulas ad quas venerant absque habitatore relinquerent, et
the-islands to which they-had-come without inhabitant they-left and
dum gens illius crevisset et in virtute et in multitudine,
when nation his had-grown and in strength and in multitude
venerunt ad supra dictam civitatem Cantorum.
they-came to the-above said city of-the-Kentishmen

Nam super omnia mala adiciens Guorthigirnus accepit filiam
for above all evils adding Vortigern took daughter
sui uxorem sibi, et peperit ei filium. et hoc cum
his as-wife for-himself and she-bore to-him a-son and this when
compertum esset a sancto Germano, eum corripere venit cum
discovered it-was by holy Germanus him to-rebuke he-came with
omni clero Brittonum. et dum conventa esset magna synodus
all the-clergy of-the-Britons and while convened was a-great synod
clericorum ac laicorum in uno concilio, ipse rex praemonuit
of-clerics and of-laymen in one council himself the-king forewarned
filiam suam, ut exiret ad conventum et ut daret
daughter his that she-should-go-out to the-assembly and that she-should-give
filium suum in sinum Germani et ut diceret, quod ipse erat
son her into the-bosom of-Germanus and that she-should-say that he was
pater filii, et mulier fecit sicut erat edocta. Germanus
the-father of-the-son and the-woman did as she-had-been taught Germanus
autem eum benigne accepit et dicere coepit: pater tibi ero
moreover him kindly received and to-say began a-father to-you I-shall-be
nec te permittam, nisi mihi novacula cum forcipe pectineque
nor you shall-I-permit unless to-me a-razor with tongs and-a-comb
detur et ad patrem tuum carnalem tibi dare licetur. et
be-given and to father your fleshly to-you to-give it-be-allowed and
obaudivit puer et usque ad avum suum patrem carnalem
obeyed the-boy and all-the-way to grandfather his father fleshly
Guorthigirnum perrexit et puer illi dixit: pater meus es,
Vortigern went and the-boy to-him said father my you-are
caput meum tonde et comam capitis mei. et ille siluit et
head my shave and the-hair of-head my and he was-silent and
tacuit et puero respondere noluit, sed surrexit et iratus est
kept-quiet and to-the-boy to-answer would-not but rose and angry was

valde, ut a facie sancti Germani fugeret, et maledictus est
greatly that from the-face of-holy Germanus he-might-flee and cursed was
et damnatus a sancto Germano et omni Brittonum concilio.
and condemned by holy Germanus and all of-the-Britons the-council

§§ 40–49

40–49 · THE DRAGONS AND VORTIGERN'S END

Vortigern's magi tell him to build a fortress in Snowdonia, sprinkled with the blood of a fatherless boy. The boy, Ambrosius, shows a pool and two dragons fighting, red for the Britons and white for the Saxons. Vortimer fights the Saxons in four battles, and Horsa falls; after Vortimer's death Hengist's men murder the British elders at a peace parley. Vortigern dies in fire, and his line is traced.

Et postea rex ad se invitavit magos suos, ut quid
and afterward the-king to himself invited magi his that what
faceret ab eis interrogaret. at illi dixere: in extremas
he-should-do from them he-might-ask but they said into the-farthest
fines regni tui vade et arcem munitam invenies, ut te
bounds of-kingdom your go and a-citadel fortified you-shall-find that yourself
defendes; quia gens, quam suscepisti in regno tuo,
you-shall-defend because the-nation which you-have-received into kingdom your
invidet tibi et te per dolum occidet et universas regiones,
envies you and you through guile shall-kill and all the-regions
quas amaras, occupabit cum tua universa gente post mortem
which you-loved shall-occupy with your whole nation after death
tuam. et postea ipse cum magis suis arcem adipisci venit
your and afterward he with magi his a-citadel to-obtain came
et per multas regiones multasque provincias circumdederunt
and through many regions and-many provinces they-went-around
et illis non invenientibus ad regionem, quae vocatur Guined,
and they not finding to the-region which is-called Gwynedd

novissime pervenerunt; et illo lustrante in montibus Hereri
last they-arrived and he surveying in the-mountains of-Eryri
tandem in uno montium locum, in quo aptum erat arcem
at-last in one of-the-mountains a-place in which fitting it-was a-citadel
condere, adeptus est. et magi ad illum dixere: arcem in isto
to-found obtained has and the-magi to him said a-citadel in this
loco fac, quia tutissima a barbaris gentibus in aeternum
place make because most-safe from barbarian nations for ever
erit. et ipse artifices congregavit, id est lapidicinos,
it-shall-be and he craftsmen gathered that is stonecutters
et ligna et lapides congregavit et cum esset congregata
and wood and stones gathered and when was gathered
omnis materia, in una nocte ablata est materia. et tribus
all the-material in one night carried-off was the-material and three
vicibus iussit congregari et nusquam comparuit. et magos
times he-ordered to-be-gathered and nowhere it-appeared and the-magi
arcessivit et illos percunctatus est, quae esset haec causa
he-summoned and them questioned has what was this cause
malitiae et quid hoc eveniret. at illi responderunt: nisi
of-the-mischief and why this happened but they answered unless
infantem sine patre invenies et occidetur ille et arx a
a-child without father you-shall-find and shall-be-killed he and the-citadel with
sanguine suo aspergatur, numquam aedificabitur in aeternum.
blood his be-sprinkled never it-shall-be-built for ever
Et ipse legatos ex consilio magorum per universam
and he envoys from the-counsel of-the-magi through all
Brittanniam misit, utrum infantem sine patre invenirent. et
Britain sent whether a-child without father they-might-find and
lustrando omnes provincias regionesque plurimas venere ad
by-surveying all provinces and-regions very-many they-came to
campum Elleti, qui est in regione, quae vocatur Gleguissing,
the-field of-Elleti which is in the-region which is-called Glywysing

et pilae ludum faciebant pueri. et ecce duo inter se
and of-ball a-game were-making boys and behold two among themselves
litigabant, et dixit alter alteri: o homo sine patre,
were-quarreling and said one to-the-other O man without father
bonum non habebis. at illi de puero ad pueros diligenter
good not you-shall-have but they about the-boy from the-boys diligently
percunctabantur, et cunctantes matrem, si patrem haberet.
inquired and questioning the-mother whether a-father he-had
illa negavit et dixit: nescio quomodo in utero meo conceptus
she denied and said I-know-not how in womb my conceived
est, sed unum scio, quia virum non cognovi umquam, et
he-was but one-thing I-know that a-man not I-have-known ever and
iuravit illis patrem non habere. et illi eum secum duxere
she-swore to-them a-father not to-have and they him with-them led
usque ad Guorthigirnum regem et eum insinuaverunt regi.
all-the-way to Vortigern the-king and him made-known to-the-king
Et in crastino conventio facta est, ut puer interficeretur.
and on the-morrow an-assembly made was that the-boy should-be-killed
et puer ad regem dixit: cur viri tui me ad te detulerunt?
and the-boy to the-king said why men your me to you have-brought
cui rex ait: ut interficiaris et sanguis tuus circa
to-whom the-king said that you-may-be-killed and blood your around
arcem istam aspergetur, ut possit aedificari. respondit
citadel this shall-be-sprinkled that it-may-be-able to-be-built answered
puer regi: quis tibi monstravit? et rex: magi mei mihi
the-boy to-the-king who to-you showed and the-king magi my to-me
dixere. et puer dixit: ad me vocentur. et invitati sunt
said and the-boy said to me let-them-be-called and invited were
magi et puer illis dixit: quis revelavit vobis, ut ista
the-magi and the-boy to-them said who revealed to-you that this
arx a sanguine meo aspergeretur? et nisi aspergeretur
citadel with blood my should-be-sprinkled and unless it-were-sprinkled

a sanguine meo, in aeternum non aedificabitur? sed hoc
with blood my for ever not it-shall-be-built but this
ut cognoscat is, quis mihi de me palam fecit? iterum
that he-may-know he who to-me about me openly made again
puer dixit, modo tibi, o rex, elucubrabo et in veritate
the-boy said now to-you O king I-shall-elucidate and in truth
tibi omnia satagam; sed magos tuos percunctor: quid
to-you all-things I-shall-busy-myself but magi your I-question what
in pavimento istius loci est? placet mihi, ut ostendant tibi,
in the-pavement of-that place is it-pleases me that they-show to-you
quid sub pavimento habetur. at illi dixere: nescimus. et
what under the-pavement is-held but they said we-know-not and
ille dixit: comperior: stagnum in medio pavimenti est;
he said I-find a-pool in the-middle of-the-pavement is
venite et fodite et sic invenietis. venerunt et foderunt, et
come and dig and so you-shall-find they-came and dug and
ruit. et puer ad magos dixit: proferte mihi, quid est
it-collapsed and the-boy to the-magi said bring-forth to-me what is
in stagno? et siluerunt et non potuerunt revelare illi.
in the-pool and they-were-silent and not they-could to-reveal to-him
et ille dixit illis: ego vobis revelabo; duo vasa sunt et
and he said to-them I to-you shall-reveal two vessels are-there and
sic invenietis. venerunt et viderunt sic. et puer ad magos
so you-shall-find they-came and saw so and the-boy to the-magi
dixit: quid in vasis conclusis habetur? at ipsi siluerunt
said what in the-vessels closed is-held but they were-silent
et non potuerunt revelare illi. at ille asseruit: in medio
and not they-could to-reveal to-him but he asserted in the-middle
eorum tentorium est, separate ea et sic invenietis. et rex
of-them a-tent is separate them and so you-shall-find and the-king
separari iussit et sic inventum est tentorium complicatum,
to-be-separated ordered and so found was the-tent folded

sicut dixerat. et iterum interrogavit magos eius: quid in
as he-had-said and again he-asked the-magi his what in
medio tentorii est? et iam nunc narrate, et non potuerunt
the-middle of-the-tent is and now now tell and not they-could
scire. at ille revelavit: duo vermes in eo sunt, unus albus
to-know but he revealed two worms in it are one white
et unus rufus; tentorium expandite. et extenderunt et duo
and one red the-tent spread-out and they-spread and two
vermes dormientes inventi sunt. et dixit puer: expectate et
worms sleeping found were and said the-boy wait and
considerate quid facient vermes; et coeperunt vermes, ut
consider what shall-do the-worms and began the-worms that
alter alterum expelleret, alius autem scapulas suas ponebat,
one the-other should-drive-out the-other moreover shoulders his placed
ut eum usque ad dimidium tentorii expelleret, et sic
that him all-the-way to the-half of-the-tent he-might-drive-out and so
faciebant tribus vicibus: tamen tandem infirmior videbatur
they-did three times yet at-last weaker seemed
vermis rufus et postea fortior albo fuit et extra finem
the-worm red and afterward stronger than-the-white was and beyond the-end
tentorii expulit; tunc alter alterum secutus trans stagnum
of-the-tent drove-out then one the-other followed across the-pool
est et tentorium evanuit. et puer ad magos refert: quid
has and the-tent vanished and the-boy to the-magi reports what
significat mirabile hoc signum, quod factum est in tentorio?
signifies wonderful this sign which done was in the-tent
et illi proferunt: nescimus. et puer respondit: en revelatum
and they bring-forth we-know-not and the-boy answered lo revealed
est mihi hoc mysterium et ego vobis propalabo. regni
is to-me this mystery and I to-you shall-make-known of-kingdom
tui figura tentorium est; duo vermes duo dracones sunt;
your the-figure the-tent is the-two worms two dragons are

vermis rufus draco tuus est et stagnum figura huius mundi
the-worm red dragon your is and the-pool the-figure of-this world
est. at ille albus draco illius gentis, quae occupavit gentes
is but that white dragon of-that nation which has-occupied nations
et regiones plurimas in Brittannia, et paene a mari
and regions very-many in Britain and almost from sea
usque ad mare tenebunt, et postea gens nostra surget,
all-the-way to sea they-shall-hold and afterward nation our shall-rise
et gentem Anglorum trans mare viriliter deiciet, tu
and the-nation of-the-Angles across the-sea manfully shall-cast-down you
tamen de ista arce vade, quia eam aedificare non potes,
yet from this citadel go because it to-build not you-can
et multas provincias circumi, ut arcem tutam invenias,
and many provinces go-around that a-citadel safe you-may-find
et ego hic manebo. et rex ad adolescentem dixit: quo
and I here shall-remain and the-king to the-youth said by-what
nomine vocaris? ille respondit: Ambrosius vocor, id est,
name are-you-called he answered Ambrosius I-am-called that is
Embreis Guletic ipse videbatur. et rex dixit: de qua
Embreis Guletic he seemed and the-king said from what
progenie ortus es? at ille: unus est pater meus de
lineage having-sprung are-you but he one is father my of
consulibus Romanicae gentis. et arcem dedit illi cum
the-consuls of-the-Roman nation and the-citadel he-gave to-him with
omnibus regnis occidentalis plagae Brittanniae et ipse
all the-kingdoms of-the-western region of-Britain and he
cum magis suis ad sinistralem plagam pervenit et usque
with magi his to the-left region came and all-the-way
ad regionem, quae vocatur Guunnessi, adfuit et urbem
to the-region which is-called Gwynessi was-present and a-city
ibi, quae vocatur suo nomine Cair Guorthigirn, aedificavit.
there which is-called by-his name Cair Guorthigirn he-built

Interea Guorthemir filius Guorthigirn cum Hengisto et
meanwhile Vortimer son of-Vortigern with Hengist and
Horso et cum gente illorum petulanter pugnabat et
Horsa and with nation their boldly fought and
eos usque ad supradictam insulam, quae vocatur Tanet,
them all-the-way to the-above-said island which is-called Thanet
expulit et eos ibi tribus vicibus conclusit obsedit percussit
drove-out and them there three times shut-in besieged struck
comminuit terruit. et ipsi legatos ultra mare usque
crushed terrified and they envoys beyond the-sea all-the-way
in Germaniam transmittebant vocando ciulas cum ingenti
into Germany sent-across calling keels with a-huge
numero bellatorum virorum. et postea pugnabant contra
number of-warlike men and afterward fought against
reges nostrae gentis: aliquando vincebant et dilatabant
the-kings of-our nation sometimes they-conquered and widened
terminos suos, aliquando vincebantur et expellebantur.
boundaries their sometimes they-were-conquered and were-driven-out
Et Guorthemir contra illos quattuor bella avide gessit. primum
and Vortimer against them four battles eagerly waged the-first
bellum super flumen Derguentid; secundum bellum super
battle over the-river Derwent the-second battle over
vadum, quod dicitur in lingua eorum Episford, in nostra autem
the-ford which is-called in tongue their Episford in our moreover
lingua Rithergabail, et ibi cecidit Hors cum filio Guorthigirni,
tongue Rithergabail and there fell Horsa with the-son of-Vortigern
cuius nomen erat Categirn. tertium bellum in campo iuxta
whose name was Categirn the-third battle in a-field beside
lapidem tituli, qui est super ripam Gallici maris,
the-stone of-the-inscription which is upon the-bank of-the-Gallic sea
commisit et barbari victi sunt et ille victor fuit et ipsi in
he-joined and the-barbarians conquered were and he victor was and they into

fugam versi usque ad ciulas suas mersi sunt in eas muliebriter
flight turned all-the-way to keels their drowned were into them womanishly
intrantes. ille autem post modicum intervallum mortuus est et
entering he moreover after a-small interval died has and
ante mortem suam ad familiam suam dixit, ut sepulchrum illius
before death his to household his said that tomb his
in portu ponerent, a quo exierant, super ripam maris, in
in the-port they-should-place from which they-had-gone-out upon the-shore of-the-sea in
quo vobis commendo: quamvis in alia parte portum Brittanniae
which to-you I-commend although in another part a-port of-Britain
teneant et habitaverint, tamen in ista terra in aeternum
they-may-hold and may-have-dwelt yet in this land for ever
non manebunt. illi autem mandatum eius contempserunt
not they-shall-remain they moreover command his despised
et eum in loco, in quo imperaverat illis, non sepelierunt.
and him in the-place in which he-had-commanded them not they-buried
At barbari reversi sunt magno opere, cum Guorthigirnus
but the-barbarians returned have with-great effort since Vortigern
amicus illis erat propter uxorem suam et nullus illos
friend to-them was because-of wife his and no-one them
abigere audacter valuit, quia non de virtute sua Brittanniam
to-drive-off boldly was-able because not by strength their Britain
occupaverunt, sed de nutu dei. contra voluntatem dei
they-occupied but by the-nod of-God against the-will of-God
quis resistere poterit et nitatus? sed quomodo voluit
who to-resist shall-be-able and having-striven but as wished
dominus fecit et ipse omnes gentes regit et gubernat.
the-Lord he-did and he all nations rules and governs
Factum est autem post mortem Guorthemir regis
done it-was moreover after the-death of-Vortimer the-king
Guorthigirni filii et post reversionem Hengisti cum suis
of-Vortigern the-son and after the-return of-Hengist with his

turbis consilium fallax hortati sunt, ut dolum Guorthigirni
crowds counsel deceitful urged they-have that guile to-Vortigern
cum exercitu suo facerent. at illi legatos, ut impetrarent
with army his they-should-do but they envoys that they-might-obtain
pacem, miserunt, ut perpetua amicitia inter illos fieret.
peace sent that perpetual friendship between them should-be-made
at ille Guorthegirnus cum suis maioribus natu consilium
but he Vortigern with his elders by-birth counsel
fecerunt et scrutati sunt, quid facerent; tandem unum
made and searched have what they-should-do at-last one
consilium cum omnibus fuit, ut pacem facerent, et
counsel with all there-was that peace they-should-make and
legati eorum reversi sunt et postea conventum adduxerunt,
envoys their returned have and afterward an-assembly they-brought-about
ut ex utraque parte Brittones et Saxones in unum sine
that from each side Britons and Saxons into one without
armis convenirent, ut firma amicitia esset.
arms should-come-together that firm friendship should-be
Et Hengistus omni familiae suae iussit, ut unusquisque
and Hengist to-all household his ordered that each-one
artavum suum sub pede in medio ficonis sui poneret. et
knife his under foot in the-middle of-shoe his should-place and
quando clamavero ad vos et dixero: eu Saxones eniminit
when I-shall-have-shouted to you and shall-have-said eu Saxones eniminit
saxas, cultellos vestros ex ficonibus vestris educite et in illos
saxas knives your from shoes your draw-out and on them
irruite et fortiter contra illos resistite. et regem illorum nolite
rush and bravely against them resist and king their do-not
occidere, sed eum, pro causa filiae meae, quam dedi illi
kill but him for the-sake of-daughter my whom I-gave to-him
in coniugium, tenete, quia melius est nobis, ut ex manibus
in marriage hold because better it-is for-us that from hands

nostris redimatur. et conventum adduxerunt et in unum
our he-be-ransomed and the-assembly they-brought-about and in one
convenerunt, et Saxones amicialiter locuti in mente
they-came-together and the-Saxons in-friendly-fashion having-spoken in mind
interim vulpicino more agebant et vir iuxta virum socialiter
meanwhile in-fox-like manner acted and man beside man sociably
sederunt. Hengistus sicut dixerat, vociferatus est et omnes
they-sat Hengist as he-had-said shouted has and all
seniores trecenti Guorthigirni regis iugulati sunt et ipse solus
the-elders three-hundred of-Vortigern the-king slaughtered were and he alone
captus et catenatus est et regiones plurimas pro redemptione
captured and chained was and regions very-many for the-ransom
animae suae illis tribuit, id est Estsaxum, Sutsaxum.
of-soul his to-them he-granted that is Essex Sussex
Sanctus vero Germanus Guorthigirno praedicabat, ut ad
holy but Germanus to-Vortigern preached that to
dominum suum converteret et ab illicita coniunctione se
Lord his he-should-turn and from the-unlawful union himself
separaret; et ille usque ad regionem, quae a nomine suo
he-should-separate and he all-the-way to the-region which from the-name his
accepit nomen Guorthigirniaun, miserabiliter effugit, ut ibi
received the-name Guorthigirniaun miserably fled that there
cum uxoribus suis lateret. et sanctus Germanus post illum
with wives his he-might-hide and holy Germanus after him
secutus est cum omni clero Brittonum et ibi quadraginta
followed has with all the-clergy of-the-Britons and there for-forty
diebus et quadraginta noctibus mansit et super petram orabat
days and forty nights he-remained and upon a-rock prayed
et die noctuque stabat. et iterum Guorthigirnus usque ad
and by-day and-by-night stood and again Vortigern all-the-way to
arcem Guorthigirni, quae est in regione Demetorum iuxta
the-citadel of-Vortigern which is in the-region of-the-Demetae beside

flumen Teibi, ignominiose abscessit. et solito more sanctus
the-river Teifi shamefully withdrew and in-the-usual manner holy
Germanus eum secutus est et ibi ieiunus cum omni clero
Germanus him followed has and there fasting with all the-clergy
tribus diebus totidemque noctibus causaliter mansit et in
for-three days and-as-many nights for-the-cause remained and on
quarta nocte arx tota mediae circa noctis horam per
the-fourth night the-citadel whole of-the-middle about of-the-night the-hour through
ignem missum de caelo ex improviso cecidit ardente igne
fire sent from heaven from the-unforeseen fell burning the-fire
caelesti; et Guorthigirnus cum omnibus, qui cum eo erant,
heavenly and Vortigern with all who with him were
et cum uxoribus suis defecit. hic est finis Guorthigirni, ut
and with wives his perished this is the-end of-Vortigern as
in libro beati Germani repperi. alii autem aliter dixerunt.
in the-book of-blessed Germanus I-found others moreover otherwise have-said
Postquam exosi fuerunt illi omnes homines gentis suae pro
after hated were him all the-men of-nation his for
piaculo suo inter potentes et impotentes, inter servum et
crime his among the-powerful and the-powerless among slave and
liberum, inter monachos et laicos, inter parvum et magnum,
free among monks and laymen among small and great
et ipse dum de loco ad locum vagus errat, tandem
and he while from place to place a-wanderer strays at-last
cor eius crepuit et defunctus est, non cum laude. alii
heart his burst and died has not with praise others
dixerunt: terra aperta est et deglutivit eum in nocte, in
have-said the-earth opened is and swallowed him in the-night in
qua combusta est arx circa eum, quia non inventae sunt
which burned was the-citadel around him because not found were
ullae reliquiae illorum, qui combusti sunt cum eo in arce.
any remains of-those who burned were with him in the-citadel

Tres filios habuit, quorum nomina sunt Guorthemir, qui
three sons he-had whose names are Vortimer who
pugnabat contra barbaros, ut supra diximus; secundus
fought against the-barbarians as above we-have-said the-second
Categirn; tertius Pascent, qui regnavit in duabus regionibus
Categirn the-third Pascent who reigned in two regions
Buelt et Guorthegirniaun post mortem patris sui largiente
Builth and Guorthegirniaun after the-death of-father his granting
Ambrosio illi, qui fuit rex inter omnes reges Brittannicae
Ambrosius to-him who was king among all the-kings of-the-British
gentis. quartus fuit Faustus, qui a filia sua genitus est
nation the-fourth was Faustus who from daughter his begotten was
illi, et sanctus Germanus baptizavit illum et nutrivit et
to-him and holy Germanus baptized him and reared and
docuit et condidit locum magnum super ripam fluminis,
taught and founded a-place great upon the-bank of-the-river
quod vocatur Renis, et manet usque hodie. et unam
which is-called Renis and it-remains all-the-way-to today and one
filiam habuit, quae fuit mater Fausti sancti.
daughter he-had who was the-mother of-Faustus the-saint
Haec est genealogia illius, quae ad initium retro recurrit.
this is the-genealogy of-him which to the-beginning back runs
Fernmail ipse est, qui regit modo in regionibus duabus
Fernmail he is who rules now in regions two
Buelt et Guorthigirniaun, filius Teudubir. Teudubir ipse
Builth and Guorthigirniaun son of-Teudubir Teudubir he
est rex Buelitiae regionis, filius Pascent, filii Guoidcant,
is king of-the-Builth region son of-Pascent son of-Guoidcant
filii Moriud, filii Eldat, filii Eldoc, filii Paul, filii Mepurit,
son of-Moriud son of-Eldat son of-Eldoc son of-Paul son of-Mepurit
filii Briacat, filii Pascent, filii Guorthigirn Guortheneu, filii
son of-Briacat son of-Pascent son of-Vortigern Guortheneu son

Guitaul, filii Guitolin, filii Glovi. Bonus, Paul, Mauron tres
of-Guitaul son of-Guitolin son of-Glovi Bonus Paul Mauron three
fratres fuerunt filii Glovi, qui aedificavit urbem magnam
brothers were sons of-Glovi who built a-city great
super ripam fluminis Sabrinae, quae vocatur Brittannico
upon the-bank of-the-river Severn which is-called in-British
sermone Cair Glovi, Saxonice autem Gloecester. satis dictum
speech Cair Glovi in-Saxon moreover Gloucester enough said
est de Guorthigirno et de genere suo.
it-is about Vortigern and about the-race his

Vita Patricii §§ 50–55

50–55 · THE LIFE OF PATRICK

Patrick, once a captive in Ireland, studies at Rome; after Palladius fails, he is sent to the Scots, consecrated bishop, and baptizes Ireland. He works miracles, founds three hundred sixty-five churches, fasts forty days on Cruachan Eile, and wins three requests for the Irish. He resembles Moses in four ways.

Sanctus Germanus reversus est post mortem illius ad patriam
holy Germanus returned has after the-death of-him to fatherland
suam.
his
Sanctus Patricius erat in illo tempore captivus apud Scottos
holy Patrick was at that time a-captive among the-Scots
et dominus illius nominabatur Milchu et porcarius cum illo
and master his was-named Milchu and swineherd with him
erat et in septimo decimo anno aetatis suae reversus est
he-was and in the-seventh (and)-tenth year of-age his returned has
de captivitate et nutu dei eruditus est postea in sacris
from captivity and by-the-nod of-God taught he-was afterward in sacred

litteris et ad Romam usque pervenit et per longum spatium
letters and to Rome up-to arrived and for a-long space
mansit ibidem. ad legendum et ad scrutanda mysteria
remained there for reading and for searching the-mysteries
dei et sanctarum scripturarum libros percurrit. nam cum
of-God and of-the-holy scriptures the-books he-ran-through for when
ibi esset per annos septem, missus est Palladius episcopus
there he-was for years seven sent was Palladius bishop
primitus a Caelestino episcopo et papa Romae ad Scottos
first by Celestine bishop and pope of-Rome to the-Scots
in Christum convertendos; sed prohibuit illum deus per
to Christ to-be-converted but forbade him God through
quasdam tempestates, quia nemo potest accipere quicquam
certain storms because no-one can to-receive anything
de terra, nisi de caelo datum fuerit illi desuper.
from earth unless from heaven given it-shall-have-been to-him from-above
et profectus est ille Palladius de Hibernia et pervenit ad
and set-out has that Palladius from Ireland and arrived to
Brittanniam et ibi defunctus est in terra Pictorum.
Britain and there died has in the-land of-the-Picts
Audita morte Palladii episcopi alius legatus Patricius
heard the-death of-Palladius the-bishop another envoy Patrick
Theodosio et Valentiano regnantibus a Caelestino papa
Theodosius and Valentinian reigning by Celestine pope
Romano et angelo dei, cui nomen erat Victor, monente et
Roman and the-angel of-God to-whom the-name was Victor warning and
suadente sancto Germano episcopo ad Scottos in fidem Christi
persuading holy Germanus the-bishop to the-Scots to the-faith of-Christ
convertendos mittitur. misit Germanus seniorem cum illo
to-be-converted is-sent sent Germanus an-elder with him
Segerum ad quendam hominem mirabilem summum episcopum
Segerus to a-certain man wonderful highest bishop

Amatheam regem in propinquo habitantem. ibi sanctus
Amatheus a-king in the-neighborhood dwelling there the-saint
sciens omnia, quae ventura essent illi, episcopalem, gradum
knowing all-things which to-come were to-him the-episcopal rank
Amatheo rege episcopus sanctus accepit et nomen quod
from-Amatheus the-king bishop holy received and the-name which
est Patricius sumpsit, quia prius Maun vocabatur. Auxilius et
is Patrick took because before Maun he-was-called Auxilius and
Iserinus et ceteri inferiori gradu simul ordinati sunt cum eo.
Iserninus and the-others in-a-lower rank together ordained were with him
tunc acceptis benedictionibus perfectisque omnibus in nomine
then received the-blessings and-completed all-things in the-name
sanctae trinitatis paratam ascendit navim et pervenit ad
of-the-holy Trinity a-prepared he-boarded ship and arrived to
Brittanniam et praedicavit ibi non multis diebus et amissis
Britain and preached there not many days and abandoned
omnibus ambulandi anfractibus summa velocitate flatuque
all of-walking the-windings with-highest speed and-wind
prospero mare Hibernicum cum navi descendit. onerata vero
favorable the-sea Irish with the-ship he-went-down laden but
navis cum transmarinis mirabilibus et spiritalibus thesauris
the-ship with from-overseas wonders and spiritual treasures
perrexit ad Hiberniam et baptizavit eos.
he-went to Ireland and baptized them
A mundi principio usque ad baptismum Hibernensium
from of-the-world the-beginning all-the-way to the-baptism of-the-Irish
V̄CCCXXX anni sunt. in quinto anno Loygare
five-thousand-three-hundred-thirty years are in the-fifth year of-Loeguire
regis exorsus est praedicare fidem Christi.
king begun has to-preach the-faith of-Christ

Sanctus itaque Patricius euangelium Christi externis nationibus
holy and-so Patrick the-gospel of-Christ to-foreign nations
per annos quadraginta praedicabat, virtutes apostolicas faciebat,
for years forty preached virtues apostolic he-did
caecos illuminabat, leprosos mundabat, surdos audire faciebat,
the-blind he-enlightened lepers he-cleansed the-deaf to-hear he-made
daemones obsessis corporibus fugiebat, mortuos numero
demons from-possessed bodies he-put-to-flight the-dead in-number
usque ad novem suscitavit, captivos multos utriusque sexus
all-the-way to nine he-raised captives many of-each sex
suis propriis donis redemit. scripsit abegetoria trecenta
with-his own gifts he-ransomed he-wrote abecedaries three-hundred
sexaginta quinque aut eo amplius. ecclesias quoque eodem
sixty five or than-that more churches also in-the-same
numero fundavit trecentas sexaginta quinque. ordinavit
number he-founded three-hundred sixty five he-ordained
episcopos trecentos sexaginta quinque aut eo amplius,
bishops three-hundred sixty five or than-that more
in quibus spiritus dei erat. presbyteros autem usque ad
in whom the-spirit of-God was presbyters moreover all-the-way to
tria milia ordinavit et duodecim milia hominum in una
three thousand he-ordained and twelve thousand of-men in one
regione Conachta ad fidem Christi convertit et baptizavit et
region Connacht to the-faith of-Christ he-converted and baptized and
septem reges, qui erant filii Amolgith, in uno die baptizavit.
seven kings who were sons of-Amolgith on one day he-baptized
quadraginta diebus et quadraginta noctibus in cacumine collis
for-forty days and forty nights on the-summit of-the-hill
Eile ieiunavit, id est Cruachan Eile; in quo colle in aere
Eile he-fasted that is Cruachan Eile on which hill in the-air
imminente tres petitiones pro his, qui fidem ex Hibernensibus
overhanging three petitions for those who the-faith of the-Irish

receperunt, clementer postulavit. prima petitio eius est, ut
received mercifully he-asked the-first petition his is as
dicunt Scotti, ut susciperet unusquisque paenitentiam, licet
say the-Scots that should-receive each-one penitence though
in extremo vitae suae statu: secunda, ut ne a barbaris
in the-last of-life his state the-second that not by barbarians
consumentur in aeternum: tertia, ut non supervixerit aliquis
they-be-consumed for ever the-third that not should-survive anyone
Hibernensium in adventu iudicii, quia delebuntur pro
of-the-Irish at the-coming of-judgment because they-shall-be-destroyed for
honore Patricii septem annis ante iudicium. in illo autem
the-honor of-Patrick seven years before the-judgment on that moreover
tumulo benedixit populis Hiberniae et ideo ascendit, ut
mound he-blessed the-peoples of-Ireland and therefore he-climbed that
oraret pro eis et videret fructum laboris sui. et venerunt
he-might-pray for them and see the-fruit of-labor his and came
ad eum aves multi coloris innumerabiles, ut benediceret illis,
to him birds of-many color countless that he-might-bless them
quod significat omnes sanctos utriusque sexus Hibernensium
which signifies all the-saints of-each sex of-the-Irish
pervenire ad eum in die iudicii ad patrem et ad magistrum
to-come to him on the-day of-judgment to father and to master
suum, ut sequantur illum ad iudicium. postea in senectute
their that they-may-follow him to judgment afterward in old-age
bona migravit, ubi nunc laetatur in saecula saeculorum. amen.
good he-departed where now he-rejoices for ages of-ages amen
Quattuor modis aequantur Moyses et Patricius: id est
in-four ways are-equaled Moses and Patrick that is
angelo colloquente in rubo igneo: secundo modo in monte
an-angel speaking in the-bush fiery in-the-second way on a-mountain
quadraginta diebus et quadraginta noctibus ieiunavit: tertio
for-forty days and forty nights he-fasted in-the-third

modo similes fuerunt aetate CXX annis: quarto
way alike they-were in-age a-hundred-twenty years in-the-fourth
modo sepulchrum illius nemo scit, sed in occulto humatus
way the-tomb of-him no-one knows but in secret buried
est nemine sciente. quindecim annis in captivitate, in
he-was no-one knowing fifteen years in captivity in
vicesimo quinto anno ab Amatheo sancto episcopo subrogatur,
the-twentieth fifth year by Amatheus the-holy bishop he-is-substituted
octoginta et quinque annis in Hibernia praedicavit. res
eighty and five years in Ireland he-preached the-matter
autem exigebat amplius loqui de sancto Patricio, sed tamen
moreover demanded more to-speak about holy Patrick but yet
pro compendio sermonis volui breviare.
for the-saving of-speech I-wished to-abridge

Arthuriana § 56

56 · ARTHUR'S TWELVE BATTLES

The Saxons grow strong, and after Hengist's death his son Octha goes to Kent. Arthur fights them with the British kings as their war leader: twelve battles, at the Glein, the Dubglas, the Bassas, the Caledonian forest, Guinnion, where he carries Mary's image, the City of the Legion, Tribruit, Agned, and Badon, where nine hundred sixty fall to his single charge. The Saxons bring kings from Germany.

In illo tempore Saxones invalescebant in multitudine et
in that time the-Saxons grew-strong in multitude and
crescebant in Brittannia. mortuo autem Hengisto Octha
increased in Britain having-died moreover Hengist Octha
filius eius transivit de sinistrali parte Britanniae ad regnum
son his crossed from the-left part of-Britain to the-kingdom
Cantorum et de ipso orti sunt reges Cantorum. tunc
of-the-Kentishmen and from him sprung have the-kings of-the-Kentishmen then

Arthur pugnabat contra illos in illis diebus cum regibus
Arthur fought against them in those days with the-kings
Brittonum, sed ipse dux erat bellorum. primum bellum fuit
of-the-Britons but he the-leader was of-the-battles the-first battle was
in ostium fluminis quod dicitur Glein. secundum et tertium
in the-mouth of-the-river which is-called Glein the-second and the-third
et quartum et quintum super aliud flumen, quod dicitur
and the-fourth and the-fifth upon another river which is-called
Dubglas et est in regione Linnuis. sextum bellum super
Dubglas and is in the-region Linnuis the-sixth battle upon
flumen, quod vocatur Bassas. septimum fuit bellum in silva
the-river which is-called Bassas the-seventh was the-battle in the-forest
Celidonis, id est Cat Coit Celidon. octavum fuit bellum in
of-Celidon that is Cat Coit Celidon the-eighth was the-battle in
castello Guinnion, in quo Arthur portavit imaginem sanctae
the-fort Guinnion in which Arthur carried the-image of-holy
Mariae perpetuae virginis super humeros suos et pagani versi
Mary perpetual virgin upon shoulders his and the-pagans turned
sunt in fugam in illo die et caedes magna fuit super illos
were into flight on that day and slaughter great there-was upon them
per virtutem domini nostri Iesu Christi et per virtutem
through the-power of-Lord our Jesus Christ and through the-power
sanctae Mariae virginis genitricis eius. nonum bellum gestum
of-holy Mary virgin mother his the-ninth battle waged
est in urbe Legionis. decimum gessit bellum in litore
was in the-city of-the-Legion the-tenth he-waged battle on the-shore
fluminis, quod vocatur Tribruit. undecimum factum est bellum
of-the-river which is-called Tribruit the-eleventh made was the-battle
in monte, qui dicitur Agned. duodecimum fuit bellum
on the-mountain which is-called Agned the-twelfth was the-battle
in monte Badonis, in quo corruerunt in uno die nongenti
on the-mount of-Badon in which fell in one day nine-hundred

sexaginta viri de uno impetu Arthur; et nemo prostravit eos
sixty men from one onset of-Arthur and no-one laid-low them
nisi ipse solus, et in omnibus bellis victor extitit. et ipsi,
except he alone and in all battles victor he-stood-forth and they
dum in omnibus bellis prosternebantur, auxilium a Germania
while in all battles they-were-laid-low help from Germany
petebant et augebantur multipliciter sine intermissione et
sought and were-increased manifold without intermission and
reges a Germania deducebantur, ut regnarent super illos
kings from Germany they-brought that they-might-reign over them
in Brittannia usque ad tempus quo Ida regnavit, qui
in Britain all-the-way to the-time in-which Ida reigned who
fuit Eobba filius. ipse fuit primus rex in Beornica.
was of-Eobba son he was the-first king in Bernicia

Regum genealogiae cum computo §§ 57–66

57–66 · THE KINGS AND THE RECKONINGS

The genealogies of Bernicia, Kent, East Anglia, Mercia, and Deira are given, most running back to Woden. The Historia names the British poets, tells of Maelgwn and Cunedda, of Urien against Deodric, of Edwin's baptism by Rhun, and of Oswald and Penda, and ends with reckonings from the world's beginning to Constantine, from Stilicho to Valentinian, and from the Saxons' coming to Decius.

Woden genuit Beldeg genuit Beornec genuit Gechbrond genuit
Woden begot Beldeg begot Beornec begot Gechbrond begot
Aluson genuit Inguec genuit Aedibrith genuit Ossa genuit
Aluson begot Inguec begot Aedibrith begot Ossa begot
Eobba genuit Ida Ida autem duodecim filios habuit quorum
Eobba begot Ida Ida moreover twelve sons had whose
nomina sunt Adda Aedldric Decdric Edric Deothere Osmer
names are Adda Aedldric Decdric Edric Deothere Osmer

et unam reginam Bearnoch Ealric Ealdric genuit Aelfret ipse
and one queen Bearnoch Ealric Ealdric begot Aelfret he
est Aedlfred Flesaur nam et ipse habuit filios septem quorum
is Aedlfred Flesaur for also he had sons seven whose
nomina sunt Anfrid Osguald Osbiu Osguid Osgudu Oslapf
names are Anfrid Osguald Osbiu Osguid Osgudu Oslapf
Offa Osguid genuit Alcfrid et Aelfguin et Echfird Echgfrid
Offa Osguid begot Alcfrid and Aelfguin and Echfird Echgfrid
ipse est qui fecit bellum contra fratruelem suum, qui erat rex
he is who made war against cousin his who was king
Pictorum nomine Birdei et ibi corruit cum omni robore
of-the-Picts by-name Bridei and there he-fell with all the-strength
exercitus sui et Picti cum rege suo victores extiterunt et
of-army his and the-Picts with king their victors stood-forth and
numquam addiderunt Saxones ambronum ut a Pictis vectigal
never added the-Saxons of-the-Ambrones that from the-Picts tribute
exigerent. a tempore istius belli vocatur Gueith Lin Garan.
they-should-exact from the-time of-that war it-is-called Gueith Lin Garan
Osguid autem habuit duas uxores, quarum una vocabatur
Osguid moreover had two wives of-whom one was-called
Riemmelth filia Royth filii Rum et altera vocabatur
Riemmelth daughter of-Royth son of-Rum and the-other was-called
Eanfled filia Eadguin filii Alli.
Eanfled daughter of-Eadguin son of-Alli
Hengist genuit Octha genuit Ossa genuit Eormoric genuit
Hengist begot Octha begot Ossa begot Eormoric begot
Ealdbert genuit Ealdbald genuit Ercunbert genuit Ecgberth.
Ealdbert begot Ealdbald begot Ercunbert begot Ecgberth
Woden genuit Casser genuit Titinon genuit Trigil genuit
Woden begot Casser begot Titinon begot Trigil begot
Rodmunt genuit Rippan genuit Guillem Guechan ipse primus
Rodmunt begot Rippan begot Guillem Guechan he first

regnavit in Brittannia super gentem Eastanglorum. Guecha
reigned in Britain over the-nation of-the-East-Angles Guecha
genuit Guffan genuit Tydil genuit Ecni genuit Edric genuit
begot Guffan begot Tydil begot Ecni begot Edric begot
Aldul genuit Elric.
Aldul begot Elric
Woden genuit Guedolgeat genuit Gueagon genuit Guithleg
Woden begot Guedolgeat begot Gueagon begot Guithleg
genuit Guerdmund genuit Offa genuit Ongen genuit Eamer
begot Guerdmund begot Offa begot Ongen begot Eamer
genuit Pubba. ipse Pubba habuit duodecim filios, quorum
begot Pubba this Pubba had twelve sons of-whom
duo notitiores mihi sunt quam alii, id est Penda et Eua
two better-known to-me are than the-others that is Penda and Eua
Eadlit filius Pantha Penda filius Pubba Eadlbald filius Alguing
Eadlit son of-Pantha Penda son of-Pubba Eadlbald son of-Alguing
filius Eua filius Penda filius Pubba Ecgfrid filius Offa filius
son of-Eua son of-Penda son of-Pubba Ecgfrid son of-Offa son
Duminfert filius Eandulf filius Ossulf filius Eua filius Pubba.
of-Duminfert son of-Eandulf son of-Ossulf son of-Eua son of-Pubba
Woden genuit Beldeyg Brond genuit Siggar genuit Sebald
Woden begot Beldeyg Brond begot Siggar begot Sebald
genuit Zegulf genuit Soemil ipse primus separavit Deur o
begot Zegulf begot Soemil he first separated Deira from
Birneich. Soemil genuit Sguerthing genuit Giulglis genuit
Bernicia Soemil begot Sguerthing begot Giulglis begot
Usfrean genuit Iffi genuit Ulli, Aedgum, Osfird et Eadfird. duo
Usfrean begot Iffi begot Ulli Aedgum Osfird and Eadfird two
filii Edgum erant et cum ipso corruerunt in bello Meicen,
sons of-Edgum were and with him fell in the-battle of-Meicen
et de origine illius numquam iteratum est regnum, quia
and from the-stock of-him never renewed has-been the-kingdom because

non evasit unus de genere illius de isto bello, sed interfecti
not escaped one of the-race of-him from that battle but killed
omnes sunt cum illo ab exercitu Catguollauni regis Guendotae
all were with him by the-army of-Catguollaun king of-the-Gwynedd
regionis. Osguid genuit Ecgfird ipse est Ecgfrid Ailguin genuit
region Osguid begot Ecgfird he is Ecgfrid Ailguin begot
Oslach genuit Alhun genuit Adlsing genuit Echun genuit
Oslach begot Alhun begot Adlsing begot Echun begot
Oslaph Ida genuit Eadric genuit Ecgulf genuit Liodgуald
Oslaph Ida begot Eadric begot Ecgulf begot Liodgуald
genuit Aetan ipse est Eata Glinmaur genuit Eadbyrth et
begot Aetan he is Eata Glinmaur begot Eadbyrth and
Ecgbirth episcopum, qui fuit primus de natione eorum.
Ecgbirth the-bishop who was the-first of the-nation their
Ida filius Eobba tenuit regiones in sinistrali parte Brittanniae,
Ida son of-Eobba held regions in the-left part of-Britain
id est Umbri maris, et regnavit annis duodecim, et
that is of-the-Humber sea and reigned years twelve and
unxit Dinguayrdi Guurth Berneich.
anointed Dinguayrdi Guurth Berneich
Tunc Dutigirn in illo tempore fortiter dimicabat contra
then Dutigirn in that time bravely fought against
gentem Anglorum. tunc Talhaern Tataguen in poemate
the-nation of-the-Angles then Talhaearn Tataguen in poetry
claruit et Neirin, et Taliessin, et Bluchbard, et Cian,
shone and Aneirin and Taliesin and Bluchbard and Cian
qui vocatur Gueinth Guaut, simul uno tempore in poemate
who is-called Gueinth Guaut together at-one time in poetry
Britannico claruerunt.
British shone

Mailcunus magnus rex apud Brittones regnabat, id est in
Maelgwn the-great king among the-Britons reigned that is in
regione Guenedotae, quia atavus illius, id est Cunedag, cum
the-region of-Gwynedd because forefather his that is Cunedda with
filiis suis, quorum numerus octo erat, venerat prius de parte
sons his whose number eight was had-come earlier from the-part
sinistrali, id est de regione quae vocatur Manau Guotodin,
left that is from the-region which is-called Manau Gododdin
centum quadraginta sex annis antequam Mailcun regnaret,
a-hundred forty six years before Maelgwn reigned
et Scottos cum ingentissima clade expulerunt ab istis
and the-Scots with most-huge slaughter they-expelled from those
regionibus et nusquam reversi sunt iterum ad habitandum.
regions and nowhere returned have again for dwelling
Adda filius Ida regnavit annis octo. Aedlric filius Adda
Adda son of-Ida reigned years eight Aedlric son of-Adda
regnavit quattuor annis. Deoric filius Ida regnavit septem
reigned four years Deoric son of-Ida reigned seven
annis. Friodolgualdregnavit sex annis. in cuius tempore
years Friodolgualdreigned six years in whose time
regnum Cantorum mittente Gregorio baptismum suscepit.
the-kingdom of-the-Kentishmen sending Gregory baptism received
Hussa regnavit annis septem: contra illum quattuor reges
Hussa reigned years seven against him four kings
Urbgen et Riderchhen et Guallanc et Morcant dimicaverunt.
Urien and Rhydderch-hen and Guallanc and Morcant fought
Deodric contra illum Urbgen cum filiis dimicabat fortiter.
Deodric against him Urien with sons fought bravely
in illo autem tempore aliquando hostes, nunc cives
in that moreover time sometimes the-enemies now the-citizens
vincebantur et ipse conclusit eos tribus diebus et noctibus in
were-conquered and he shut-in them three days and nights in

insula Metcaud et dum erat in expeditione, iugulatus est
the-island Metcaud and while he-was on an-expedition slaughtered he-was
Morcanto destinante pro invidia, quia in ipso prae omnibus
Morcant arranging-it for envy because in him beyond all
regibus virtus maxima erat instauratione belli. Eadfered Flesaurs
kings valor greatest was in-the-renewal of-war Eadfered Flesaurs
regnavit duodecim annis in Berneich et alios duodecim in
reigned twelve years in Bernicia and another twelve in
Deur, viginti quattuor annis inter duo regna regnavit et
Deira twenty four years between two kingdoms he-reigned and
dedit uxori suae Dinguoaroy, quae vocatur Bebbab, et de
gave to-wife his Dinguoaroy which is-called Bebbab and from
nomine suae uxoris suscepit nomen, id est Bebbanburth.
the-name of-his wife it-received the-name that is Bamburgh
Eoguin filius Alli regnavit annis decem et septem et ipse
Eoguin son of-Alli reigned years ten and seven and he
occupavit Elmet et expulit Certic regem illius regionis.
occupied Elmet and expelled Certic king of-that region
Eanfled filia illius duodecimo die post pentecosten
Eanfled daughter of-him on-the-twelfth day after Pentecost
baptismum accepit cum universis hominibus suis de viris
baptism received with all men her of men
et mulieribus cum ea. Eadgum vero in sequenti pascha
and women with her Eadgum but at the-following Easter
baptismum suscepit et duodecim millia hominum baptizati
baptism received and twelve thousand of-men baptized
sunt cum eo. si quis scire voluerit, quis eos baptizavit,
were with him if anyone to-know shall-have-wished who them baptized
Rum map Urbgen baptizavit eos et per quadraginta dies
Rhun son-of Urien baptized them and for forty days

non cessavit baptizare omne genus ambronum et per
not ceased to-baptize every race of-the-Ambrones and through
praedicationem illius multi crediderunt Christo.
the-preaching of-him many believed in-Christ
Oswald filius Eadfred regnavit novem annis: ipse est Oswald
Oswald son of-Eadfred reigned nine years he is Oswald
Lamnguin. ipse occidit Catgublaun regem Guenedotae regionis
Lamnguin he killed Catgublaun king of-the-Gwynedd region
in bello Catscaul cum magna clade exercitus sui. Osguid filius
in the-battle of-Catscaul with great slaughter of-army his Osguid son
Eadlfrid regnavit viginti octo annis et sex mensibus. dum ipse
of-Eadlfrid reigned twenty eight years and six months while he
regnabat, venit mortalitas hominum Catgualart regnante apud
reigned came a-mortality of-men Catgualart reigning among
Brittones post patrem suum et in ea periit. et ipse occidit
the-Britons after father his and in it perished and he killed
Pantha in campo Gai et nunc facta est strages Gai campi
Penda in the-field of-Gai and now made was the-slaughter of-Gai field
et reges Brittonum interfecti sunt, qui exierant cum rege
and the-kings of-the-Britons killed were who had-gone-out with king
Pantha in expeditione usque ad urbem, quae vocatur Iudeu.
Penda on an-expedition all-the-way to the-city which is-called Iudeu
Tunc reddidit Osguid omnes divitias, quae erant cum eo
then gave-back Osguid all riches which were with him
in urbe, usque in manu Pendae et Penda distribuit
in the-city all-the-way into the-hand of-Penda and Penda distributed
ea regibus Brittonum, id est Atbret Iudeu. solus autem
them to-the-kings of-the-Britons that is Atbret Iudeu alone moreover
Catgabail rex Guenedotae regionis cum exercitu suo evasit
Catgabail king of-the-Gwynedd region with army his escaped
de nocte consurgens, quapropter vocatus est Catgabail
by night rising wherefore called he-was Catgabail

Catguommed. Ecgfrid filius Osbiu regnavit novem annis.
Catguommed Ecgfrid son of-Osbiu reigned nine years
in tempore illius sanctus Cudbert episcopus obiit in insula
in the-time of-him holy Cuthbert the-bishop died in the-island
Medcaut. ipse est qui fecit bellum contra Pictos et corruit ibi.
Medcaut he is who made war against the-Picts and fell there
Penda filius Pybba regnavit decem annis. ipse primus
Penda son of-Pybba reigned ten years he first
separavit regnum Merciorum a regno Nordorum et
separated the-kingdom of-the-Mercians from the-kingdom of-the-Northerners and
Onnan regem Easteranglorum et sanctum Oswaldum regem
Anna king of-the-East-Angles and holy Oswald king
Nordorum occidit per dolum. ipse fecit bellum Cocboy, in
of-the-Northerners he-killed through guile he made the-battle of-Cocboy in
quo cecidit Eoua filius Pippa frater eius rex Merciorum et
which fell Eoua son of-Pippa brother his king of-the-Mercians and
Oswald rex Nordorum et ipse victor fuit per diabolicam
Oswald king of-the-Northerners and he victor was through devilish
artem. non erat baptizatus et numquam deo credidit.
art not he-was baptized and never in-God believed
A mundi principio usque ad Constantinum et Rufum
from of-the-world the-beginning all-the-way to Constantine and Rufus
quinque milia sexcenti quinquaginta octo anni reperiuntur.
five thousand six-hundred fifty eight years are-found
Item a duobus Geminis Rufo et Rubelio usque in
likewise from the-two Gemini Rufus and Rubellius all-the-way to
Stillitionem consulem trecenti septuaginta tres anni sunt.
Stilicho the-consul three-hundred seventy three years are
Item a Stillitione usque ad Valentinianum filium Placidae
likewise from Stilicho all-the-way to Valentinian son of-Placidia
et regnum Guorthigirni viginti octo anni.
and the-reign of-Vortigern twenty eight years

Et a regno Guorthigirni usque ad discordiam Guitolini
and from the-reign of-Vortigern all-the-way to the-discord of-Vitalinus
et Ambrosii anni sunt duodecim, quod est Guoloppum,
and Ambrosius years are twelve which is Guoloppum
id est Catguoloph. Guorthigirnus autem tenuit imperium
that is Catguoloph Vortigern moreover held the-empire
in Brittannia Theodosio et Valentiniano consulibus et in
in Britain Theodosius and Valentinian being-consuls and in
quarto anno regni sui Saxones ad Brittanniam venerunt
the-fourth year of-reign his the-Saxons to Britain came
Felice et Tauro consulibus quadringentesimo anno ab
Felix and Taurus being-consuls in-the-four-hundredth year from
incarnatione domini nostri Iesu Christi.
the-incarnation of-Lord our Jesus Christ
Ab anno, quo Saxones venerunt in Brittanniam et a
from the-year in-which the-Saxons came into Britain and by
Guorthigirno suscepti sunt, usque ad Decium et Valerianum
Vortigern received were all-the-way to Decius and Valerian
anni sunt sexaginta novem.
years are sixty nine

Civitates Britanniae § 66a

66A · THE CITIES OF BRITAIN

The Historia lists the twenty-eight cities of Britain, each a Cair, from Cair Guorthigirn to Cair Luit Coyt.

Haec sunt nomina omnium ciuitatum, quae sunt in tota
these are the-names of-all the-cities which are in all
Brittannia, quarum numerus est XXVIII. 1. Cair Guorthigirn.
Britain whose number is twenty-eight 1 Fort-of Guorthigirn
2. Cair Guinntguic. 3. Cair Mincip. 4. Cair Ligualid. 5. Cair
2 Fort-of Guinntguic 3 Fort-of Mincip 4 Fort-of Ligualid 5 Fort-of
Meguaid. 6. Cair Colun. 7. Cair Ebrauc. 8. Cair Custoeint. 9.
Meguaid 6 Fort-of Colun 7 Fort-of Ebrauc 8 Fort-of Custoeint 9
Cair Caratauc. 10. Cair Grauth. 11. Cair Maunguid. 12. Cair
Fort-of Caratauc 10 Fort-of Grauth 11 Fort-of Maunguid 12 Fort-of
Lundem. 13. Cair Ceint. 14. Cair Guiragon. 15. Cair Peris.
Lundem 13 Fort-of Ceint 14 Fort-of Guiragon 15 Fort-of Peris
16. Cair Daun. 17. Cair Legion. 18. Cair Guricon. 19. Cair
16 Fort-of Daun 17 Fort-of Legion 18 Fort-of Guricon 19 Fort-of
Segeint. 20. Cair Legeion Guar Usic. 21. Cair Guent. 22. Cair
Segeint 20 Fort-of Legeion Guar Usic 21 Fort-of Guent 22 Fort-of
Brithon. 23. Cair Lerion. 24. Cair Draitou. 25. Cair Pensa vel
Brithon 23 Fort-of Lerion 24 Fort-of Draitou 25 Fort-of Pensa or
Coyt. 26. Cair Urnarc. 27. Cair Celemion. 28. Cair Luit Coyt.
Coyt 26 Fort-of Urnarc 27 Fort-of Celemion 28 Fort-of Luit Coyt

De mirabilibus Britanniae §§ 67–73

67–73 · THE WONDERS OF BRITAIN

The wonders: Loch Lomond with its sixty islands, the Severn bore, the hot baths of the Hwicce, the salt springs, the whirlpool of Linn Liuan, a spring with four kinds of fish, apples on an ash tree, a pit that blows wind, the floating altar of Illtud, the log that returns to its spring, Cabal's footprint, and the tomb of Arthur's son that never measures the same.

Primum miraculum est stagnum Lumonoy. in eo sunt
the-first marvel is the-lake Lumonoy in it are
insulae sexaginta et ibi habitant homines et sexaginta
islands sixty and there dwell men and by-sixty
rupibus ambitur et nidus aquilae in unaquaque rupe
rocks it-is-surrounded and a-nest of-an-eagle on each rock
est et flumina fluunt sexaginta in eo et non vadit ex
is and rivers flow sixty into it and not goes out-of
eo ad mare nisi unum flumen, quod vocatur Lemn.
it to the-sea except one river which is-called Leven
Secundum miraculum ostium Trahannoni fluminis, quia in
the-second marvel the-mouth of-the-Trahannon river because in
una unda instar montis ad sissam tegit litora et recedit
one wave like a-mountain at the-bore it-covers the-shores and recedes
ut cetera maria.
as the-other seas
Tertium miraculum stagnum calidum, quod est in regione
the-third marvel a-pool hot which is in the-region
Huich et muro ambitur ex latere et lapide facto
of-the-Hwicce and by-a-wall it-is-surrounded of brick and stone made
et in eo vadunt homines per omne tempus ad lavandum
and into it go men at every time for washing

et unicuique, sicut placuerit illi, lavacrum sic fiat
and for-each-one as shall-have-pleased him the-bath so may-be-made
sibi secundum voluntatem suam: si voluerit, lavacrum
for-him according-to will his if he-shall-have-wished a-bath
frigidum erit, si calidum, calidum erit.
cold it-shall-be if hot hot it-shall-be
Quartum miraculum est: fontes in eadem inveniuntur de
the-fourth marvel is springs in the-same are-found of
salo, a quibus fontibus sal coquitur: inde diversa cibaria
salt from which springs salt is-boiled thence various foods
saliuntur et non prope sunt mari, sed de terra emergunt.
are-salted and not near are to-the-sea but from the-earth they-emerge
Aliud miraculum est Duorig Habren, id est duo reges
another marvel is Duorig Habren that is the-two kings
Sabrinae. quando inundantur mare ad sissam in ostium
of-the-Severn when are-flooded the-sea at the-bore into the-mouth
Sabrinae, duo cumuli spumarum congregantur separatim et
of-the-Severn two heaps of-foam are-gathered separately and
bellum faciunt inter se in modum arietum et procedit
war make between themselves in the-manner of-rams and advances
unusquisque ad alterum et collidunt se ad invicem
each-one to the-other and dash themselves to each-other
et iterum secedit alter ab altero et iterum procedunt in
and again withdraws one from the-other and again they-advance at
unaquaque sissa. hoc faciunt ab initio mundi usque
each bore this they-do from the-beginning of-the-world all-the-way
in hodiernum diem.
to the-present day
Aliud miraculum est, id est Oper Linn Liuan. ostium fluminis
another marvel is that is Oper Linn Liuan the-mouth of-river
illius fluit in Sabrina et quando Sabrina inundatur ad sissam,
that flows into the-Severn and when the-Severn is-flooded at the-bore

et mare inundatur similiter in ostio supra dicti fluminis
and the-sea is-flooded likewise into the-mouth of-the-above said river
et in stagno ostii recipitur in modum voraginis et mare
and in the-pool of-the-mouth it-is-received in the-manner of-a-whirlpool and the-sea
non vadit sursum et est litus iuxta flumen et quamdiu
not goes upward and there-is a-shore beside the-river and as-long-as
Sabrina inundatur ad sissam, istud litus non tegitur et quando
the-Severn is-flooded at the-bore that shore not is-covered and when
recedit mare et Sabrina, tunc stagnum Liuan eructat omne
recedes the-sea and the-Severn then the-pool Liuan belches-out all
quod devoravit de mari et litus istud tegitur et instar
that it-has-swallowed from the-sea and shore that is-covered and like
montis in una unda eructat et rumpit. et si fuerit
a-mountain in one wave it-belches and bursts and if there-shall-have-been
exercitus totius regionis, in qua est, et direxerit faciem
the-army of-the-whole region in which it-is and shall-have-directed the-face
contra undam, et exercitum trahit unda per vim humore
against the-wave also the-army drags the-wave by force with-moisture
repletis vestibus et equi similiter trahuntur. si autem
filled the-garments and the-horses likewise are-dragged if but
exercitus terga versus fuerit contra eam, non nocet ei
the-army back turned shall-have-been against it not harms it
unda et quando recesserit mare, totum tunc litus, quod
the-wave and when shall-have-receded the-sea whole then the-shore which
unda tegit, retro denudatur et mare recedit ab ipso.
the-wave covers back is-laid-bare and the-sea recedes from it
Est aliud mirabile in regione Cinlipiuc. est ibi fons
there-is another wonder in the-region of-Cinlipiuc there-is there a-spring
nomine Finnaun Guur Helic; non fluit rivus ex eo neque
by-name Finnaun Guur Helic not flows a-stream out-of it nor
in eo. vadunt homines piscari ad fontem, alii vadunt in
into it go men to-fish at the-spring some go into

fontem ad partem orientis et deducunt pisces ex ea
the-spring to the-part of-the-east and draw-out fish from that
parte, alii ad dextram, alii ad sinistram, ad occidentemque,
part others to the-right others to the-left to and-the-west
et trahuntur pisces ab unaquaque parte. et aliud genus
and are-drawn fish from each part and another kind
piscium trahitur ex omnibus partibus. magnum mirabile
of-fish is-drawn from all parts a-great wonder
pisces inveniri in fonte, dum non flumen fluit in eo neque
fish to-be-found in a-spring while not a-river flows into it nor
ex eo, et in eo inveniuntur quattuor genera piscium et
out-of it and in it are-found four kinds of-fish and
non est de magnitudine neque de profunditate. profunditas
not it-is of greatness nor of depth the-depth
illius usque genua, viginti pedes sunt in longitudine
of-it all-the-way-to the-knees twenty feet they-are in length
et latitudine, ripas altas habet ex omni parte.
and breadth banks high it-has on every side
Iuxta flumen, quod vocatur Guoy, poma inveniuntur super
beside the-river which is-called Wye apples are-found upon
fraxinum in proclivo saltus, qui est prope ostio fluminis.
an-ash on the-slope of-the-wood which is near the-mouth of-the-river
Est aliud mirabile in regione quae vocatur Guent. est
there-is another wonder in the-region which is-called Gwent there-is
ibi fovea, a qua ventus inflat per omne tempus sine
there a-pit from which wind blows through all time without
intermissione, et quando non flat ventus in tempore aestatis,
intermission and when not blows the-wind in the-time of-summer
de illa fovea incessanter flat, ut nemo possit sustinere
from that pit unceasingly it-blows so-that no-one can to-withstand
neque ante foveae profunditatem. et vocatur nomen eius
nor before of-the-pit the-depth and is-called name its

Vith Guint Brittannico sermone, Latine autem flatio
Vith Guint in-British speech in-Latin moreover the-blowing
venti. magnum mirabile est ventus de terra flare.
of-the-wind a-great wonder it-is wind from the-earth to-blow
Est aliud mirabile in Guyr altare, quod est in loco, qui
there-is another wonder in Gower an-altar which is in the-place which
dicitur Loyngarth, quod nutu dei fulcitur. historia istius
is-called Loyngarth which by-the-nod of-God is-supported the-story of-that
altaris melius mihi videtur narrare quam reticere. factum
altar better to-me seems to-tell than to-keep-silent done
est autem dum sanctus Iltutus orabat in spelunca, quae
it-was moreover while holy Illtud prayed in a-cave which
est iuxta mare, quod alluit terram supra dicti loci, os
is beside the-sea which washes the-land of-the-above said place the-mouth
autem speluncae ad mare est, et ecce navis navigabat ad
moreover of-the-cave to the-sea is and behold a-ship was-sailing to
se de mari et duo viri navigantes eam et corpus sancti
him from the-sea and two men sailing it and the-body of-a-holy
hominis erat cum illis in navi et altare supra faciem eius,
man was with them in the-ship and an-altar above face his
quod nutu dei fulciebatur et processit homo dei obviam
which by-the-nod of-God was-supported and went-forward the-man of-God to-meet
illis et corpus sancti hominis et altare inseparabiliter
them and the-body of-the-holy man and the-altar inseparably
supra faciem sancti corporis stabat. et dixerunt ad sanctum
above the-face of-the-holy body stood and they-said to holy
Iltutum: ille homo dei commendavit nobis, ut deduceremus
Illtud that man of-God entrusted to-us that we-should-bring
illum ad te et sepeliremus eum tecum et nomen eius non
him to you and should-bury him with-you and name his not
reveles ullo homini, ut non iurent per se homines.
you-should-reveal to-any man so-that not swear by him men

et sepelierunt eum et post sepulturam illi duo viri reversi
and they-buried him and after the-burial those two men returned
sunt ad navim et navigaverunt. at ille sanctus Iltutus
have to the-ship and sailed but that holy Illtud
eclesiam fundavit circa corpus sancti hominis et circa altare
a-church founded around the-body of-the-holy man and around the-altar
et manet usque in hodiernum diem altare nutu dei
and remains all-the-way to the-present day the-altar by-the-nod of-God
fulctum. venit quidam regulus, ut probaret portans virgam
supported came a-certain petty-king that he-might-test carrying a-rod
in manu sua; curvavit eam circa altare et tenuit ambabus
in hand his he-bent it around the-altar and held with-both
manibus virgam ex utraque parte et traxit ad se et
hands the-rod from each side and drew to himself and
sic veritatem illius rei probavit et ille postea per mensem
so the-truth of-that thing he-tested and he afterward for a-month
integrum non vixit. alter vero sub altare aspexit et aciem
whole not lived another but under the-altar looked and the-sight
oculorum eius amisit et ante mensem integrum vitam finivit.
of-eyes his lost and before a-month whole life ended
Est aliud mirabile in supra dicta regione Guent. est ibi
there-is another wonder in the-above said region Gwent there-is there
fons iuxta vallum putei Mouric et lignum in medio
a-spring beside the-wall of-the-well of-Mouric and a-log in the-middle
fontis et lavant homines manus suas cum faciebus suis
of-the-spring and wash men hands their with faces their
et lignum sub pedibus suis habent, quando lavant. nam et
and the-log under feet their they-have when they-wash for also
ego probavi et vidi. quando mare inundatur, ad mallinam
I have-tested and seen when the-sea is-flooded at the-high-tide
extenditur Sabrina super omnem maritimam et tegit et
is-extended the-Severn over all the-seashore and covers and

usque ad fontem producitur et impletur fons de sissa
all-the-way to the-spring it-is-drawn-out and is-filled the-spring from the-bore
Sabrinae et trahit lignum secum usque ad mare magnum et
of-the-Severn and drags the-log with-it all-the-way to the-sea great and
per spatium trium dierum in mare invertitur et in quarto
for the-space of-three days in the-sea it-is-turned-about and on the-fourth
die in supra dicto fonte invenitur. factum est autem, ut
day in the-above said spring is-found done it-was moreover that
unus de rusticis sepeliret eum in terra ad probandum, et in
one of the-peasants should-bury it in the-earth for testing and on
quarto die inventus est in fonte et ille rusticus, qui eum
the-fourth day found it-was in the-spring and that peasant who it
abscondidit et sepelivit, defunctus est ante finem mensis.
hid and buried died has before the-end of-the-month
Est aliud mirabile in regione quae dicitur Buelt. est
there-is another wonder in the-region which is-called Builth there-is
ibi cumulus lapidum et unus lapis superpositus super
there a-heap of-stones and one stone placed-on-top upon
congestum cum vestigio canis in eo. quando venatus est
the-pile with the-footprint of-a-dog on it when hunted has
porcum Troynt, impressit Cabal, qui erat canis Arthuri
the-boar Troynt pressed Cabal who was the-dog of-Arthur
militis, vestigium in lapide et Arthur postea congregavit
the-soldier a-footprint in the-stone and Arthur afterward gathered
congestum lapidum sub lapide, in quo erat vestigium canis
a-pile of-stones under the-stone in which was the-footprint of-dog
sui, et vocatur Carn Cabal. et veniunt homines et tollunt
his and it-is-called Carn Cabal and come men and carry-off
lapidem in manibus suis per spatium diei et noctis et
the-stone in hands their for the-space of-a-day and of-a-night and
in crastino die invenitur super congestum suum.
on the-next day it-is-found upon pile its

Est aliud miraculum in regione quae vocatur Ercing.
there-is another marvel in the-region which is-called Ergyng
habetur ibi sepulcrum iuxta fontem, qui cognominatur
there-is there a-tomb beside a-spring which is-surnamed
Licat Anir, et viri nomen, qui sepultus est in tumulo,
Licat Anir and of-the-man the-name who buried is in the-mound
sic vocabatur Anir: filius Arthuri militis erat et ipse
so was-called Anir son of-Arthur the-soldier he-was and he
occidit eum ibidem et sepelivit. et veniunt homines ad
killed him there and buried and come men for
mensurandum tumulum in longitudine aliquando sex pedes,
measuring the-mound in length sometimes six feet
aliquando novem, aliquando duodecim, aliquando quindecim.
sometimes nine sometimes twelve sometimes fifteen
in qua mensura metieris eum in ista vice, iterum non
in what measure you-shall-measure it at that time again not
invenies eum in una mensura, et ego solus probavi.
you-shall-find it in one measure and I alone have-tested

§§ 74–76

74–76 · THE WONDERS OF WALES AND IRELAND

On Cruc Maur in Ceredigion a tomb fits every man who lies beside it. Ireland's wonders follow: a shore without a sea, a revolving mountain, a ford that rises and falls with the tide, a stone that returns from the sea, Lough Leane girdled by four metals and full of pearls, and a lake that turns wood to stone.

Est aliud mirabile in regione quae vocatur Cereticiaun.
there-is another wonder in the-region which is-called Ceredigion
est ibi mons, quae cognominatur Cruc Maur, et est
there-is there a-mountain which is-surnamed Cruc Maur and there-is

sepulcrum in cacumine illius et omnis homo quicumque
a-tomb on the-summit of-it and every man whoever
venerit ad sepulcrum et extenderit se iuxta illud,
shall-have-come to the-tomb and shall-have-stretched himself beside it
quamvis brevis fuerit, in una longitudine invenitur
although short he-shall-have-been in one length is-found
sepulcrum et homo, et si fuerit homo brevis
the-tomb and the-man and if he-shall-have-been a-man short
et parvus, similiter et longitudinem sepulcri iuxta
and small likewise also the-length of-the-tomb according-to
staturam hominis invenitur. et si fuerit longus
the-stature of-the-man is-found and if he-shall-have-been long
atque procerus, etiam si fuisset in longitudine quattuor
and tall even if he-had-been in length of-four
cubitorum, iuxta staturam uniuscuiusque hominis sic
cubits according-to the-stature of-each man so
tumulus reperitur. et omnis peregrinus taediosusque homo
the-mound is-found and every pilgrim and-weary man
tres flectiones flectaverit iuxta illud, non erit super
three genuflections shall-have-made beside it not shall-be upon
se usque ad diem mortis suae et non gravabitur
himself all-the-way to the-day of-death his and not he-shall-be-burdened
iterum ullo taedio quam abisset solus in extremis finibus
again by-any weariness though he-had-gone alone into the-farthest bounds
cosmi.
of-the-cosmos
Primum miraculum est litus sine mari.
the-first marvel is a-shore without sea
Secundum miraculum est ibi mons qui gyratur tribus
the-second marvel there-is there a-mountain which turns three
vicibus in anno.
times in a-year

Tertium miraculum vadum est ibi: quando inundatur
the-third marvel a-ford there-is there when is-flooded
mare et ipse inundatur, et quando decrescit mare et ipse
the-sea also it is-flooded and when decreases the-sea also it
minuitur.
is-diminished
Quartum miraculum est lapis qui ambulat in nocturnis
the-fourth marvel is a-stone which walks in nighttime
temporibus super vallem Citheinn, et proiectus est
times over the-valley of-Citheinn and cast was
olim in voragine Cereuus, qui est in medio
once into the-whirlpool Cereuus which is in the-middle
pelagi quod vocatur Mene, et in crastino
of-the-sea which is-called Mene and on-the-next day
super ripam supra dictae vallis inventus est sine
upon the-bank of-the-above said valley found it-was without
dubio.
doubt
Est ibi stagnum quod vocatur Luchlein, quattuor
there-is there a-lake which is-called Luchlein by-four
circulis ambitur. primo circulo gronna stanni
circles it-is-surrounded by-the-first circle by-a-band of-tin
ambitur, secundo circulo gronna plumbi ambitur,
it-is-surrounded by-the-second circle by-a-band of-lead it-is-surrounded
tertio circulo gronna ferri ambitur, quarto circulo
by-the-third circle by-a-band of-iron it-is-surrounded by-the-fourth circle
gronna aeris ambitur, et in eo stagno multae
by-a-band of-bronze it-is-surrounded and in that lake many
margaritae inveniuntur, quas ponunt reges in auribus
pearls are-found which place kings in ears
suis.
their

Est aliud stagnum qui facit ligna durescere
there-is another lake which makes wood harden
in lapides. homines autem fingunt ligna et
into stones men moreover shape wood and
postquam formaverint, proiciunt in stagno, et
after they-shall-have-formed they-cast into the-lake and
manet in eo usque ad caput anni et in
it-remains in it all-the-way to the-head of-the-year and at
capite anni lapis reperitur: et vocatur Luch
the-head of-the-year a-stone is-found and it-is-called Luch
Echach.
Echach

ASSER

De Rebus Gestis Ælfredi

The Life of King Alfred

§§ 1–12

1–12 · ALFRED'S BIRTH AND LINEAGE

Asser, last of God's servants, greets his lord Alfred, king of the Anglo-Saxons. Alfred is born at Wantage in 849. Asser traces his descent from Cerdic to Woden and Adam, quoting Sedulius on Geta, and his mother Osburh's from the Jutes of Wight. The annals of his childhood follow: Viking wars, the victory at Aclea, Pope Leo's anointing of Alfred at Rome, and his father's return with Judith, met by Æthelbald's plot and a divided kingdom.

Domino meo venerabili piissimoque omnium Brittanniae
to-lord my venerable and-most-pious of-all of-Britain
insulae Christianorum rectori, Ælfred, Anglorum Saxonum
of-the-island Christians ruler Alfred of-the-Angles Saxons
regi, Asser, omnium servorum Dei ultimus, millemodam
king Asser of-all the-servants of-God the-last thousandfold
ad vota desideriorum utriusque vitae prosperitatem.
for the-wishes of-desires of-each life prosperity
Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dcccxlix natus est
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-forty-nine born was
Ælfred, Angul-Saxonum rex, in villa regia, quae dicitur
Alfred of-the-Anglo-Saxons king in the-estate royal which is-called
Uuanating, in illa paga, quae nominatur Berrocscire: quae paga
Wantage in that district which is-named Berkshire which district
taliter vocatur a Berroc silva, ubi buxus abundantissime
so is-called from Berroc wood where the-box most-abundantly
nascitur. Cuius genealogia tali serie contexitur: Ælfred rex,
grows whose genealogy in-such order is-woven Alfred the-king
filius Æthelwulfi regis; qui fuit Ecgberhti; qui fuit Ealhmundi;
son of-Æthelwulf the-king who was of-Ecgberht who was of-Ealhmund
qui fuit Eafa; qui fuit Eoppa; qui fuit Ingild; Ingild et
who was of-Eafa who was of-Eoppa who was of-Ingild Ingild and

Ine, ille famosus Occidentalium rex Saxonum, germani duo
Ine that famous of-the-West king Saxons brothers two
fuerunt, qui Ine Romam perrexit, et ibi vitam praesentem
were which Ine to-Rome went and there life present
finiens honorifice, caelestem patriam, cum Christo regnaturus,
ending honorably the-heavenly fatherland with Christ about-to-reign
adiit; qui fuerunt filii Coenred; qui fuit Ceoluuald; qui fuit
went-to who were sons of-Coenred who was of-Ceolwald who was
Cudam; qui fuit Cuthwine; qui fuit Ceaulin; qui fuit Cynric;
of-Cudam who was of-Cuthwine who was of-Ceawlin who was of-Cynric
qui fuit Creoda; qui fuit Cerdic; qui fuit Elesa; ⟨qui fuit
who was of-Creoda who was of-Cerdic who was of-Elesa who was
Esla;⟩ qui fuit Geuuis, a quo Britones totam illam gentem
of-Esla who was of-Gewis from whom the-Britons all that nation
Geguuis nominant; ⟨qui fuit Wig; qui fuit Freawine; qui fuit
Gegwis name who was of-Wig who was of-Freawine who was
Freothegar;⟩ qui fuit Brond; qui fuit Beldeag; qui fuit Uuoden;
of-Freothegar who was of-Brond who was of-Beldeag who was of-Woden
qui fuit Frithowald; qui fuit Frealaf; qui fuit Frithuwulf; qui
who was of-Frithowald who was of-Frealaf who was of-Frithuwulf who
fuit Finn; ⟨qui fuit⟩ Godwulf; qui fuit Geata, quem Getam
was of-Finn who was of-Godwulf who was of-Geata whom as-Geta
iamdudum pagani pro deo venerabantur. Cuius Sedulius
long-ago the-pagans as a-god worshiped of-whom Sedulius
poeta mentionem facit in Paschali metrico carmine, ita dicens:
the-poet mention makes in the-Paschal metrical poem so saying

cum sua gentiles studeant figmenta poetae
while their gentile may-strive figments the-poets
grandisonis pompare modis, tragicoque boatu
with-grand-sounding to-parade measures and-with-tragic bellowing
ridiculove Getae seu qualibet arte canendi
or-with-laughable Geta or with-any art of-singing
saeva nefandarum renovent contagia rerum,
the-savage of-unspeakable may-renew contagions of-things
et scelerum monumenta canant, rituque magistro
and of-crimes the-monuments may-sing and-with-rite master
plurima Niliacis tradant mendacia biblis:
very-many in-Nilotic hand-down lies papyri
cur ego Daviticis assuetus cantibus odas
why I to-David's accustomed songs the-odes
chordarum resonare decem, sanctoque verenter
of-strings to-resound ten and-in-holy reverently
stare choro, et placidis caelestia psallere verbis,
to-stand choir and in-calm heavenly-things to-chant words
clara salutiferi taceam miracula Christi?
the-bright of-the-saving should-keep-silent miracles of-Christ

Qui Geata fuit Tætuua; qui fuit Beauu; qui fuit Sceldwea;
who Geata was of-Tætwa who was of-Beaw who was of-Sceldwea
qui fuit Heremod; qui fuit Itermod; qui fuit Hathra; qui
who was of-Heremod who was of-Itermod who was of-Hathra who
fuit Huala; qui fuit Beduuig; qui fuit Seth; qui fuit Noe;
was of-Hwala who was of-Bedwig who was of-Seth who was of-Noah
qui fuit Lamech; qui fuit Mathusalem; qui fuit Enoch;
who was of-Lamech who was of-Methuselah who was of-Enoch

⟨qui fuit Iared;⟩ qui fuit Malaleel; qui fuit Cainan; qui
who was of-Jared who was of-Mahalaleel who was of-Cainan who
fuit Enos; qui fuit Seth; qui fuit Adam.
was of-Enos who was of-Seth who was of-Adam
Mater quoque eiusdem Osburh nominabatur, religiosa nimium
the-mother also of-the-same Osburh was-named a-religious exceedingly
femina, nobilis ingenio, nobilis et genere; quae erat filia
woman noble in-character noble and in-race who was the-daughter
Oslac, famosi pincernae Æthelwulfi regis. Qui Oslac Gothus
of-Oslac the-famous butler of-Æthelwulf the-king which Oslac a-Goth
erat natione; ortus enim erat de Gothis et Iutis, de semine
was by-nation sprung for he-was from the-Goths and Jutes from the-seed
scilicet Stuf et Wihtgar, duorum fratrum et etiam comitum,
namely of-Stuf and of-Wihtgar two brothers and also ealdormen
qui, accepta potestate Uuectae insulae ab avunculo suo Cerdic
who received the-power of-Wight the-island from uncle their Cerdic
rege et Cynric filio suo, consobrino eorum, paucos Britones
the-king and Cynric son his cousin their the-few Britons
eiusdem insulae accolas, quos in ea invenire potuerunt, in loco,
of-the-same island inhabitants whom in it to-find they-could in the-place
qui dicitur Guuihtgaraburhg, occiderunt. Ceteri enim accolae
which is-called Wihtgarabyrig killed the-other for inhabitants
eiusdem insulae ante aut occisi erant aut exules aufugerant.
of-the-same island before either killed had-been or exiles had-fled
Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dcccli, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-fifty-one of-the-nativity
autem Ælfredi regis tertio, Ceorl, Domnaniae comes, cum
moreover of-Alfred the-king third Ceorl of-Devon ealdorman with
Domnaniis contra paganos pugnavit in loco, qui dicitur
the-men-of-Devon against the-pagans fought in the-place which is-called
Uuicganbeorg, et Christiani victoriam habuerunt. Et ipso
Wicganbeorg and the-Christians victory had and in-that

eodem anno primum hiemaverunt pagani in insula, quae
same year first wintered the-pagans in the-island which
vocatur Sceapieg, quod interpretatur 'insula ovium'; quae sita
is-called Sheppey which is-interpreted the-island of-sheep which placed
est in Tamesi flumine inter East-Seaxum et Cantuarios,
is in the-Thames river between Essex and the-Kentishmen
sed ad Cantiam propior est quam ad East-Seaxum; in qua
but to Kent nearer is than to Essex in which
monasterium optimum constructum est.
a-monastery excellent built is
Eodem quoque anno magnus paganorum exercitus cum
in-the-same also year a-great of-the-pagans army with
trecentis et quinquaginta navibus in ostium Tamesis fluminis
three-hundred and fifty ships into the-mouth of-the-Thames river
venit et Doruberniam, id est Cantwariorum civitatem, ⟨et
came and Canterbury that is of-the-Kentishmen the-city and
Lundoniam⟩ (quae est sita in aquilonari ripa Tamesis fluminis,
London which is placed on the-northern bank of-the-Thames river
in confinio East-Seaxum et Middel-Seaxum, sed tamen ad
on the-border of-Essex and Middlesex but yet to
East-Seaxum illa civitas cum veritate pertinet) depopulati sunt,
Essex that city in truth belongs laid-waste they-have
et Beorhtulfum, Merciorum regem, cum omni exercitu suo,
and Beorhtwulf of-the-Mercians king with all army his
qui ad proeliandum contra illos venerat, in fugam verterunt.
who for fighting against them had-come into flight they-turned
His ibi ita gestis, praedictus paganorum exercitus perrexit
these-things there so done the-aforesaid of-the-pagans army went
in Suthrie, quae paga sita est in meridiana Tamesis
into Surrey which district placed is on the-southern of-the-Thames
fluminis ripa ab occidentali parte Cantiae. Et Æthelwulfus,
river bank from the-western part of-Kent and Æthelwulf

Saxonum rex, et filius suus Æthelbaldus cum omni exercitu
of-the-Saxons king and son his Æthelbald with all the-army
in loco, qui dicitur Aclea, id est 'in campulo quercus,'
in the-place which is-called Aclea that is in the-little-field of-the-oak
diutissime pugnaverunt; ibique, cum diu acerrime et animose
very-long fought and-there when long most-fiercely and spiritedly
ex utraque parte pugnatum esset, maxima pars paganae
on each side fought it-had-been the-greatest part of-the-pagan
multitudinis funditus deleta et occisa est, ita qualiter
multitude utterly destroyed and slain was so as
nunquam in aliqua regione in una die, ante nec post,
never in any region in one day before nor after
ex eis occisam esse audivimus, et Christiani victoriam
of them slain to-have-been we-have-heard and the-Christians victory
honorifice tenuerunt et loco funeris dominati sunt.
honorably held and over-the-place of-slaughter ruled have
Eodem quoque anno Æthelstan, et Ealhere comes
in-the-same also year Æthelstan and Ealhhere the-ealdorman
magnum paganorum exercitum in Cantia, in loco, qui
a-great of-the-pagans army in Kent in the-place which
dicitur Sandwic, occiderunt, et ex navibus eorum novem
is-called Sandwich slew and of ships their nine
naves ceperunt; ceteri per fugam elapsi sunt.
ships captured the-others by flight escaped have
Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dcccliii, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-fifty-three of-the-nativity
autem Ælfredi regis quinto, Burgred, Merciorum rex, per
moreover of-Alfred the-king fifth Burgred of-the-Mercians king through
nuncios deprecatus est Æthelwulfum, Occidentalium Saxonum
messengers entreated has Æthelwulf of-the-West Saxons
regem, ut ei auxilium conferret, quo mediterraneos
king that to-him help he-might-bring by-which the-inland

Britones, qui inter Merciam et mare occidentale habitant,
Britons who between Mercia and the-sea western dwell
dominio suo subdere potuisset, qui contra eum immodice
to-dominion his to-subject be-might-be-able who against him immoderately
reluctabantur. Nec segnius Æthelwulfus rex, legatione
struggled nor more-slowly Æthelwulf the-king the-embassy
eius accepta, exercitum movens, Britanniam cum Burghredo
his received an-army moving Britain with Burgred
rege adiit, statimque ut ingreditur, gentem illam devastans,
the-king went-to and-at-once as he-enters nation that laying-waste
dominio Burgredi subdit. Quo facto, domum revertitur.
to-the-dominion of-Burgred he-subjects which done home he-returns
Eodem anno Æthelwulfus rex praefatum filium suum
in-the-same year Æthelwulf the-king aforesaid son his
Ælfredum, magno nobilium et etiam ignobilium numero
Alfred by-a-great of-nobles and also of-commoners number
constipatum, honorifice Romam transmisit. Quo tempore
thronged honorably to-Rome sent-across at-which time
dominus Leo Papa apostolicae sedi praeerat, qui praefatum
lord Leo the-Pope over-the-apostolic see presided who the-aforesaid
infantem Ælfredum oppido ordinans unxit in regem, et
child Alfred greatly ordaining anointed as king and
in filium adoptionis sibimet accipiens confirmavit.
as son of-adoption for-himself receiving confirmed
Eodem quoque anno Ealhere comes, cum Cantuariis,
in-the-same also year Ealhhere the-ealdorman with the-Kentishmen
et Huda, cum Suthriis, contra paganorum exercitum
and Huda with the-men-of-Surrey against of-the-pagans the-army
in insula, quae dicitur in Saxonica lingua Tenet, Britannico
in the-island which is-called in the-Saxon tongue Thanet in-the-British
autem sermone Ruim, animose et acriter belligeraverunt,
moreover speech Ruim spiritedly and fiercely warred

et primitus Christiani victoriam habuerunt, prolongatoque
and at-first the-Christians victory had and-prolonged
diu proelio ibidem ex utraque parte plurimi ceciderunt
long the-battle there on each side very-many fell
et in aqua mersi suffocati sunt, et comites illi ambo
and in the-water drowned suffocated were and ealdormen those both
ibidem occubuerunt. Necnon et eodem anno Æthelwulfus,
there fell and also in-the-same year Æthelwulf
Occidentalium Saxonum rex, post Pascha filiam suam
of-the-West Saxons king after Easter daughter his
Burgredo Merciorum regi in villa regia, quae dicitur
to-Burgred of-the-Mercians king in the-estate royal which is-called
Cippanhamme, nuptiis regaliter factis, ad reginam dedit.
Chippenham the-nuptials royally made as queen gave
Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclv, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-fifty-five of-the-nativity
autem praefati regis septimo, magnus paganorum exercitus
moreover of-the-aforesaid king seventh a-great of-the-pagans army
tota hieme in praefata Scepige insula hiemaverunt.
the-whole winter in the-aforesaid Sheppey island wintered
Eodem anno Æthelwulfus praefatus venerabilis rex decimam
in-the-same year Æthelwulf the-aforesaid venerable king the-tenth
totius regni sui partem ab omni regali servitio et
of-the-whole kingdom his part from all royal service and
tributo liberavit, in sempiternoque graphio in cruce Christi,
tribute freed in and-everlasting charter on the-cross of-Christ
pro redemptione animae suae et antecessorum suorum,
for the-redemption of-soul his and of-ancestors his
uni et trino Deo immolavit. Eodemque anno cum
to-the-one and three-fold God sacrificed and-in-the-same year with
magno honore Romam perrexit, praefatumque filium suum
great honor to-Rome went and-the-aforesaid son his

Ælfredum iterum in eandem viam secum ducens, eo quod
Alfred again on the-same road with-him leading for-that that
illum plus ceteris filiis diligebat, ibique anno integro
him more than-the-other sons he-loved and-there for-a-year whole
remoratus est. Quo peracto, ad patriam suam remeavit,
stayed he-has which completed to fatherland his he-returned
adferens secum Iuthittam, Karoli, Francorum regis, filiam.
bringing with-him Judith of-Charles of-the-Franks king the-daughter
Interea tamen, Æthelwulfo rege ultra mare tantillo
meanwhile yet Æthelwulf the-king beyond the-sea for-so-little
tempore immorante, quaedam infamia contra morem omnium
time lingering a-certain infamy against the-custom of-all
Christianorum in occidentali parte Selwuda orta est. Nam
Christians in the-western part of-Selwood arisen has for
Æthelbaldus rex, et Ealhstan, Scireburnensis ecclesiae
Æthelbald the-king and Ealhstan of-the-Sherborne church
episcopus, Eanwulf quoque Summurtunensis pagae comes
bishop Eanwulf also of-the-Somerton district ealdorman
coniurasse referuntur, ne unquam Æthelwulf rex, a Roma
to-have-conspired are-reported lest ever Æthelwulf the-king from Rome
revertens, iterum in regno reciperetur. Quod inauditum
returning again into the-kingdom should-be-received which unheard-of
omnibus seculis ante infortunium, episcopo et comiti
in-all ages before misfortune to-the-bishop and to-the-ealdorman
solummodo perplurimi reputant, ex quorum consilio hoc
only very-many reckon from whose counsel this
factum esse perhibetur. Multi quoque regali solummodo
done to-have-been is-said many also to-the-royal only
insolentiae deputant, quia et ille rex in hac re et in
insolence ascribe because also that king in this matter and in
multis aliis perversitatibus pertinax fuit, sicut quorundam
many other perversities obstinate was as of-certain

hominum relatu audivimus: quod et rei sequentis
men by-the-report we-have-heard which also of-the-thing following
approbavit effectus. Nam redeunte eo a Roma, praedictus
proved the-outcome for returning him from Rome the-aforesaid
filius regis Æthelwulfi cum omnibus suis consiliariis, immo
son of-the-king Æthelwulf with all his counselors or-rather
insidiariis, tantum facinus perpetrare tentati sunt, ut regem
plotters so-great a-crime to-perpetrate tried have that the-king
a regno proprio repellerent: quod nec Deus ita fieri
from kingdom his-own they-should-drive-out which neither God so to-be-done
permisit, nec nobiles totius Saxoniae consenserunt. Nam, ne
permitted nor the-nobles of-the-whole of-Saxony consented for lest
irremedicabile Saxoniae periculum, belligerante patre et filio,
the-irremediable of-Saxony danger warring father and son
quin immo tota cum gente ambobus rebellante, atrocius
but rather the-whole with nation against-both rebelling more-atrociously
et crudelius per dies singulos quasi clades intestina
and more-cruelly through days single as-if a-disaster internal
augeretur, ineffabili patris clementia et omnium
should-be-increased by-the-ineffable of-the-father mildness and of-all
astipulatione nobilium, adunatum antea regnum inter patrem
with-the-assent of-the-nobles united before the-kingdom between the-father
et filium dividitur, et orientales plagae patri, occidentales
and the-son is-divided and the-eastern regions to-the-father the-western
filio e contrario deputantur. Ubi enim pater iusto iudicio
to-the-son on-the contrary are-assigned where for the-father by-just judgment
regnare debuerat, illic iniquus et pertinax filius regnabat; nam
to-reign ought there the-wicked and obstinate son reigned for
occidentalis pars Saxoniae semper orientali principalior est.
the-western part of-Saxony always than-the-eastern more-principal is

§§ 13–20

13–20 · QUEEN EADBURH AND ÆTHELWULF'S WILL

Æthelwulf, home from Rome, will not let his people expel his rebel son Æthelbald, and seats Judith beside him as queen. Asser explains why the West Saxons will not call a king's wife queen: Offa's daughter Eadburh poisoned her husband's favorites and the king, fled to Charlemagne, and died begging in Pavia. Æthelwulf leaves a careful will; after his death Æthelbald marries Judith, and Æthelberht reigns.

Adveniente igitur Æthelwulfo rege a Roma, tota illa
arriving therefore Æthelwulf the-king from Rome all that
gens, ut dignum erat, in adventu senioris ita gavisa est, ut,
nation as fitting it-was at the-coming of-the-elder so rejoiced has that
si ille permitteret, pertinacem filium suum Æthelbaldum cum
if he would-permit the-obstinate son his Æthelbald with
omnibus suis consiliariis a totius regni sorte expellere
all his counselors from of-the-whole kingdom the-lot to-expel
vellent. Sed ille, ut diximus, nimia clementia et prudenti
they-would-wish but he as we-have-said excessive mildness and prudent
consilio usus, ne ad regni periculum perveniret, ita
counsel having-used lest to of-the-kingdom danger it-should-come so
fieri noluit; et Iuthitham, Karoli regis filiam, quam
to-be-done was-unwilling and Judith of-Charles the-king the-daughter whom
a patre suo acceperat, iuxta se in regali solio sine aliqua
from father her he-had-received beside himself on the-royal throne without any
suorum nobilium controversia et odio, usque ad obitum
of-his of-the-nobles dispute and hatred all-the-way to the-end
vitae suae, contra perversam illius gentis consuetudinem, sedere
of-life his against the-perverse of-that nation custom to-sit
imperavit. Gens namque Occidentalium Saxonum reginam
commanded the-nation for of-the-West Saxons a-queen

iuxta regem sedere non patitur, nec etiam reginam appellari,
beside the-king to-sit not suffers nor even a-queen to-be-called
sed regis coniugem, permittit. Quam controversiam, immo
but of-the-king the-consort permits which dispute or-rather
infamiam, de quadam pertinaci et malevola eiusdem gentis
infamy from a-certain obstinate and malevolent of-the-same nation
regina ortam fuisse, maiores illius terrae perhibent; quae
queen sprung to-have-been the-elders of-that land relate who
omnia contraria seniori suo et omni populo ita peregit, ut
all-things contrary to-lord her and to-all the-people so carried-out that
non solum suum proprium odium mereretur, ut a reginali
not only her own hatred she-earned that from the-queenly
solio proiceretur, sed etiam omnibus suis subsequutricibus
throne she-be-cast but also to-all her successors
eandem pestiferam tabem post se submitteret. Pro nimia
the-same pestilent plague after her she-put-under for the-excessive
namque illius reginae malitia omnes accolae illius terrae
for of-that queen malice all the-inhabitants of-that land
coniuraverunt, ut nullum unquam regem super se in
swore that no ever king over themselves in
vita sua regnare permitterent, qui reginam in regali solio
life their to-reign they-would-allow who a-queen on the-royal throne
iuxta se sedere imperare vellet. Et quia, ut opinor,
beside him to-sit to-command should-wish and because as I-think
multis habetur incognitum unde haec perversa et detestabilis
by-many it-is-held unknown whence this perverse and detestable
consuetudo in Saxonia, ultra morem omnium Theotiscorum,
custom in Saxony beyond the-custom of-all Germans
primitus orta sit, paulo latius mihi videtur intimandum.
first arisen has a-little more-widely to-me it-seems to-be-made-known
Quod a domino meo Ælfredo, Angulsaxonum rege veredico,
which from lord my Alfred of-the-Anglo-Saxons king truthful

etiam saepe mihi referente, audivi; quod et ille etiam a
also often to-me relating I-heard which also he also from
veredicis multis referentibus, immo ex parte non modica
truthful many relating or-rather in part not small
illud factum commemorantibus, audierat.
that deed recalling had-heard
Fuit in Mercia moderno tempore quidam strenuus atque
there-was in Mercia in-recent time a-certain vigorous and
universis circa se regibus et regionibus finitimis formidolosus
to-all around him kings and regions neighboring fearsome
rex, nomine Offa, qui vallum magnum inter Britanniam
king by-name Offa who a-dike great between Britain
atque Merciam de mari usque ad mare fieri imperavit.
and Mercia from sea all-the-way to sea to-be-made commanded
Cuius filiam, nomine Eadburh, Beorhtric Occidentalium
whose daughter by-name Eadburh Beorhtric of-the-West
Saxonum rex, sibi in coniugium accepit. Quae confestim
Saxons king to-himself in marriage received who at-once
accepta regis amicitia et totius pene regni potestate,
received of-the-king the-friendship and of-the-whole almost kingdom the-power
more paterno tyrannice vivere incepit, et omnem
in-the-manner paternal tyrannically to-live began and every
hominem execrari, quem Beorhtric diligeret, et omnia odibilia
man to-curse whom Beorhtric loved and all-things hateful
Deo et hominibus facere, et omnes, quos posset, ad regem
to-God and to-men to-do and all whom she-could to the-king
accusare, et ita aut vita aut potestate per insidias privare.
to-accuse and so either of-life or of-power through plots to-deprive
Et si a rege illud impetrare non posset, veneno eos
and if from the-king that to-obtain not she-could with-poison them
necabat; sicut de adolescente quodam regi dilectissimo
she-killed as about a-youth a-certain to-the-king most-dear

hoc factum compertum habetur, quem cum ad regem
this done discovered is-held whom when to the-king
accusare non posset, veneno eum necavit. De quo veneno
to-accuse not she-could with-poison him she-killed of which poison
etiam praefatus ille Beorhtric rex inscienter gustasse aliquid
also the-aforesaid that Beorhtric king unknowingly to-have-tasted something
refertur: neque enim illa venenum dare regi proposuerat,
is-reported nor for she poison to-give to-the-king had-proposed
sed puero; sed rex praeoccupavit, inde ambo periere.
but to-the-boy but the-king anticipated whence both perished
Defuncto igitur Beorhtrico rege, cum illa inter Saxones diutius
having-died therefore Beorhtric the-king since she among the-Saxons longer
fieri non posset, ultra mare navigans, cum innumerabilibus
to-be not could beyond the-sea sailing with innumerable
thesauris, Karolum illum famosissimum Francorum regem
treasures Charles that most-famous of-the-Franks king
adiit. Ad quam, cum ante solarium multa regi afferens
went-to to whom when before the-upper-room many to-the-king bringing
dona staret, Karolus ait: 'Elige, Eadburh, quem velis inter
gifts she-stood Charles said choose Eadburh whom you-wish between
me et filium meum, qui mecum in solario isto stat.' At
me and son my who with-me in upper-room this stands but
illa, sine deliberatione stulte respondens, ait: 'Si mihi electio
she without deliberation foolishly answering said if to-me the-choice
conceditur, filium tuum, in quantum te iunior est, eligo.'
is-granted son your in as-much than-you younger he-is I-choose
Cui Karolus respondens et arridens, ait: 'Si me eligeres,
to-whom Charles answering and smiling said if me you-chose
haberes filium meum; sed quia filium meum elegisti,
you-would-have son my but because son my you-have-chosen
nec me nec illum habebis.' Dedit tamen illi unum magnum
neither me nor him shall-you-have he-gave yet to-her one great

sanctimonialium monasterium; in quo, deposito seculari habitu
of-nuns monastery in which laid-aside the-secular habit
et sanctimonialium indumento assumpto, perpaucis annis
and of-the-nuns the-garment assumed for-very-few years
abbatissae fungebatur officio. Sicut enim irrationabiliter in
of-abbess performed the-office as for irrationally in
propria vixisse refertur, ita multo irrationabilius in aliena
her-own to-have-lived she-is-reported so much more-irrationally in a-foreign
gente vivere deprehenditur. Nam a quodam suae propriae gentis
nation to-live she-is-detected for by a-certain of-her own nation
homine constuprata, demum palam deprehensa, de monasterio,
man debauched at-last openly detected from the-monastery
imperio Karoli regis, deiecta, in paupertate et miseria
by-the-command of-Charles the-king cast-out in poverty and misery
leto tenus vituperabiliter vitam duxit; ita ut ad ultimum,
to-death as-far-as shamefully life she-led so that at-the last
uno servulo comitata, sicut a multis videntibus eam
with-one little-slave accompanied as from many seeing her
audivimus, cotidie mendicans, in Pavia miserabiliter moreretur.
we-have-heard daily begging in Pavia miserably she-died
Vixit ergo Æthelwulfus rex duobus annis postquam a
lived therefore Æthelwulf the-king two years after from
Roma pervenit; in quibus, inter alia multa praesentis vitae
Rome he-arrived in which among other many of-the-present life
bona studia, cogitans de suo ad universitatis viam transitu,
good pursuits thinking about his to of-the-universe the-way passing
ne sui filii post patris obitum indebite inter se
lest his sons after of-the-father the-death unduly among themselves
disceptarent, hereditariam, immo commendatoriam, scribi
should-dispute a-hereditary or-rather testamentary to-be-written
imperavit epistolam: in qua et regni inter filios suos,
he-commanded letter in which both of-the-kingdom among sons his

duos scilicet seniores, et propriae hereditatis inter filios
two namely the-elder and of-his-own inheritance among the-sons
et filiam et etiam propinquos, pecuniarum, quae post
and the-daughter and also the-kinsmen of-the-moneys which after
se superessent, inter animam et filios et etiam nobiles
him should-remain between the-soul and the-sons and also nobles
suos, divisionem ordinabiliter literis mandari procuravit.
his the-division in-orderly-fashion to-letters to-be-committed he-took-care
De qua prudenti consideratione pauca de pluribus posteris
about which prudent consideration a-few from many to-posterity
imitanda scribere decrevimus, scilicet, quae ad necessitatem
to-be-imitated to-write we-have-decided namely which to the-need
animae maxime pertinere intelliguntur. Nam cetera, quae ad
of-the-soul most-of-all to-pertain are-understood for the-rest which to
humanam dispensationem pertinent, in hoc opusculo inserere
human dispensation pertain into this little-work to-insert
necesse non est, ne fastidium prolixitate legentibus vel etiam
necessary not is lest disgust by-prolixity to-those-reading or also
audire desiderantibus procreaverit. Pro utilitate namque animae
to-hear desiring it-should-produce for the-benefit for of-soul
suae, quam a primaevo iuventutis suae flore in omnibus
his which from the-early of-youth his flower in all-things
procurare studuit, per omnem hereditariam terram suam
to-provide-for he-was-eager through all hereditary land his
semper in decem manentibus unum pauperem, aut indigenam
always in ten hides one poor-man either a-native
aut peregrinum, cibo, potu et vestimento successoribus suis,
or a-foreigner with-food drink and clothing to-successors his
usque ad ultimam diem iudicii, post se pascere praecepit;
all-the-way to the-last day of-judgment after him to-feed he-commanded
ita tamen, si illa terra hominibus et pecoribus habitaretur
so yet if that land with-men and cattle should-be-inhabited

et deserta non esset. Romae quoque omni anno magnam pro
and deserted not should-be to-Rome also every year great for
anima sua pecuniam, id est trecentas mancussas, portari
soul his money that is three-hundred mancuses to-be-carried
praecepit, quae taliter ibi dividerentur: scilicet centum
he-commanded which so there should-be-divided namely a-hundred
mancussas in honorem Sancti Petri, specialiter ad emendum
mancuses in honor of-Saint Peter specially for buying
oleum, quo impleantur omnia luminaria illius apostolicae
oil with-which may-be-filled all the-lamps of-that apostolic
ecclesiae in vespera Paschae, et aequaliter in galli cantu,
church on the-eve of-Easter and equally at of-the-cock the-crow
et centum mancussas in honorem Sancti Pauli, eadem
and a-hundred mancuses in honor of-Saint Paul on-the-same
condicione, ad comparandum oleum in ecclesia Sancti Pauli
condition for buying oil in the-church of-Saint Paul
Apostoli ad implenda luminaria in vespera Paschae et in galli
the-Apostle for filling the-lamps on the-eve of-Easter and at of-the-cock
cantu, centum quoque mancussas universali papae apostolico.
the-crow a-hundred also mancuses to-the-universal pope apostolic
Defuncto autem Æthelwulfo rege ⟨sepultoque apud
having-died moreover Æthelwulf the-king and-buried at
Wintoniam⟩, Æthelbald, filius eius, contra Dei interdictum
Winchester Æthelbald son his against of-God the-prohibition
et Christianorum dignitatem, necnon et contra omnium
and of-Christians the-dignity and also against of-all
paganorum consuetudinem, thorum patris sui ascendens,
the-pagans the-custom the-bed of-father his ascending
Iuthittam, Karoli, Francorum regis, filiam, cum magna
Judith of-Charles of-the-Franks king the-daughter with great
ab omnibus audientibus infamia, in matrimonium duxit,
from all hearing infamy in marriage took

effrenisque duobus et dimidio annis Occidentalium Saxonum
and-unbridled two and a-half years of-the-West Saxons
post patrem regni gubernacula rexit.
after the-father of-the-kingdom the-helm he-steered
Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclx, nativitatis autem
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-sixty of-the-nativity moreover
Ælfredi regis duodecimo, Æthelbald, ⟨rex, defunctus est⟩, et
of-Alfred the-king twelfth Æthelbald the-king died has and
in Scireburnan sepultus, et Æthelberht, frater suus, Cantiam
in Sherborne buried and Æthelberht brother his Kent
et Suthrigam, Suth-Seaxam quoque suo dominio, ut iustum
and Surrey Sussex also to-his dominion as just
erat, subiunxit. In cuius diebus magnus paganorum exercitus,
it-was joined in whose days a-great of-the-pagans army
de mari adveniens, Wintoniam civitatem hostiliter invadens
from the-sea arriving Winchester the-city hostilely invading
depopulatus est. Cui, cum ad naves cum ingenti praeda
laid-waste has whom when to the-ships with huge plunder
reverterentur, Osric, Hamtunensium comes, cum suis, et
they-returned Osric of-the-men-of-Hampshire ealdorman with his-men and
Æthelwulf comes, cum Bearrocensibus, viriliter obviaverunt,
Æthelwulf ealdorman with the-men-of-Berkshire manfully met
consertoque proelio oppido pagani passim trucidantur,
and-joined the-battle greatly the-pagans everywhere are-slaughtered
et, cum diutius resistere non possent, muliebriter fugam
and when longer to-resist not they-could womanishly flight
arripiunt, et Christiani loco funeris dominati sunt.
they-seize and the-Christians over-the-place of-slaughter ruled have
Æthelberht itaque, quinque annis regno pacifice et
Æthelberht and-so five years the-kingdom peacefully and
amabiliter atque honorabiliter gubernato, cum magno suorum
lovably and honorably governed with great of-his-people

dolore, universitatis viam adiit, et in Scireburnan iuxta
grief of-the-universe the-way went-on and in Sherborne beside
fratrem suum honorabiliter sepultus requiescit.
brother his honorably buried rests
Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclxiv pagani
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-sixty-four the-pagans
hiemaverunt in insula Tanet, et firmum foedus cum
wintered in the-island Thanet and a-firm treaty with
Cantuariis pepigerunt. Quibus Cantuarii pecuniam pro
the-Kentishmen made to-whom the-Kentishmen money for
foedere servato reddere promiserunt. Interea tamen, vulpino
the-treaty kept to-pay promised meanwhile yet in-fox-like
more pagani, noctu clam castris erumpentes, foedere
manner the-pagans by-night secretly from-the-camp bursting the-treaty
disrupto et promissionem pecuniae spernentes (sciebant
broken and the-promise of-money spurning they-knew
enim maiorem pecuniam se furtiva praeda quam pace
for greater money themselves by-stealthy plunder than by-peace
adepturos), totam orientalem Cantiae plagam depopulati sunt.
about-to-gain all the-eastern of-Kent region laid-waste have

§§ 21–29

Æthelred becomes king in 866, and the great army winters in East Anglia. Asser turns to Alfred's boyhood: unlettered until twelve, he learned Saxon poems by heart and won his mother's book by reciting it, and he lamented that there were no teachers. The Vikings take York, killing two Northumbrian kings, and Alfred marries a Mercian noblewoman.

Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclxvi, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-sixty-six of-the-nativity
autem Ælfredi regis decimo octavo, Æthelred, Æthelberhti
moreover of-Alfred the-king tenth eighth Æthelred of-Æthelberht
regis frater, Occidentalium Saxonum regni gubernacula
the-king the-brother of-the-West Saxons of-the-kingdom the-helm
suscepit. Et eodem anno magna paganorum classis de
took-up and in-the-same year a-great of-the-pagans fleet from
Danubia Britanniam advenit, et in regno Orientalium
the-Danube to-Britain came and in the-kingdom of-the-East
Saxonum, quod Saxonice 'East-Engle' dicitur, hiemavit, ibique
Saxons which in-Saxon East-Engle is-called wintered and-there
ille exercitus maxima ex parte equester factus est. Sed, ut
that army for-the-greatest in part horsed made was but that
more navigantium loquar, ne diutius navim undis
in-the-manner of-sailors I-may-speak lest longer the-ship to-the-waves
et velamentis concedentes, et a terra longius enavigantes
and sails yielding and from the-land farther sailing-out
longum circumferamur inter tantas bellorum clades et
long we-be-carried-around among so-great of-wars disasters and
annorum enumerationes, ad id, quod nos maxime ad hoc opus
of-years enumerations to that which us most-of-all to this work

incitavit, nobis redeundum esse censeo, scilicet aliquantulum,
has-stirred for-us to-be-returned to-be I-judge namely a-little
quantum meae cognitioni innotuit, de infantilibus et
as-much-as to-my knowledge has-become-known about the-infantile and
puerilibus domini mei venerabilis Ælfredi, Angulsaxonum
boyish of-lord my the-venerable Alfred of-the-Anglo-Saxons
regis, moribus hoc in loco breviter inserendum esse existimo.
king manners this in place briefly to-be-inserted to-be I-think
Nam, cum communi et ingenti patris sui et matris
for since with-the-common and huge of-father his and of-mother
amore supra omnes fratres suos, immo ab omnibus, nimium
love above all brothers his or-rather by all exceedingly
diligeretur, et in regio semper curto inseparabiliter nutriretur,
he-was-loved and in the-royal always court inseparably he-was-reared
accrescente infantili et puerili aetate, forma ceteris suis
growing the-infant and boyish age in-form than-the-other his
fratribus decentior videbatur, vultuque et verbis atque
brothers more-comely he-seemed and-in-countenance and in-words and
moribus gratiosior. Cui ab incunabulis ante omnia et cum
in-manners more-gracious to-whom from the-cradle before all-things and with
omnibus praesentis vitae studiis, sapientiae desiderium cum
all of-the-present life pursuits of-wisdom the-desire with
nobilitate generis, nobilis mentis ingenium supplevit; sed, proh
the-nobility of-race of-a-noble mind character supplied but alas
dolor! indigna suorum parentum et nutritorum incuria
grief by-the-unworthy of-his parents and guardians negligence
usque ad duodecimum aetatis annum, aut eo amplius,
all-the-way to the-twelfth of-age year or than-that more
illiteratus permansit. Sed Saxonica poemata die noctuque
unlettered he-remained but the-Saxon poems by-day and-by-night
solers auditor, relatu aliorum saepissime audiens, docibilis
skillful listener by-the-relating of-others most-often hearing apt-to-learn

memoriter retinebat. In omni venatoria arte industrius venator
by-memory retained in every hunting art an-industrious hunter
incessabiliter laborat non in vanum; nam incomparabilis
unceasingly labors not in vain for incomparable
omnibus peritia et felicitate in illa arte, sicut et in ceteris
to-all in-skill and in-good-fortune in that art as also in other
omnibus Dei donis, fuit, sicut et nos saepissime vidimus.
all of-God gifts he-was as also we most-often have-seen
Cum ergo quodam die mater sua sibi et fratribus suis
when therefore on-a-certain day mother his to-him and brothers his
quendam Saxonicum poematicae artis librum, quem in manu
a-certain Saxon of-poetic art book which in hand
habebat, ostenderet, ait: 'Quisquis vestrum discere citius
she-had showed she-said whoever of-you to-learn more-quickly
istum codicem possit, dabo illi illum.' Qua voce, immo
this book can I-shall-give him it by-which voice or-rather
divina inspiratione, instinctus ⟨Ælfredus⟩, et pulchritudine
by-divine inspiration prompted Alfred and by-the-beauty
principalis litterae illius libri illectus, ita matri respondens,
of-the-principal letter of-that book enticed so to-the-mother answering
et fratres suos aetate, quamvis non gratia, seniores anticipans,
and the-brothers his in-age though not in-grace elder anticipating
inquit: 'Verene dabis istum librum uni ex nobis, scilicet
he-said truly shall-you-give this book to-one of us namely
illi, qui citissime intelligere et recitare eum ante te possit?'
to-him who most-quickly to-understand and to-recite it before you can
Ad haec illa, arridens et gaudens atque affirmans: 'Dabo,' infit,
to these she smiling and rejoicing and affirming I-shall-give she-says
'illi.' Tunc ille statim tollens librum de manu sua, magistrum
to-him then he at-once taking the-book from hand her the-master
adiit et legit. Quo lecto, matri retulit et recitavit.
went-to and read which read to-the-mother he-brought-back and recited

Post haec cursum diurnum, id est celebrationes horarum,
after these-things the-course daily that is the-celebrations of-the-hours
ac deinde psalmos quosdam et orationes multas ⟨didicit⟩;
and then psalms certain and prayers many he-learned
quos in uno libro congregatos in sinu suo die noctuque,
which in one book gathered in bosom his by-day and-by-night
sicut ipsi vidimus, secum inseparabiliter, orationis gratia,
as we have-seen with-him inseparably of-prayer for-the-sake
inter omnia praesentis vitae curricula ubique circumducebat.
among all of-the-present life the-courses everywhere he-carried-around
Sed, proh dolor! quod maxime desiderabat, liberalem scilicet
but alas grief what most-of-all he-desired the-liberal namely
artem, desiderio suo non suppetebat, eo quod, ut
art to-desire his not was-available for-that that as
loquebatur, illo tempore lectores boni in toto regno
he-said at-that time readers good in the-whole kingdom
Occidentalium Saxonum non erant.
of-the-West Saxons not there-were
Quod maximum inter omnia praesentis vitae suae impedimenta
which the-greatest among all of-the-present life his hindrances
et dispendia crebris querelis et intimis cordis sui
and losses with-frequent complaints and inmost of-heart his
suspiriis fieri affirmabat: id est, eo quod illo tempore,
sighs to-be he-affirmed that is for-that that at-that time
quando aetatem et licentiam atque suppetentiam discendi
when the-age and leisure and opportunity of-learning
habebat, magistros non habuerat; quando vero et aetate erat
he-had teachers not he-had-had when but also in-age he-was
provectior et incessabilius die noctuque, immo omnibus
more-advanced and more-unceasingly by-day and-by-night or-rather to-all
istius insulae medicis incognitis infirmitatibus, internisque
of-this island physicians unknown infirmities and-internal

atque externis regiae potestatis sollicitudinibus, necnon
and external of-royal power anxieties and-also
et paganorum terra marique infestationibus occupatus,
also of-the-pagans by-land and-by-sea attacks occupied
immo etiam perturbatus, magistros et scriptores aliquantula
or-rather even disturbed teachers and writers a-little
ex parte habebat, legere ut non poterat. Sed tamen
in part he-had to-read so-that not he-could but yet
inter praesentis vitae impedimenta ab infantia usque ad
among of-the-present life the-hindrances from infancy all-the-way to
praesentem diem in eodem insaturabili desiderio, sicut nec
the-present day in the-same insatiable desire as neither
ante destituit, ita nec etiam adhuc inhiare desinit.
before he-desisted so not even still to-yearn ceases
Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclxvii, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-sixty-seven of-the-nativity
Ælfredi praefati regis decimo nono, praedictus paganorum
of-Alfred the-aforesaid king tenth ninth the-aforesaid of-the-pagans
exercitus de Orientalibus Anglis ad Eboracum civitatem
army from the-East Angles to York the-city
migravit, quae in aquilonali ripa Humbrensis fluminis sita est.
moved which on the-northern bank of-the-Humber river placed is
Eo tempore maxima inter Northanhymbros discordia diabolico
at-that time the-greatest among the-Northumbrians discord by-devilish
instinctu orta fuerat, sicut semper populo, qui odium incurrerit
instigation arisen had as always to-a-people which the-hatred has-incurred
Dei, evenire solet. Nam Northanhymbri eo tempore, ut
of-God to-happen is-wont for the-Northumbrians at-that time as
diximus, legitimum regem suum, Osbyrht nomine, regno
we-have-said lawful king their Osberht by-name from-the-kingdom
expulerant, et tyrannum quendam, Ælla nomine, non de regali
had-expelled and a-tyrant certain Ælla by-name not from royal

prosapia progenitum, super regni apicem constituerant.
stock begotten over of-the-kingdom the-summit had-set
Sed, advenientibus paganis, consilio divino et optimatum
but arriving the-pagans by-counsel divine and of-the-nobles
adminiculo, pro communi utilitate, discordia illa aliquantulum
by-the-support for the-common good discord that somewhat
sedata, Osbyrht et Ælla, adunatis viribus congregatoque
settled Osberht and Ælla united forces and-gathered
exercitu, Eboracum oppidum adeunt. Quibus advenientibus,
an-army York the-town approach whom arriving
pagani confestim fugam arripiunt, et intra urbis moenia
the-pagans at-once flight seize and within of-the-city the-walls
se defendere procurant. Quorum fugam et pavorem
themselves to-defend take-care whose flight and fear
Christiani cernentes, etiam intra urbis moenia eos persequi et
the-Christians seeing even within of-the-city the-walls them to-pursue and
murum frangere instituunt; quod et fecerunt. Non enim tunc
the-wall to-break undertake which also they-did not for then
adhuc illa civitas firmos et stabilitos muros illis temporibus
yet that city firm and stable walls in-those times
habebat. Cumque Christiani murum, ut proposuerant,
had and-when the-Christians the-wall as they-had-proposed
fregissent, et eorum magna pars in civitatem simul cum
had-broken and of-them a-great part into the-city together with
paganis intrasset, pagani, dolore et necessitate compulsi, super
the-pagans had-entered the-pagans by-grief and necessity compelled upon
eos atrociter irrumpunt, caedunt, fugant, prosternunt intus
them atrociously burst they-cut-down they-rout they-lay-low within
et extra. Illic maxima ex parte omnes Northanhymbrensium
and without there for-the-greatest in part all of-the-Northumbrians

coetus, occisis duobus regibus, deleti occubuerunt. Reliqui
the-host slain two kings destroyed fell the-rest
vero, qui evaserunt, pacem cum paganis pepigerunt.
but who escaped peace with the-pagans made
Eodem anno Ealhstan, episcopus Scireburnensis ecclesiae, viam
in-the-same year Ealhstan bishop of-the-Sherborne church the-way
universitatis adiens, postquam episcopatum per quinquaginta
of-the-universe going after the-bishopric for fifty
annos honorabiliter rexerat, in pace in Scireburnan sepultus
years honorably he-had-ruled in peace in Sherborne buried
est.
was
Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclxviii, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-sixty-eight of-the-nativity
Ælfredi regis vigesimo, idem ipse praefatus ac venerabilis
of-Alfred the-king twentieth the-same very aforesaid and venerable
Ælfred rex, secundarii tamen tunc ordine fretus, uxorem
Alfred the-king of-secondary yet then rank supported a-wife
de Mercia, nobilem scilicet genere, filiam Æthelredi,
from Mercia noble namely in-race daughter of-Æthelred
Gainorum comitis, qui cognominabatur Mucill, subarravit
of-the-Gaini ealdorman who was-surnamed Mucill betrothed
et duxit. Cuius feminae mater Eadburh nominabatur, de
and married of-which woman the-mother Eadburh was-named from
regali genere Merciorum regis; quam nos ipsi propriis
the-royal race of-the-Mercians king whom we ourselves with-our-own
oculorum nostrorum obtutibus non paucis ante obitum suum
of-eyes our gazes not few before death her
annis frequenter vidimus, venerabilis scilicet femina, ⟨quae⟩
years frequently have-seen a-venerable namely woman who

per multos annos post obitum viri sui castissima vidua
for many years after the-death of-husband her a-most-chaste widow
leto tenus permansit.
to-death as-far-as remained

§§ 30–37

30–37 · NOTTINGHAM AND READING

Æthelred and Alfred go to the aid of the Mercians at Nottingham, where the Mercians make peace. The army rides back to York for a year, winters at Thetford, and kills King Edmund. It enters Wessex at Reading, where Æthelwulf the ealdorman wins at Englefield, but the brothers are beaten at the gate. Four days later they march to Ashdown, where Æthelred stays at mass.

Eodem anno praedictus paganorum exercitus Northanhymbros
in-the-same year the-aforesaid of-the-pagans army the-Northumbrians
relinquens, in Merciam venit, et Snotengaham adiit
leaving into Mercia came and Nottingham went-to
(quod Britannice 'Tigguocobauc' interpretatur, Latine autem
which in-British Tigguocobauc is-interpreted in-Latin moreover
'speluncarum domus'), et in eodem loco eodem anno
of-caves the-house and in the-same place in-the-same year
hiemaverunt. Quibus illic advenientibus, confestim Burhred,
they-wintered whom there arriving at-once Burgred
Merciorum rex, et omnes eiusdem gentis optimates nuncios
of-the-Mercians king and all of-the-same nation the-nobles messengers
ad Æthered, Occidentalium Saxonum regem, et Ælfred,
to Æthelred of-the-West Saxons king and Alfred
fratrem, dirigunt, suppliciter obsecrantes, ut illi illis
his-brother direct humbly beseeching that they them
auxiliarentur, quo possent contra praefatum pugnare
should-help so-that they-might-be-able against the-aforesaid to-fight

exercitum. Quod et facile impetraverunt. Nam illi fratres,
army which also easily they-obtained for those brothers
non segnius promissione, congregato ex omni parte ⟨regni⟩
not more-slowly than-the-promise gathered from every part of-kingdom
sui immenso exercitu, Merciam adeunt, et usque ad
their an-immense army Mercia approach and all-the-way to
Snotengaham, bellum unanimiter quaerentes, perveniunt.
Nottingham battle with-one-mind seeking arrive
Cumque pagani, tuitione arcis muniti, bellum dare
and-when the-pagans by-the-protection of-the-citadel fortified battle to-give
negarent et Christianis frangere murum non suppeteret,
refused and for-the-Christians to-break the-wall not was-possible
pace inter Mercios et paganos facta, duo illi fratres
peace between the-Mercians and the-pagans made two those brothers
Æthered et Ælfred cum suis cohortibus domum reversi sunt.
Æthelred and Alfred with their cohorts home returned have
Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclxix, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-sixty-nine of-the-nativity
autem Ælfredi regis vigesimo primo, praefatus paganorum
moreover of-Alfred the-king twentieth first the-aforesaid of-the-pagans
exercitus iterum ad Northanhymbros equitans Eboracum
army again to the-Northumbrians riding York
civitatem adiit, et ibi anno integro mansit.
the-city went-to and there for-a-year whole remained
Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclxx, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-seventy of-the-nativity
autem Ælfredi regis vigesimo secundo, supra memoratus
moreover of-Alfred the-king twentieth second the-above mentioned
paganorum exercitus per Merciam in Orientales Anglos
of-the-pagans army through Mercia into the-East Angles
transivit, et ibi in loco, qui dicitur Theodford, hiemavit.
crossed and there in the-place which is-called Thetford wintered

Eodem anno Eadmund, Orientalium Anglorum rex, contra
in-the-same year Edmund of-the-East Angles king against
ipsum exercitum atrociter pugnavit. Sed, proh dolor! paganis
that army fiercely fought but alas grief the-pagans
nimium gloriantibus, ipso cum magna suorum parte ibidem
exceedingly glorying he with a-great of-his-men part there
occiso, inimici loco funeris dominati sunt, et totam
slain the-enemies of-the-place of-slaughter masters were and all
illam regionem suo dominio subdiderunt.
that region to-their dominion subjected
Eodem anno Ceolnoth, archiepiscopus Doroberniae, viam
in-the-same year Ceolnoth archbishop of-Canterbury the-way
universitatis adiens, in eadem civitate in pace sepultus est.
of-the-universe going in the-same city in peace buried was
Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclxxi, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-seventy-one of-the-nativity
autem Ælfredi regis vigesimo tertio, exosae memoriae
moreover of-Alfred the-king twentieth third of-hateful memory
paganorum exercitus Orientales Anglos deserens et regnum
of-the-pagans army the-East Angles deserting and the-kingdom
Occidentalium Saxonum adiens, venit ad villam regiam, quae
of-the-West Saxons approaching came to the-estate royal which
dicitur Rædigam, in meridiana Tamesis fluminis ripa sitam,
is-called Reading on the-southern of-the-Thames river bank placed
in illa paga, quae dicitur Bearrocscire; tertioque adventus
in that district which is-called Berkshire and-on-the-third of-coming
sui ibidem die ⟨duo⟩ comites eorum cum magna illius parte
their there day two ealdormen of-them with a-great of-it part
in praedam equitaverunt, aliis vallum inter duo flumina
for plunder rode others a-rampart between the-two rivers
Tamesen et Cynetan a dextrali parte eiusdem regiae villae
Thames and Kennet on the-right side of-the-same royal estate

facientibus. Quibus Æthelwulf, Bearroccensis pagae comes,
making whom Æthelwulf of-the-Berkshire district ealdorman
cum suis sodalibus in loco, qui dicitur Englafeld ⟨Anglice,
with his companions in the-place which is-called Englefield in-English
Latine Anglorum Campus⟩, obviavit, et animose ex utraque
in-Latin of-the-Angles Field met and spiritedly on each
parte ibidem pugnatum est. Cumque ibi diu utrique
side there fought it-was and-when there long both
resisterent, altero paganorum comite occiso, et maxima
resisted one of-the-pagans ealdorman slain and the-greatest
exercitus parte deleta, ceterisque fuga elapsis, Christiani
of-the-army part destroyed and-the-others by-flight escaped the-Christians
victoriam accipientes, loco funeris dominati sunt.
victory receiving of-the-place of-slaughter masters were
His ibi ita gestis, post quatuor dies Æthered, rex et
these-things there so done after four days Æthelred the-king and
Ælfred, frater eius, adunatis viribus congregatoque exercitu,
Alfred brother his united forces and-gathered the-army
Rædigum adierunt. Cumque usque ad portam arcis
Reading approached and-when all-the-way to the-gate of-the-citadel
pervenissent, caedendo et prosternendo quoscunque de
they-had-arrived by-cutting-down and laying-low whoever of
paganis extra arcem invenissent, pagani non segnius certabant,
the-pagans outside the-citadel they-had-found the-pagans not more-slowly fought
lupino more, totis portis erumpentes, totis viribus bellum
in-wolf-like manner from-all gates bursting with-all strength battle
perquirunt. Ibique diu et atrociter ex utraque parte dimicatum
they-seek and-there long and fiercely on each side fought
est, sed, proh dolor! Christianis demum terga vertentibus,
it-was but alas grief the-Christians at-last backs turning

pagani, victoriam accipientes, loco funeris dominati sunt,
the-pagans victory receiving of-the-place of-slaughter masters were
ibique Æthelwulfus praefatus comes inter ceteros occubuit.
and-there Æthelwulf the-aforesaid ealdorman among the-others fell
Quo dolore et verecundia Christiani commoti, iterum post
by-which grief and shame the-Christians moved again after
quatuor dies contra praefatum exercitum in loco, qui dicitur
four days against the-aforesaid army in the-place which is-called
Æscesdun, quod Latine 'mons fraxini' interpretatur, totis
Ashdown which in-Latin the-mountain of-the-ash is-interpreted with-all
viribus et plena voluntate ad proelium prodeunt. Sed pagani,
strength and full will to battle go-forth but the-pagans
in duas se turmas dividentes, aequali ⟨lance⟩ testudines
into two themselves troops dividing in-equal balance shield-walls
parant — habebant enim tunc duos reges et multos comites
prepare they-had for then two kings and many ealdormen
— concedentes mediam partem exercitus duobus regibus et
granting the-middle part of-the-army to-the-two kings and
alteram omnibus comitibus. Quod Christiani cernentes, et
the-other to-all the-ealdormen which the-Christians seeing also
etiam ipsi exercitum in duas turmas oppido dividentes,
even themselves the-army into two troops greatly dividing
testudines non segnius construunt. Sed Ælfred citius et
shield-walls not more-slowly construct but Alfred more-quickly and
promptius cum suis, sicut ab his, qui viderunt, veredicis
more-readily with his-men as from those who saw truthful
referentibus audivimus, ad locum proelii advenit; nimirum erat
relating we-have-heard to the-place of-battle came surely was
enim adhuc frater suus Æthered rex in tentorio in oratione
for still brother his Æthelred the-king in the-tent in prayer
positus, audiens missam, et nimium affirmans se inde
placed hearing mass and exceedingly affirming himself thence

vivum non discessurum antequam sacerdos missam finiret,
alive not about-to-depart before the-priest the-mass should-finish
et divinum pro humano nolle deserere servitium;
and the-divine for the-human to-be-unwilling to-desert service
et ita fecit. Quae regis Christiani fides multum apud
and so he-did which of-the-king Christian faith much with
Dominum valuit, sicut in sequentibus apertius declarabitur.
the-Lord availed as in the-following more-openly shall-be-declared

§§ 38–45

38–45 · ASHDOWN AND ALFRED'S ACCESSION

Alfred leads the attack at Ashdown before his brother arrives, charging like a boar; the Danes break around a lone thorn tree and lose a king and five earls. After a defeat at Basing, Æthelred dies, and Alfred, who had excelled all his brothers, takes the kingdom; within a month he is beaten at Wilton, and after eight battles in one year the Saxons make peace.

Decreverant ergo Christiani, ut Æthered rex cum suis
had-decided therefore the-Christians that Æthelred the-king with his
copiis contra duos paganos reges sumeret proelium,
forces against the-two pagan kings should-take-up battle
Ælfred vero, suus frater, cum suis cohortibus contra omnes
Alfred but his brother with his cohorts against all
paganorum duces belli sortem †sumere debere sciret.
of-the-pagans the-leaders of-war the-lot to-take-up ought should-know
Quibus ita firmiter ab utraque parte dispositis, cum rex
these-things so firmly on each side arranged since the-king
in oratione diutius moraretur et pagani parati ad locum
in prayer longer lingered and the-pagans prepared to the-place
certaminis citius advenissent, Ælfred, tunc secundarius,
of-the-contest more-quickly had-arrived Alfred then second-in-command

cum diutius hostiles acies ferre non posset, nisi aut
since longer the-hostile battle-lines to-bear not he-could unless either
bello retrorsum recederet, aut contra hostiles copias
from-the-battle backward he-should-withdraw or against the-hostile forces
ante fratris adventum in bellum prorumperet, demum
before of-the-brother the-arrival into battle burst-forth at-last
viriliter aprino more Christianas copias contra hostiles
manfully in-boar-like manner the-Christian forces against the-hostile
exercitus, ut ante proposuerat, tamen quamvis rex adhuc non
armies as before he-had-proposed yet though the-king still not
venerat, dirigens, divino fretus consilio et adiutorio fultus,
had-come directing on-divine relying counsel and by-help supported
testudine ordinabiliter condensata, confestim contra hostes
the-shield-wall in-orderly-fashion packed-close at-once against the-enemies
vexilla movet. ⟨Tandem rex Æthered, finitis quibus
the-standards he-moves at-last the-king Æthelred finished with-which
occupatus erat orationibus, advenit, et, invocato magni
occupied he-was the-prayers came and invoked of-the-great
mundi principe, mox se certamini dedit.⟩ Sed hoc in loco
world the-prince soon himself to-the-contest gave but this in place
nescientibus intimandum est, quod ille locus certaminis
to-those-not-knowing to-be-made-known is that that place of-the-contest
belligerantibus inaequalis erat; nam pagani editiorem locum
for-those-fighting unequal was for the-pagans the-loftier place
praeoccupaverant, Christiani ab inferiori loco aciem
had-seized-beforehand the-Christians from a-lower place the-battle-line
dirigebant. Erat quoque in eodem loco unica spinosa arbor,
directed there-was also in the-same place a-single thorny tree
brevis admodum, quam nos ipsi nostris propriis oculis
short very which we ourselves with-our own eyes
vidimus, circa quam ergo hostiles inter se acies, cum
have-seen around which therefore the-hostile among themselves battle-lines with

ingenti omnium clamore, illi perperam agentes, isti pro vita
huge of-all shouting those wrongly acting these for life
et dilectis atque patria pugnaturi, hostiliter conveniunt.
and loved-ones and fatherland about-to-fight hostilely come-together
Cumque aliquandiu animose et nimium atrociter hinc
and-when for-some-time spiritedly and exceedingly fiercely on-this-side
inde utrique pugnarent, pagani divino iudicio Christianorum
and-that both fought the-pagans by-divine judgment of-the-Christians
impetum diutius non ferentes, maxima suarum copiarum
the-onset longer not bearing the-greatest of-their forces
parte occisa, opprobriosam fugam cepere; quo in loco alter
part slain shameful flight took in which place one
de duobus paganorum regibus et quinque comites occisi
of the-two of-the-pagans kings and five ealdormen slain
occubuerunt, et multa millia paganae partis in eodem loco,
fell and many thousand of-the-pagan side in the-same place
et insuper per totam campestrem Æscesdun latitudinem
and moreover through all of-the-open Ashdown breadth
ubique dispersa, longe lateque occisa corruerunt. Cecidit ergo
everywhere scattered far and-wide slain fell fell therefore
Bægscecg rex et Sidroc ille senex comes et Sidroc iunior
Bagsecg the-king and Sidroc that old ealdorman and Sidroc the-younger
comes, et Osbern comes, et Fræna comes, et Hareld
ealdorman and Osbern ealdorman and Fræna ealdorman and Harald
comes, et totus paganorum exercitus in fugam usque ad
ealdorman and the-whole of-the-pagans army into flight all-the-way to
noctem et etiam usque ad diem sequentem, quousque ad
night and even all-the-way to the-day following until to
arcem qui evaserant pervenerunt, versus est, quos Christiani
the-citadel who had-escaped arrived turned was whom the-Christians
usque ad noctem persecuti sunt ubique prosternentes.
all-the-way to night pursued have everywhere laying-low

†Quibus cum talia praesentis vitae dispendia alienigenis
to-whom since such of-the-present life losses to-the-foreigners
perperam quaerentibus non sufficerent. His ibi gestis,
wrongly seeking not sufficed these-things there done
iterum post quatuordecim dies Æthered rex una cum fratre
again after fourteen days Æthelred the-king together with brother
suo Ælfred, adunatis viribus contra paganos pugnaturi, Basengas
his Alfred united forces against the-pagans about-to-fight Basing
adierunt. Quibus hinc inde hostiliter convenientibus,
approached they on-this-side and-that hostilely coming-together
et diu resistentibus, pagani victoriam accipientes, loco
and long resisting the-pagans victory receiving of-the-place
funeris dominati sunt. Quo proelio peracto, de ultramarinis
of-slaughter masters were which battle finished from overseas
partibus alius paganorum exercitus societati se adiunxit.
parts another of-the-pagans army to-the-fellowship itself joined
Et eodem anno post Pascha Æthered rex praefatus,
and in-the-same year after Easter Æthelred the-king aforesaid
regno quinque annis per multas tribulationes strenue atque
the-kingdom five years through many tribulations vigorously and
honorabiliter cum bona fama gubernato, viam universitatis
honorably with good fame governed the-way of-the-universe
adiens, in Winburnan monasterio sepultus, adventum Domini
going in Wimborne monastery buried the-coming of-the-Lord
et primam cum iustis resurrectionem expectat.
and the-first with the-just resurrection awaits
Eodem anno Ælfred supra memoratus, qui usque ad
in-the-same year Alfred above mentioned who all-the-way to
id temporis, viventibus fratribus suis, secundarius fuerat,
that of-time living brothers his second-in-command had-been
totius regni gubernacula, divino concedente nutu, cum
of-the-whole kingdom the-helm divine granting nod with

summa omnium illius regni accolarum voluntate, confestim
the-highest of-all of-that kingdom inhabitants will at-once
fratre defuncto suscepit. Quod etiam vivente praedicto fratre
the-brother having-died took-up which even living the-aforesaid brother
suo, si dignaretur accipere, facillime cum consensu omnium
his if he-had-deigned to-accept most-easily with the-consent of-all
potuerat invenire, nempe quia et sapientia et cunctis moribus
he-could to-find surely because both in-wisdom and in-all morals
bonis cunctos fratres suos praecellebat, et insuper eo
good all brothers his he-excelled and moreover for-that
quod nimium bellicosus et victor prope in omnibus bellis
that exceedingly warlike and victor almost in all wars
erat. Cumque regnare prope quasi invitus uno mense impleto
he-was and-when to-reign almost as-if unwilling one month completed
coeperat — nimirum enim non putabat se, nisi divino
he-had-begun surely for not he-thought himself unless by-divine
fultum auxilio, tantam paganorum unquam posse solum
supported help so-great of-the-pagans ever to-be-able alone
sufferre austeritatem, quin etiam viventibus suis fratribus, cum
to-bear harshness but also living his brothers with
magna multorum detrimenta sustinuisset — contra universum
great of-many losses he-had-sustained against the-whole
paganorum exercitum in monte, qui dicitur Wiltun, qui est
of-the-pagans army on the-hill which is-called Wilton which is
in meridiana ripa fluminis Guilou, de quo flumine tota illa
on the-southern bank of-the-river Wylye from which river all that
paga nominatur, cum paucis et nimium inaequali numero
district is-named with few and exceedingly unequal number
acerrime belligeravit, et cum hinc inde utrique hostiliter
most-fiercely warred and when on-this-side and-that both hostilely
et animose non parva diei parte pugnarent, pagani
and spiritedly not a-small of-the-day part fought the-pagans

ad integrum suum periculum propriis suis conspectibus
to the-full their peril with-their-own their sights
cernentes, et hostium infestationem diutius non ferentes,
seeing and of-the-enemies the-attack longer not bearing
terga in fugam verterunt. Sed, proh dolor! peraudacitatem
backs in flight turned but alas grief the-overboldness
persequentium decipientes, iterum in proelium prodeunt, et
of-the-pursuers deceiving again into battle they-go-forth and
victoriam capientes, loco funeris dominati sunt. Nec hoc
victory seizing of-the-place of-slaughter masters were nor this
cuiquam mirabile videatur, quod Christiani parvum in proelio
to-anyone wonderful should-seem that the-Christians a-small in battle
numerum habebant: erant enim Saxones maxima ex parte
number had they-were for the-Saxons for-the-greatest in part
in eodem uno anno octo contra paganos proeliis populariter
in the-same one year by-eight against the-pagans battles generally
attriti, in quibus octo proeliis unus rex paganorum et
worn-down in which eight battles one king of-the-pagans and
novem duces cum innumeris cohortibus occisi periere, exceptis
nine leaders with countless cohorts slain perished excepted
cotidianis et nocturnis irruptionibus innumerabilibus, quas
the-daily and nightly incursions countless which
⟨rex⟩ Ælfred saepe memoratus et singuli duces illius gentis
the-king Alfred often mentioned and individual leaders of-that nation
cum suis et etiam perplures ministri regis contra paganos
with their-men and also very-many thegns of-the-king against the-pagans
infatigabiliter studiose exercebant. In quibus frequentissimis
untiringly zealously carried-out in which most-frequent
irruptionibus quot millia paganae expeditionis occisa
incursions how-many thousand of-the-pagan expedition slain

perierunt, nisi soli Deo, incognitum est; exceptis his, qui
perished except to-God alone unknown is excepted those who
in octo supra memoratis proeliis trucidati sunt.
in the-eight above mentioned battles slaughtered were
Eodem quoque anno Saxones cum iisdem paganis, ea
in-the-same also year the-Saxons with the-same pagans on-that
condicione, ut ab eis discederent, pacem pepigerunt; quod
condition that from them they-should-depart peace made which
et impleverunt.
also they-fulfilled
Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclxxii, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-seventy-two of-the-nativity
autem Ælfredi regis vigesimo quarto, praefatus paganorum
moreover of-Alfred the-king twentieth fourth the-aforesaid of-the-pagans
exercitus Lundoniam adiit, et ibi hyemavit, cum quo
army London went-to and there wintered with which
Mercii pacem pepigerunt.
the-Mercians peace made
Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclxxiii, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-seventy-three of-the-nativity
autem Ælfredi regis vigesimo quinto, saepe memoratus
moreover of-Alfred the-king twentieth fifth the-often mentioned
exercitus Lundoniam deserens, in Northanhymbrorum
army London deserting into of-the-Northumbrians
regionem perrexit, et ibi hyemavit in paga, quae dicitur
the-region went and there wintered in the-district which is-called
Lindesig; cum quo iterum Mercii pacem pepigerunt.
Lindsey with which again the-Mercians peace made

§§ 46–53

The army drives Burgred from Mercia and gives it to the foolish thegn Ceolwulf. It divides, Halfdene settling Northumbria and Guthrum taking Cambridge, Wareham, and Exeter, breaking its oath to Alfred. In 878 it seizes Chippenham and much of Wessex, and Alfred leads a hunted life in the Somerset marshes.

Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclxxiv, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-seventy-four of-the-nativity
autem Ælfredi regis vigesimo sexto, supra memoratus saepe
moreover of-Alfred the-king twentieth sixth above mentioned often
exercitus Lindissig deserens, Merciam adiit, et hyemavit in
the-army Lindsey deserting Mercia went-to and wintered in
loco, qui dicitur Hreopedune. Burghredum quoque Merciorum
the-place which is-called Repton Burgred also of-the-Mercians
regem regnum suum deserere et ultra mare exire et Romam
king kingdom his to-desert and beyond the-sea to-go-out and Rome
adire contra voluntatem suam coegit, vigesimo secundo regni
to-go-to against will his it-compelled in-the-twentieth second of-reign
sui anno; qui, postquam Romam adierat, non diu vivens, ibi
his year who after Rome he-had-gone-to not long living there
defunctus est, et in Schola Saxonum in ecclesia Sanctae Mariae
died has and in the-School of-the-Saxons in the-church of-Saint Mary
honorifice sepultus, adventum Domini et primam cum iustis
honorably buried the-coming of-the-Lord and the-first with the-just
resurrectionem expectat. Pagani quoque post eius expulsionem
resurrection awaits the-pagans also after his expulsion
totum Merciorum regnum suo dominio subdiderunt, quod
the-whole of-the-Mercians kingdom to-their dominion subjected which
tamen miserabili condicione cuidam insipienti ministro ⟨regis⟩
yet on-a-wretched condition to-a-certain foolish thegn of-the-king

(cuius nomen erat Ceolwulf) eodem pacto custodiendum
whose name was Ceolwulf on-the-same agreement to-be-kept
commendaverunt, ut qualicunque die illud vellent habere
entrusted that on-whatever day it they-wished to-have
iterum, pacifice illis assignaret. Quibus in eadem condicione
again peacefully to-them he-should-assign to-whom on the-same condition
obsides dedit et iuravit, nullo modo se voluntati eorum
hostages he-gave and swore in-no way himself to-the-will their
contradicere velle, sed oboediens in omnibus esse.
to-contradict to-wish but obedient in all-things to-be
Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclxxv, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-seventy-five of-the-nativity
autem Ælfredi regis vigesimo septimo, supra memoratus
moreover of-Alfred the-king twentieth seventh above mentioned
saepe exercitus Hreopedune deserens, in duas se divisit
often the-army Repton deserting into two itself divided
turmas: cuius altera pars cum Healftene in regionem
troops of-which the-one part with Halfdene into the-region
Northanhymbrorum perrexit, et ibi hiemavit iuxta flumen,
of-the-Northumbrians went and there wintered beside the-river
quod dicitur Tine, et totam Northanhymbrorum regionem
which is-called Tyne and all of-the-Northumbrians the-region
suo subdidit dominio, necnon et Pictos et Stratcluttenses
to-its subjected dominion and-also also the-Picts and the-Strathclyde-men
depopulati sunt. Altera quoque pars cum Gothrum et
laid-waste have the-other also part with Guthrum and
Osscytil et Anvind, tribus paganorum regibus, ad locum,
Oscytel and Anwind three of-the-pagans kings to the-place
qui dicitur Grantebrycge, pervenit, et ibi hiemavit.
which is-called Cambridge arrived and there wintered

Eodem anno Ælfred rex navali proelio in mare contra
in-the-same year Alfred the-king in-a-naval battle on the-sea against
sex naves paganorum belligeravit, et unam ex eis cepit,
six ships of-the-pagans warred and one of them took
ceteris per fugam elapsis.
the-others by flight escaped
Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclxxvi, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-seventy-six of-the-nativity
autem Ælfredi regis vigesimo octavo, saepe memoratus
moreover of-Alfred the-king twentieth eighth often mentioned
paganorum exercitus noctu de Grantebrycge exiens,
of-the-pagans army by-night from Cambridge going-out
castellum, quod dicitur Werham, intravit; quod monasterium
the-fort which is-called Wareham entered which a-monastery
sanctimonialium inter duo flumina Frauu ⟨et Terente⟩ et in
of-nuns between two rivers Frome and Tarrant and in
paga, quae dicitur Britannice Durngueir, Saxonice autem
the-district which is-called in-British Durngueir in-Saxon moreover
Thornsæta, tutissimo terrarum situ situm est, nisi ab
Dorset in-the-most-safe of-lands situation placed is except from
occidentali parte tantummodo, ubi contigua terra est. Cum
the-western side only where adjoining the-land is with
quo exercitu Ælfred rex foedus firmiter ea condicione,
which army Alfred the-king a-treaty firmly on-that condition
ut ab eo discederent, pepigit: cui ille exercitus electos
that from him they-should-depart made to-whom that army chosen
obsides, quantos ⟨ipse⟩ solus nominavit, sine ulla controversia
hostages as-many-as he alone named without any dispute
dedit, necnon et sacramentum in omnibus reliquiis, quibus
gave and-also also an-oath on all the-relics in-which
ille rex maxime post Deum confidebat, iuravit, (in quibus
that king most-of-all after God trusted swore on which

nec alicui genti prius iurare voluit) citissime de regno suo
nor to-any nation before to-swear it-wished most-quickly from kingdom his
se exiturum esse. Sed, more suo, solita fallacia utens,
itself about-to-go-out to-be but in-manner its accustomed deceit using
et obsides et iuramentum atque fidem promissam non
both the-hostages and the-oath and the-faith promised not
custodiens, nocte quadam, foedere disrupto, omnes equites,
keeping by-night a-certain the-treaty broken all the-horsemen
quos habebat, occidit, versusque inde ad alium locum, qui
which it-had it-killed and-turning thence to another place which
dicitur Saxonice Exanceastre, Britannice autem Cairuuisc,
is-called in-Saxon Exeter in-British moreover Cairwisc
Latine quoque civitas ⟨Exae, quae⟩ in orientali ripa fluminis
in-Latin also the-city of-the-Exe which on the-eastern bank of-the-river
Uuisc sita est, prope mare meridianum, quod interluit
Wisc placed is near the-sea southern which flows-between
Galliam Britanniamque, inopinate direxit, et ibi hyemavit.
Gaul and-Britain unexpectedly directed and there wintered
Eodem quoque anno Halfdene, rex illius partis
in-the-same also year Halfdene king of-that part
Northanhymbrorum, totam regionem sibimet et suis
of-the-Northumbrians the-whole region to-himself and to-his-men
divisit, et illam cum suo exercitu coluit.
divided and it with his army tilled
Ipso anno, mense Augusto, ille exercitus perrexit in
in-that year in-the-month of-August that army went into
Merciam, et illam regionem Merciorum partim dedit Ceolwulfo,
Mercia and that region of-the-Mercians partly gave to-Ceolwulf
cuidam insipienti regis ministro, partim inter se divisit.
a-certain foolish of-the-king thegn partly among themselves divided

Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclxxviii, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-seventy-eight of-the-nativity
autem Ælfredi regis trigesimo, supra memoratus saepe
moreover of-Alfred the-king thirtieth above mentioned often
exercitus Eaxeancestre deserens, Cippanham, villam regiam,
the-army Exeter deserting Chippenham the-estate royal
quae est sita in sinistrali parte Wiltunscire, in orientali ripa
which is placed on the-left side of-Wiltshire on the-eastern bank
fluminis, quod Britannice dicitur Abon, adiit, et ibi hyemavit.
of-the-river which in-British is-called Avon went-to and there wintered
Et multos eiusdem gentis ultra mare compulit hostiliter et
and many of-the-same nation beyond the-sea it-compelled hostilely and
penuria atque pavore navigare, et maxima ex parte omnes
want and fear to-sail and for-the-greatest in part all
illius regionis habitatores suo subdiderunt dominio.
of-that region the-inhabitants to-its subjected dominion
Eodem tempore Ælfred saepe supra memoratus rex, cum
at-the-same time Alfred often above mentioned the-king with
paucis suis nobilibus et etiam cum quibusdam militibus
few his nobles and also with certain soldiers
et fasellis, per sylvestria et gronnosa Summurtunensis
and vassals through the-wooded and marshy of-the-Somerset
pagae loca in magna tribulatione inquietam vitam ducebat.
district places in great tribulation an-unquiet life led
Nihil enim habebat quo uteretur, nisi quod a paganis
nothing for he-had which he-might-use except what from the-pagans
et etiam a Christianis, qui se paganorum subdiderant
and also from the-Christians who themselves of-the-pagans had-subjected
dominio, frequentibus irruptionibus aut clam aut etiam
to-the-dominion by-frequent raids either secretly or even
palam subtraheret.
openly he-might-take-away

§§ 54–63

54–63 · EDINGTON AND GUTHRUM'S BAPTISM

Ivar's brother is killed in Devon at Cynuit. Alfred builds a fort at Athelney, gathers the men of three shires at Ecgberht's Stone, and wins at Edington; after a fourteen-day siege the Danes give hostages, and Guthrum is baptized with Alfred as his sponsor. The armies move to Cirencester, East Anglia, and Francia.

Eodem anno frater Inwari et Healfdene cum viginti et
in-the-same year the-brother of-Ivar and Halfdene with twenty and
tribus navibus de Demetica regione, in qua hyemaverat,
three ships from the-Demetian region in which he-had-wintered
post multas ibi Christianorum strages factas, ad Domnaniam
after many there of-Christians slaughters made to Devon
enavigavit, et ibi a ministris regis cum mille et
sailed and there by the-thegns of-the-king with a-thousand and
ducentis infelici exitu perperam agens occisus est ante
two-hundred by-an-unhappy end wrongly acting slain was before
arcem Cynuit; quia in eadem arce multi ministri regis
the-fort of-Cynuit because in the-same fort many thegns of-the-king
cum suis se concluserant confugii causa. Sed cum
with their-men themselves had-shut-in of-refuge for-the-sake but when
pagani arcem imparatam atque omnino immunitam, nisi quod
the-pagans the-fort unprepared and altogether unfortified except that
moenia nostro more erecta solummodo haberet, cernerent, —
walls in-our manner raised only it-had saw
non enim effringere moliebantur, quia et ille locus situ
not for to-break-in did-they-attempt because also that place by-situation
terrarum tutissimus est ab omni parte, nisi ab orientali,
of-lands most-safe is from every side except from the-eastern
sicut nos ipsi vidimus, — obsidere eam coeperunt, putantes
as we ourselves have-seen to-besiege it began thinking

homines illos manum cito daturos fame et siti et
men those hand soon about-to-give by-famine and thirst and
obsessione coactos, quia nulla aqua illi arci contigua est.
siege compelled because no water to-that fort adjoining is
Quod non ita, ut putabant, evenit. Nam Christiani, antequam
which not so as they-thought happened for the-Christians before
talem penuriam omnino subire paterentur, divinitus instigati,
such want altogether to-undergo they-would-suffer divinely instigated
multo melius iudicantes aut mortem aut victoriam mereri,
much better judging either death or victory to-earn
diluculo super paganos ex improviso irrumpunt, et a
at-dawn upon the-pagans from the-unforeseen burst and from
primo tempore hostes hostiliter cum rege suo maxima
the-first time the-enemies hostilely with king their for-the-greatest
ex parte, paucis ad naves per fugam elapsis, prosternunt.
in part few to the-ships by flight escaped lay-low
Eodem anno post Pascha Ælfred rex cum paucis fecit
in-the-same year after Easter Alfred the-king with few made
arcem in loco, qui dicitur Æthelingaeg, et de ipsa arce
a-fort in the-place which is-called Athelney and from that fort
semper cum fassellis Summurtunensis ⟨pagae⟩ contra paganos
always with the-vassals of-the-Somerset district against the-pagans
infatigabiliter rebellavit. Iterumque in septima hebdomada post
untiringly rebelled and-again in the-seventh week after
Pascha ad Petram Ægbryhta, quae est in orientali parte saltus,
Easter to the-Stone of-Ecgberht which is in the-eastern part of-the-forest
qui dicitur Seluudu, Latine autem ‘sylva magna,’ Britannice
which is-called Selwood in-Latin moreover the-wood great in-British
‘Coit Maur,’ equitavit; ibique obviaverunt illi omnes accolae
Coit Maur he-rode and-there met him all the-inhabitants
Summurtunensis pagae et Wiltunensis, omnes accolae
of-the-Somerset district and of-Wiltshire all the-inhabitants

Hamtunensis pagae, qui non ultra mare pro metu paganorum
of-the-Hampshire district who not beyond the-sea for fear of-the-pagans
navigaverant; visoque rege, sicut dignum erat, quasi redivivum
had-sailed and-seen the-king as fitting it-was as-if restored-to-life
post tantas tribulationes recipientes, immenso repleti sunt
after such tribulations receiving immense filled were
gaudio, et ibi castra metati sunt una nocte. Diluculo sequenti
with-joy and there camp pitched have for-one night at-dawn following
illucescente, rex inde castra commovens, venit ad locum,
shining the-king thence the-camp moving came to the-place
qui dicitur Ægclea, et ibi una nocte castra metatus est.
which is-called Iley and there for-one night the-camp pitched has
Inde sequenti mane illucescente vexilla commovens ad
thence the-following morning shining the-standards moving to
locum, qui dicitur Ethandun, venit, et contra universum
the-place which is-called Edington came and against the-whole
paganorum exercitum cum densa testudine atrociter belligerans,
of-the-pagans army with dense shield-wall fiercely warring
animoseque diu persistens, divino nutu, tandem victoria
and-spiritedly long persisting by-divine nod at-last of-victory
potitus, paganos maxima caede prostravit, et fugientes
having-gained the-pagans with-very-great slaughter laid-low and fleeing
usque ad arcem percutiens persecutus est, et omnia,
all-the-way to the-fort striking pursued has and all-things
quae extra arcem invenit, homines scilicet et equos et
which outside the-fort he-found men namely and horses and
pecora, confestim caedens homines, surripuit, et ante portas
cattle at-once killing the-men he-carried-off and before the-gates
paganicae arcis cum omni exercitu suo viriliter castra
of-the-pagan fort with all army his manfully the-camp
metatus est. Cumque ibi per quatuordecim dies remoraretur,
pitched has and-when there for fourteen days he-lingered

pagani fame, frigore, timore, et ad extremum desperatione
the-pagans by-famine by-cold by-fear and at the-last by-despair
perterriti, pacem ea condicione petierunt, ut rex
terrified peace on-that condition sought that the-king
nominatos obsides, quantos vellet, ab eis acciperet, et ille
named hostages as-many-as he-wished from them should-receive and he
nullum eis daret, ita tamen qualiter nunquam cum aliquo
none to-them should-give so yet as never with anyone
pacem ante pepigerant. Quorum legatione audita rex suatim
peace before they-had-made whose embassy heard the-king in-his-way
utens, misericordia motus, nominatos, quantos voluit, obsides
using mercy moved named as-many-as he-wished hostages
ab eis accepit. Quibus acceptis, pagani insuper iuraverunt
from them received which received the-pagans moreover swore
se citissime de suo regno exituros, necnon et
themselves most-quickly from his kingdom about-to-go-out and-also also
Godrum, rex eorum, Christianitatem subire et baptismum
Guthrum king their Christianity to-undergo and baptism
sub manu Ælfredi regis accipere promisit. Quae omnia ille
under the-hand of-Alfred the-king to-receive promised which all he
et sui, ut promiserant, impleverunt. Nam post hebdomadas
and his-men as they-had-promised fulfilled for after weeks
⟨tres⟩ Godrum, paganorum rex, cum triginta electissimis de
three Guthrum of-the-pagans king with thirty most-chosen from
exercitu suo viris, ad Ælfred regem prope Æthelingaeg in
army his men to Alfred the-king near Athelney in
loco, qui dicitur Alre, pervenit. Quem Ælfred rex in
the-place which is-called Aller arrived whom Alfred the-king as
filium adoptionis sibi suscipiens, de fonte sacro baptismatis
son of-adoption to-himself receiving from the-font sacred of-baptism
elevavit. Cuius chrismatis solutio octavo die in villa
raised of-whom of-the-chrism the-loosing on-the-eighth day in the-estate

regia, quae dicitur Wædmor, fuit. Qui, postquam baptizatus
royal which is-called Wedmore was who after baptized
fuit, duodecim noctibus cum rege mansit. Cui rex
he-was for-twelve nights with the-king remained to-whom the-king
cum suis omnibus multa et optima beneficia largiter dedit.
with his-men all many and excellent benefits lavishly gave
Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclxxix, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-seventy-nine of-the-nativity
autem Ælfredi regis trigesimo primo, praefatus paganorum
moreover of-Alfred the-king thirtieth first the-aforesaid of-the-pagans
exercitus de Cippanhamme, ut promiserat, consurgens,
army from Chippenham as it-had-promised rising
Cirrenceastre adiit, quae Britannice Cairceri nominatur, quae est
Cirencester went-to which in-British Cairceri is-named which is
in meridiana parte Huicciorum, ibique per unum annum mansit.
in the-southern part of-the-Hwicce and-there for one year remained
Eodem anno magnus paganorum exercitus de ultramarinis
in-the-same year a-great of-the-pagans army from overseas
partibus navigans in Tamesin fluvium venit, et adunatus
parts sailing into the-Thames river came and united
est superiori exercitui, sed tamen hyemavit in loco, qui
was to-the-earlier army but yet wintered in the-place which
dicitur Fullonham, iuxta flumen Tamesin.
is-called Fulham beside the-river Thames
Eodem anno eclipsis solis inter nonam et vesperam,
in-the-same year an-eclipse of-the-sun between the-ninth-hour and evening
sed propius ad nonam, facta est.
but nearer to the-ninth-hour made was
Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclxxx, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-eighty of-the-nativity
autem Ælfredi regis trigesimo secundo, saepe memoratus
moreover of-Alfred the-king thirtieth second often mentioned

paganorum exercitus Cirrenceastre deserens, ad Orientales
of-the-pagans army Cirencester deserting to the-East
Anglos perrexit, ipsamque regionem dividens coepit inhabitare.
Angles went and-that region dividing began to-inhabit
Eodem anno exercitus paganorum, qui in Fullonham
in-the-same year the-army of-the-pagans which at Fulham
hiemaverat, Britannicam insulam deserens, iterum ultra mare
had-wintered the-British island deserting again beyond the-sea
navigans, ad Orientalem Franciam perrexit, et per unum
sailing to East Francia went and for one
annum in loco, qui dicitur Gendi, mansit.
year in the-place which is-called Ghent remained
Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclxxxi, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-eighty-one of-the-nativity
autem Ælfredi regis trigesimo tertio, praefatus exercitus
moreover of-Alfred the-king thirtieth third the-aforesaid army
superius in Franciam perrexit. Contra quem Franci
farther-up into Francia went against which the-Franks
pugnaverunt, et, finito proelio, pagani, equis inventis, equites
fought and finished the-battle the-pagans horses found horsemen
facti sunt.
made were
Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclxxxii, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-eighty-two of-the-nativity
autem Ælfredi regis trigesimo quarto, praefatus exercitus
moreover of-Alfred the-king thirtieth fourth the-aforesaid army
suas naves per flumen, quod dicitur Mese, sursum tanto
its ships through the-river which is-called Meuse upward so
longe in Franciam pertraxit, et ibi uno anno hyemavit.
far into Francia dragged and there for-one year wintered

§§ 64–72

64–72 · WARS AT SEA AND IN FRANCIA

Alfred fights at sea, relieves Rochester, and sends his fleet against East Anglia. Asser notes Frankish affairs: the deaths of Carloman and Louis, the Saxon and Frisian victories in Old Saxony, and Charles of the Alemanni receiving the western Frankish kingdom. Pope Marinus frees the Saxon School and sends Alfred part of the true cross.

Et eodem anno Ælfred, Angulsaxonum rex, navali proelio
and in-the-same year Alfred of-the-Anglo-Saxons king in-a-naval battle
contra paganicas naves in mare congressus est; ex quibus duas
against pagan ships on the-sea engaged has of which two
cepit naves, occisis omnibus, qui in eis erant. Duarumque
he-took ships slain all who in them were and-of-two
aliarum navium duo principes, cum omnibus suis sociis,
other ships the-two chiefs with all their companions
valde proelio et vulneribus fatigati, depositis armis, curvo
greatly by-battle and by-wounds wearied laid-down arms with-bent
poplite, et supplicibus precibus, dederunt se regi.
knee and with-suppliant prayers gave themselves to-the-king
Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclxxxiii, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-eighty-three of-the-nativity
autem regis Ælfredi trigesimo quinto, praefatus exercitus
moreover of-the-king Alfred thirtieth fifth the-aforesaid army
naves suas per flumen, quod dicitur Scald, contra flumen
ships its through the-river which is-called Scheldt against the-river
navigans, ad monasterium sanctimonialium, quod dicitur
sailing to the-monastery of-nuns which is-called
Cundoth, traxit, et ibi anno uno mansit.
Condé dragged and there for-a-year one remained

Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclxxxiv, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-eighty-four of-the-nativity
autem Ælfredi regis trigesimo sexto, praefatus exercitus in
moreover of-Alfred the-king thirtieth sixth the-aforesaid army into
duas se turmas divisit: una etenim turma in Orientalem
two itself troops divided one for troop into East
Franciam perrexit, et altera ad Britanniam veniens, Cantiam
Francia went and the-other to Britain coming Kent
adiit, civitatemque, quae Hrofesceastre Saxonice dicitur, in
went-to and-the-city which Rochester in-Saxon is-called on
orientali ripa fluminis Medwæg sitam, obsedit. Ante huius
the-eastern bank of-the-river Medway placed besieged before its
portam pagani castellum sibimet firmum subito fabricaverunt;
gate the-pagans a-fort for-themselves strong suddenly built
nec tamen illam civitatem expugnare potuerunt, quia cives
nor yet that city to-storm could because citizens
illi se viriliter defenderunt, quousque Ælfred rex, cum
those themselves manfully defended until Alfred the-king with
magno exercitu adiutorium illis conferens, supervenit. Et tunc
great army help to-them bringing came-up and then
pagani, relicta arce sua, et omnibus equis, quos de Francia
the-pagans left fort their and all horses which from Francia
secum adduxerant, derelictis, maxima parte necnon captivorum
with-them they-had-brought abandoned the-greatest part and-also of-captives
suorum in arce dimissa, adveniente subito rege, ad naves
their in the-fort let-go arriving suddenly the-king to ships
suas confestim confugiunt, et Saxones statim derelictos a
their at-once flee and the-Saxons at-once the-abandoned by
paganis captivos et equos diripiunt. Pagani itaque, magna
the-pagans captives and horses seize the-pagans and-so by-great
necessitate compulsi, eadem aestate iterum Franciam adierunt.
necessity compelled in-the-same summer again Francia went-to

Eodem anno Ælfred, Angulsaxonum rex, classem suam de
in-the-same year Alfred of-the-Anglo-Saxons king fleet his from
Cantia, plenam bellatoribus, in Orientales Anglos dirigens,
Kent full of-warriors into the-East Angles directing
praedandi causa, transmisit. Cumque ad ostium Sture
of-plundering for-the-sake sent-across and-when to the-mouth of-the-Stour
fluminis advenissent, confestim tredecim naves paganorum,
river they-had-arrived at-once thirteen ships of-the-pagans
paratae ad bellum, obviaverunt eis, initoque navali proelio,
prepared for battle met them and-entered a-naval battle
hinc inde acriter pugnantes, pagani omnes occisi et
on-this-side and-that fiercely fighting the-pagans all slain and
omnes naves cum omni pecunia eorum captae sunt. Cumque
all ships with all money their taken were and-when
inde victrix regia classis dormiret, pagani, qui Orientalium
thence the-victorious royal fleet slept the-pagans who of-the-East
Anglorum regionem habitabant, congregatis undecunque
Angles the-region inhabited gathered from-everywhere
navibus, eidem regiae classi in ostio eiusdem fluminis in
ships the-same royal fleet in the-mouth of-the-same river on
mari obviaverunt, consertoque navali proelio, pagani victoriam
the-sea met and-joined a-naval battle the-pagans victory
habuerunt.
had

Eodem quoque anno Carlomannum, Francorum Occidentalium
in-the-same also year Carloman of-the-Franks Western
regem, aprorum venationem agentem, singularis congressione
king of-boars a-hunt conducting a-lone-boar by-encounter
horrendo dente dilacerans miserabili funere percussit. Cuius
with-horrible tooth tearing by-wretched death struck whose
frater Hlothuuicus superiori anno defunctus est; qui et ipse
brother Louis in-the-previous year died has who also himself

erat etiam Francorum rex: ipsi etenim ambo filii Hlothuuici
was also of-the-Franks king they for both sons of-Louis
regis Francorum erant. Qui etiam Hlothuuicus supra
king of-the-Franks were who also Louis in-the-above
memorato anno, quo eclipsis solis facta est, defunctus est;
mentioned year in-which the-eclipse of-the-sun made was died has
ipse quoque Hlothuuicus filius Karoli Francorum regis erat,
he also Louis son of-Charles of-the-Franks king was
cuius filiam Iuthittam Æthelwulfus, Occidentalium Saxonum
whose daughter Judith Æthelwulf of-the-West Saxons
rex, ad reginam sibi paterna voluntate suscepit.
king as queen to-himself with-the-father's will received
Eodem quoque anno magnus paganorum exercitus de
in-the-same also year a-great of-the-pagans army from
Germania in regionem Antiquorum Saxonum, quae Saxonice
Germany into the-region of-the-Old Saxons which in-Saxon
dicitur Eald Seaxum, supervenit. Contra quos, adunatis
is-called Eald Seaxum came-upon against whom united
viribus, iidem Saxones et Frisones bis in uno illo anno
forces the-same Saxons and Frisians twice in one that year
viriliter pugnavere. In quibus duobus bellis Christiani, divina
manfully fought in which two wars the-Christians divine
opitulante misericordia, victoriam habuere.
helping mercy victory had
Eodem quoque anno Carolus, Alamannorum rex,
in-the-same also year Charles of-the-Alemanni king
Occidentalium Francorum regnum et omnia regna, quae
of-the-Western Franks the-kingdom and all kingdoms which
sunt inter mare Tyrrhenum et illum marinum sinum, qui
are between the-sea Tyrrhenian and that sea bay which
inter Antiquos Saxones et Gallos adiacet, voluntario omnium
between the-Old Saxons and the-Gauls lies by-voluntary of-all

consensu accepit, absque Armoricano regno. Qui Karolus
consent received except the-Armorican kingdom which Charles
Hlothuuici regis filius fuit; ipse vero Hlothuuicus germanus
of-Louis the-king son was this but Louis the-brother
Karoli regis Francorum, patris Iuthittae, reginae praedictae,
of-Charles king of-the-Franks father of-Judith the-queen aforesaid
erat: qui etiam duo germani fuerunt filii Hlothuuici; Hlothuuic
was who also two brothers were sons of-Louis Louis
vero ille filius Caroli ⟨antiqui, qui etiam fuit filius⟩ Pipini.
but that son of-Charles the-old who also was son of-Pippin
Eodem anno beatae memoriae Marinus papa universitatis
in-the-same year of-blessed memory Marinus the-pope of-the-universe
viam migravit. Qui Scholam Saxonum in Roma morantium,
the-way departed who the-School of-the-Saxons in Rome staying
pro amore et deprecatione Ælfredi, Angulsaxonum regis, ab
for the-love and entreaty of-Alfred of-the-Anglo-Saxons king from
omni tributo et telonio benigne liberavit. Qui etiam multa
all tribute and toll kindly freed who also many
dona praedicto regi illa vice transmisit: inter quae dedit
gifts to-the-aforesaid king at-that time sent-across among which he-gave
etiam non parvam illius sanctissimae ac venerabilissimae
also not a-small of-that most-holy and most-venerable
crucis partem, in qua Dominus noster Iesus Christus pro
cross part on which Lord our Jesus Christ for
universali hominum salute pependit.
the-universal of-men salvation hung
Eodem quoque anno ille paganorum exercitus, qui in
in-the-same also year that of-the-pagans army which in
Orientalibus Anglis habitavit, pacem, quam cum Ælfredo
the-East Angles dwelt the-peace which with Alfred
rege pepigerat, opprobriose fregit.
the-king it-had-made shamefully broke

§§ 73–76

73–76 · ALFRED'S ILLNESS AND CHILDREN

At his wedding Alfred is seized by an unknown pain that torments him from age twenty to past forty; earlier, praying in Cornwall to have his ailment changed for a lighter one, he had been healed of it. Asser names his children and their schooling, and describes the king's labors: his craftsmen, his buildings, his prayers, and alms, and his longing for wisdom, sought like a bee among flowers.

Igitur, ut ad id, unde digressus sum, redeam, ne diuturna
therefore that to that whence digressed I-have I-may-return lest by-long
enavigatione portum optatae quietis omittere cogar,
sailing-out the-port of-desired rest to-abandon I-be-compelled
aliquantulum, quantum notitiae meae innotuerit, de vita
a-little as-much-as to-knowledge my has-become-known about the-life
et moribus et aequa conversatione, atque, ex parte non
and morals and equitable conduct and in part not
modica, res gestas domini mei Ælfredi, Angulsaxonum
small the-things done of-lord my Alfred of-the-Anglo-Saxons
regis, postquam praefatam ac venerabilem de Merciorum
king after the-aforesaid and venerable from of-the-Mercian
nobilium genere coniugem duxerit, Deo annuente, succinctim
nobles the-race wife he-married God nodding concisely
ac breviter, ne qua prolixitate narrandi nova quaeque
and briefly lest by-any prolixity of-narrating new all-things
fastidientium animos offendam, ut promisi, expedire procurabo.
loathing the-minds I-offend as I-promised to-set-forth I-shall-take-care
Cum ergo nuptias honorabiliter in Mercia factas, inter
when therefore the-wedding honorably in Mercia made among
innumerabiles utriusque sexus populos, sollemniter celebraret,
countless of-each sex peoples solemnly he-celebrated

post diuturna die noctuque convivia, subito et immenso
after long by-day and-by-night feasts suddenly and by-immense
atque omnibus medicis incognito confestim coram omni
and to-all physicians unknown at-once before all
populo correptus est dolore. Incognitum enim erat omnibus,
the-people seized he-was pain unknown for it-was to-all
qui tunc aderant, et etiam hucusque cotidie cernentibus
who then were-present and even up-to-now daily seeing
— quod, proh dolor! pessimum est, tantam diuturnitatem
which alas grief worst is such long-duration
a vigesimo aetatis suae anno usque quadragesimum,
from the-twentieth of-age his year all-the-way-to the-fortieth
et eo amplius, annum per tanta annorum curricula
and than-that more year through so-many of-years courses
incessanter protelasse — unde talis dolor oriebatur. Multi
unceasingly to-have-prolonged whence such pain arose many
namque favore et fascinatione circumstantis populi hoc
for by-favor and fascination of-the-surrounding people this
factum esse autumabant; alii diaboli quadam invidia, qui
done to-have-been supposed others of-the-devil by-a-certain envy who
semper bonis invidus existat; alii inusitato quodam genere
always to-the-good envious stands-out others by-an-unusual certain kind
febris; alii ficum existimabant, quod genus infestissimi
of-fever others piles thought which kind of-most-troublesome
doloris etiam ab infantia habuit. Sed quodam tempore,
pain even from infancy he-had but at-a-certain time
divino nutu, antea, cum Cornubiam venandi causa adiret,
by-divine nod before when Cornwall of-hunting for-the-sake he-went-to
et ad quandam ecclesiam orandi causa divertisset, in
and to a-certain church of-praying for-the-sake had-turned-aside in
qua Sanctus Gueriir requiescit, suatim utens — erat enim
which Saint Gueriir rests in-his-way using he-was for

sedulus sanctorum locorum visitator etiam ab infantia, orandi
a-diligent of-holy places visitor even from infancy of-praying
et eleemosynam dandi gratia — diu in oratione tacita
and alms of-giving for-the-sake long in prayer silent
prostratus, ita Domini misericordiam deprecabatur, quatenus
prostrate so of-the-Lord the-mercy he-besought that
omnipotens Deus pro sua immensa clementia stimulos
the-almighty God for his immense clemency the-goads
praesentis et infestantis infirmitatis aliqua qualicunque leviori
of-the-present and troubling infirmity by-some any-kind-of lighter
infirmitate mutaret, ea tamen condicione, ut corporaliter
infirmity might-change on-that yet condition that bodily
exterius illa infirmitas non appareret, ne inutilis et despectus
outwardly that infirmity not should-appear lest useless and despised
esset. Timebat enim lepram aut caecitatem, vel aliquem
he-should-be he-feared for leprosy or blindness or some
talem dolorem, qui homines tam cito et inutiles et
such pain which men so quickly both useless and
despectos suo adventu efficiunt. Oratione autem finita,
despised by-its coming make the-prayer moreover finished
coeptum iter arripuit, et non multo post tempore, ut in
the-begun journey he-took-up and not much after time as in
oratione deprecatus fuerat, se ab illo dolore medicatum
prayer besought he-had himself from that pain healed
esse divinitus sensit, ita ut funditus eradicaretur, quamvis
to-be divinely he-felt so that utterly it-was-rooted-out although
et hunc dolorem in primaevo iuventutis suae flore devota
also this pain in the-early of-youth his flower by-devout
oratione et frequenti Deo supplicatione pius supplex nactus
prayer and by-frequent to-God supplication pious suppliant obtained
fuerat. Nam, ut de benevola mentis suae devotione Deo
he-had for that about the-benevolent of-mind his devotion to-God

succinctim ac breviter, quamvis praeposterato ordine, loquar,
concisely and briefly though in-reversed order I-may-speak
cum in primaevo iuventutis suae flore, antequam propriam
when in the-early of-youth his flower before his-own
coniugem duceret, mentem suam propriam in Dei mandatis
wife he-married mind his own in of-God the-commands
stabilire vellet, et se a carnali desiderio abstinere
to-make-firm he-wished and himself from fleshly desire to-abstain
non posse cerneret, offensam Dei incurrere, si aliquid
not to-be-able he-saw the-offense of-God to-incur if anything
contrarium voluntati illius perageret ⟨metuens⟩, saepissime,
contrary to-the-will of-him he-should-do fearing most-often
galli cantu et matutinis horis clam consurgens,
of-the-cock at-the-crow and at-the-morning hours secretly rising
ecclesias et reliquias sanctorum orandi causa visitabat;
churches and relics of-the-saints of-praying for-the-sake he-visited
ibique diu prostratus orabat, quo Deus Omnipotens, propter
and-there long prostrate he-prayed that God Almighty because-of
suam misericordiam, mentem illius amore suae servitutis
his mercy the-mind of-him in-the-love of-his service
multo robustius per aliquam infirmitatem, quam posset
much more-strongly through some infirmity which he-could
sustinere, non tamen quo eum indignum et inutilem
to-bear not yet such-that him unworthy and useless
in mundanis rebus faceret, ad se penitus convertens
in worldly things it-should-make to himself utterly turning
corroboraret. Cumque hoc saepius magna mentis devotione
might-strengthen and-when this more-often with-great of-mind devotion
ageret, post aliquantulum intervallum praefatum fici dolorem
he-did after a-little interval the-aforesaid of-piles pain
Dei munere incurrit, in quo, diu et aegre per multos
of-God by-the-gift he-incurred in which long and painfully through many

annos laborans, se, etiam de vita, desperabat, quousque,
years laboring himself even of life he-despaired until
oratione facta, a se penitus eum amovit. Sed, proh
prayer made from himself utterly it he-removed but alas
dolor! eo amoto, alius infestior in nuptiis, ut diximus,
grief that removed another more-troublesome at the-wedding as we-have-said
eum arripuit, qui a vigesimo aetatis suae anno usque
him seized which from the-twentieth of-age his year all-the-way
ad quadragesimum quintum eum die noctuque incessabiliter
to the-forty fifth him by-day and-by-night unceasingly
fatigavit; sed, si aliquando Dei misericordia unius diei aut
wearied but if ever of-God by-the-mercy of-one day or
noctis vel etiam unius horae intervallo illa infirmitas seposita
night or even of-one hour by-the-interval that infirmity set-aside
fuerat, timor tamen ac tremor illius execrabilis doloris
had-been the-fear yet and trembling of-that execrable pain
unquam eum non deserit, sed quasi inutilem eum, ut ei
ever him not deserts but as-if useless him as to-him
videtur, in divinis et humanis rebus propemodum effecit.
it-seems in divine and human things almost has-made
Nati sunt ergo ei filii et filiae de supradicta coniuge
born were therefore to-him sons and daughters of the-above-said wife
sua Æthelflæd primogenita, post quam Eadwerd, deinde
his Æthelflæd the-firstborn after whom Edward then
Æthelgeofu, postea Ælfthryth, deinde Æthelweard natus est,
Æthelgifu afterward Ælfthryth then Æthelweard born was
exceptis his, qui in infantia morte praeveniente praeoccupati
excepted those who in infancy death forestalling taken
sunt; †cuius numerus est† Æthelflæd, adveniente matrimonii
were whose number is Æthelflæd arriving of-marriage
tempore, Eadredo, Merciorum comiti, matrimonio copulata
the-time to-Æthelred of-the-Mercians ealdorman in-marriage joined

est; Æthelgeofu quoque monasticae vitae regulis, devota Deo
was Æthelgifu also of-monastic life to-the-rules devoted to-God
virginitate, subiuncta et consecrata, divinum subiit servitium;
in-virginity subjoined and consecrated the-divine undertook service
Æthelweard, omnibus iunior, ludis literariae disciplinae,
Æthelweard than-all younger to-the-games of-literary discipline
divino consilio et admirabili regis providentia, cum
by-divine counsel and by-the-admirable of-the-king providence with
omnibus pene totius regionis nobilibus infantibus et etiam
all almost of-the-whole region the-noble children and also
multis ignobilibus, sub diligenti magistrorum cura traditus
many commoners under the-diligent of-masters care handed-over
est. In qua schola utriusque linguae libri, Latinae scilicet et
was in which school of-each tongue books Latin namely and
Saxonicae, assidue legebantur, scriptioni quoque vacabant, ita,
Saxon assiduously were-read to-writing also they-gave-time so
ut antequam aptas humanis artibus vires haberent, venatoriae
that before suitable for-human arts strength they-had for-hunting
scilicet et ceteris artibus, quae nobilibus conveniunt, in
namely and the-other arts which nobles suit in
liberalibus artibus studiosi et ingeniosi viderentur. Eadwerd
the-liberal arts studious and clever they-were-seen Edward
et Ælfthryth semper in curto regio nutriti cum magna
and Ælfthryth always in the-court royal reared with great
nutritorum et nutricum diligentia, immo cum magno omnium
of-guardians and nurses diligence or-rather with great of-all
amore, et ad omnes indigenas et alienigenas humilitate,
love and towards all natives and foreigners with-humility
affabilitate et etiam lenitate, et cum magna patris
affability and also gentleness and with great to-the-father
subiectione huc usque perseverant. Nec etiam illi sine liberali
subjection hither up-to persevere nor even they without liberal

disciplina inter cetera praesentis vitae studia, quae nobilibus
discipline among the-other of-the-present life pursuits which nobles
conveniunt, otiose et incuriose ⟨vivere⟩ permittuntur, nam
suit idly and carelessly to-live are-permitted for
et psalmos et Saxonicos libros et maxime Saxonica carmina
both the-psalms and Saxon books and most-of-all Saxon songs
studiose didicere, et frequentissime libris utuntur.
studiously they-have-learned and most-frequently books they-use
Interea tamen rex, inter bella et praesentis vitae frequentia
meanwhile yet the-king amid wars and of-the-present life the-frequent
impedimenta, necnon paganorum infestationes et cotidianas
hindrances and-also of-the-pagans the-attacks and the-daily
corporis infirmitates, et regni gubernacula regere, et
of-the-body infirmities both of-the-kingdom the-helm to-steer and
omnem venandi artem agere, aurifices et artifices suos omnes
every of-hunting art to-practice goldsmiths and craftsmen his all
et falconarios et accipitrarios canicularios quoque docere, et
and falconers and hawkers dog-keepers also to-teach and
aedificia supra omnem antecessorum suorum consuetudinem
buildings beyond all of-ancestors his the-custom
venerabiliora et pretiosiora nova sua machinatione facere,
more-venerable and more-precious by-new his contrivance to-make
et Saxonicos libros recitare, et maxime carmina Saxonica
and Saxon books to-recite and most-of-all songs Saxon
memoriter discere, aliis imperare, et solus assidue pro
by-memory to-learn others to-command and alone assiduously according-to
viribus studiosissime non desinebat. Divina quoque ministeria
strength most-zealously not he-ceased divine also services
et missam scilicet cotidie audire, psalmos quosdam et
and mass namely daily to-hear psalms certain and
orationes et horas diurnas et nocturnas celebrare, et
prayers and the-hours daytime and nighttime to-celebrate and

ecclesias nocturno tempore, ut diximus, orandi causa clam
churches in-the-nighttime time as we-have-said of-praying for-the-sake secretly
a suis adire solebat et frequentabat. Eleemosynarum
from his-men to-go-to he-was-wont and he-frequented of-alms
quoque studio et largitati indigenis et advenis omnium
also to-the-pursuit and generosity to-natives and to-strangers of-all
gentium, ac maxima et incomparabili contra omnes homines
nations and to-the-greatest and incomparable towards all men
affabilitate atque iocunditate, et ignotarum rerum investigationi
affability and pleasantness and of-unknown things to-investigation
solerter se †iungebat. Franci autem multi, Frisones, Galli,
skillfully himself he-joined the-Franks moreover many Frisians Gauls
pagani, Britones, et Scotti, Armorici sponte se suo
pagans Britons and Scots Armoricans of-their-own-accord themselves to-his
dominio subdiderant, nobiles scilicet et ignobiles; quos omnes,
dominion had-subjected nobles namely and commoners whom all
sicut suam propriam gentem, secundum suam dignitatem
as his own nation according-to their dignity
regebat, diligebat, honorabat, pecunia et potestate ditabat.
he-ruled loved honored with-money and power enriched
Divinam quoque scripturam a recitantibus indigenis, aut
the-divine also scripture from the-reciting natives or
etiam, si casu quodam aliunde adveniret, cum alienigenis
even if by-chance some from-elsewhere should-come with foreigners
pariter preces audire sedulus et sollicitus solebat. Episcopos
equally prayers to-hear diligent and anxious he-was-wont bishops
quoque suos et omnem ecclesiasticum ordinem, comites
also his and all the-church order ealdormen
ac nobiles suos, ministeriales etiam et omnes familiares
and nobles his officials also and all household
admirabili amore diligebat. Filios quoque eorum, qui in
with-admirable love he-loved the-sons also of-those who in

regali familia nutriebantur, non minus propriis diligens,
the-royal household were-reared not less than-his-own loving
omnibus bonis moribus instituere et literis imbuere solus
in-all good morals to-instruct and with-letters to-imbue alone
die noctuque inter cetera non desinebat. Sed quasi
by-day and-by-night among other-things not he-ceased but as-if
nullam in his omnibus consolationem haberet, et nullam
no in these all consolation he-had and no
aliam intrinsecus et extrinsecus perturbationem pateretur, ita
other inwardly and outwardly disturbance he-suffered so
tamen cotidiana et nocturna anxius tristitia ad Dominum
yet with-daily and nightly anxious sadness to the-Lord
et ad omnes, qui sibi familiari dilectione adsciti forent,
and to all who to-him by-familiar affection admitted were
querelaretur et assiduo gemebat suspirio, eo quod Deus
he-complained and with-assiduous he-groaned sighing for-that that God
Omnipotens eum expertem divinae sapientiae et liberalium
Almighty him devoid of-divine wisdom and of-the-liberal
artium fecisset: in hoc pium et opinatissimum atque
arts had-made in this the-pious and most-renowned and
opulentissimum Salomonem Hebraeorum regem aequiparans,
most-opulent Solomon of-the-Hebrews king equaling
qui primitus, despecta omni praesenti gloria et divitiis,
who first despised all present glory and riches
sapientiam a Deo deposcit, et etiam utramque invenit,
wisdom from God demands and even both found
sapientiam scilicet et praesentem gloriam, sicut scriptum
wisdom namely and present glory as written
est, ‘Quaerite ergo primum regnum Dei et iustitiam
it-is seek therefore first the-kingdom of-God and justice
eius, et haec omnia praestabuntur vobis.’ Sed Deus, Qui
his and these all shall-be-given to-you but God who

est semper inspector internarum mentium, meditationum
is always the-inspector of-inner of-minds meditations
et omnium bonarum voluntatum instigator, necnon etiam,
and of-all good wills the-instigator and-also even
ut habeantur bona desiderata, largissimus administrator,
that may-be-had the-good-things desired most-generous administrator
neque enim unquam aliquem bene velle instigaret, nisi
nor for ever anyone well to-wish would-be-instigate unless
et hoc, quod bene et iuste quisque habere desiderat,
also this which well and justly each to-have desires
largiter administraret, instigavit mentem eius interius, non
generously he-administered instigated the-mind his inwardly not
extrinsecus: sicut scriptum est, 'Audiam, quid loquatur in me
outwardly as written it-is I-shall-hear what speaks in me
dominus Deus.' Coadiutores bonae meditationis suae, qui eum
the-Lord God helpers of-good meditation his who him
in desiderata sapientia adiuvare possent, quo ad concupita
in the-desired wisdom to-help could by-which to the-coveted
perveniret, quandocunque posset, acquireret; qui subinde —
he-might-arrive whenever he-could he-should-acquire who forthwith
velut apis prudentissima, quae primo mane caris e
as-if a-bee most-prudent which first in-the-morning dear from
cellulis consurgens aestivo tempore, per incerta aeris
cells rising in-summer time through the-uncertain of-the-air
itinera cursum veloci volatu dirigens, super multiplices ac
paths the-course with-swift flight directing upon manifold and
diversos herbarum, holerum, fruticum flosculos descendit,
various of-herbs of-vegetables of-shrubs little-flowers descends
probatque quid maxime placuerit atque domum reportat —
and-tests what most-of-all has-pleased and home brings-back

mentis oculos longum dirigit, quaerens extrinsecus quod
of-the-mind the-eyes far directs seeking outwardly what
intrinsecus non habebat, id est in proprio regno suo.
inwardly not he-had that is in his-own kingdom his

§§ 77–80

77–80 · ALFRED'S SCHOLARS AND ASSER

God sends Alfred learned men: Werferth, who translated Gregory's Dialogues, Plegmund, Æthelstan, and Werwulf from Mercia, and Grimbald and John from Gaul. Asser tells how he himself was summoned from St David's, agreed to serve half the year after a long fever, and how the Welsh kings submitted to Alfred for protection.

At tunc Deus quaedam solatia regiae benevolentiae, tam
but then God certain consolations of-the-royal goodwill so
benevolam et iustissimam querelam illius diutius non ferens,
benevolent and most-just complaint of-him longer not bearing
veluti quaedam luminaria, transmisit Werfrithum, scilicet
as-if certain lamps sent Werferth namely
Wigernensis ecclesiae episcopum, in divina scilicet scriptura bene
of-the-Worcester church bishop in divine namely scripture well
eruditum, qui, imperio regis, libros Dialogorum Gregorii
learned who by-the-command of-the-king the-books of-the-Dialogues of-Gregory
papae et Petri sui discipuli de Latinitate primus in Saxonicam
the-pope and of-Peter his disciple from Latin first into the-Saxon
linguam, aliquando sensum ex sensu ponens, elucabratim et
tongue sometimes sense for sense placing laboriously and
elegantissime interpretatus est; deinde Plegmundum, Mercium
most-elegantly interpreted has then Plegmund a-Mercian
genere, Dorobernensis ecclesiae archiepiscopum, venerabilem
by-race of-the-Canterbury church archbishop a-venerable

scilicet virum, sapientia praeditum; Æthelstan quoque et
namely man with-wisdom endowed Æthelstan also and
Werwulfum, sacerdotes et capellanos, Mercios genere, eruditos.
Werwulf priests and chaplains Mercians by-race learned
Quos quatuor Ælfred rex de Mercia ad se advocaverat,
which four Alfred the-king from Mercia to himself had-summoned
et multis honoribus et potestatibus extulit in regno
and with-many honors and powers raised in the-kingdom
Occidentalium Saxonum, exceptis his, quae Plegmundus
of-the-West Saxons excepted those which Plegmund
archiepiscopus et Werfrithus episcopus in Mercia habebant.
the-archbishop and Werferth the-bishop in Mercia had
Quorum omnium doctrina et sapientia regis indesinenter
of-whom all by-the-teaching and wisdom of-the-king unceasingly
desiderium crescebat et implebatur. Nam die noctuque,
the-desire grew and was-fulfilled for by-day and-by-night
quandocunque aliquam licentiam haberet, libros ante se recitare
whenever any leisure he-had books before him to-recite
talibus imperabat — non enim unquam sine aliquo eorum se
to-such he-commanded not for ever without some of-them himself
esse pateretur — quapropter pene omnium librorum notitiam
to-be would-he-suffer wherefore almost of-all books knowledge
habebat, quamvis per se ipsum aliquid adhuc de libris
he-had though by himself self anything yet of books
intelligere non posset. Non enim adhuc aliquid legere inceperat.
to-understand not he-could not for yet anything to-read he-had-begun
Sed, cum adhuc nec in hoc quoque regalis avaritia, sed
but since still not in this also the-royal avarice but
tamen laudabilis, grata esset, legatos ultra mare ad Galliam
yet praiseworthy satisfied was envoys beyond the-sea to Gaul
magistros acquirere direxit, indeque advocavit Grimbaldum,
teachers to-acquire he-directed and-thence summoned Grimbald

sacerdotem et monachum, venerabilem videlicet virum,
a-priest and monk a-venerable namely man
cantatorem optimum, et omni modo ecclesiasticis disciplinis
a-singer excellent and in-every way in-church disciplines
et in divina scriptura eruditissimum, et omnibus bonis
and in divine scripture most-learned and with-all good
moribus ornatum; Iohannem quoque, aeque presbyterum et
morals adorned John also likewise presbyter and
monachum, acerrimi ingenii virum, et in omnibus disciplinis
monk of-most-keen wit a-man and in all disciplines
literatoriae artis eruditissimum, et in multis aliis artibus
of-the-literary art most-learned and in many other arts
artificiosum. Quorum doctrina regis ingenium multum
skilled by-whose teaching of-the-king the-mind much
dilatatum est, et eos magna potestate ditavit et honoravit.
widened was and them with-great power he-enriched and honored
His temporibus ego quoque a rege advocatus de occiduis
in-these times I also by the-king summoned from the-western
et ultimis Britanniae finibus ad Saxoniam adveni, cumque
and farthest of-Britain bounds to Saxony came and-when
per multa terrarum spatia illum adire proposueram, usque
through many of-lands spaces him to-go-to I-had-proposed all-the-way
ad regionem Dexteralium Saxonum, quae Saxonice Suth-Seaxum
to the-region of-the-Right-hand Saxons which in-Saxon Sussex
appellatur, ductoribus eiusdem gentis comitantibus, perveni.
is-called guides of-the-same nation accompanying I-arrived
Ibique illum in villa regia, quae dicitur Dene, primitus
and-there him in the-estate royal which is-called Dean first
vidi. Cumque ab eo benigne susceptus fuissem, inter cetera
I-saw and-when by him kindly received I-had-been among other
sententiarum nostrarum famina, me obnixe rogabat, ut
of-conversations our words me earnestly he-asked that

devoverem me suo servitio et familiaris ei essem,
I-should-devote myself to-his service and familiar to-him I-should-be
et omnia, quae in sinistrali et occidentali Sabrinae parte
and all-things which on the-left and western of-the-Severn side
habebam, pro eo relinquerem: quae etiam maiori mihi
I-had for him I-should-leave which also with-greater to-me
remuneratione reddere pollicebatur. Quod et faceret. Respondi
remuneration to-repay he-promised which also he-would-do I-answered
ego 'Me talia incaute et temerarie promittere non posse.
I myself such-things incautiously and rashly to-promise not to-be-able
Iniustum enim mihi videbatur, illa tam sancta loca, in quibus
unjust for to-me it-seemed those so holy places in which
nutritus et doctus ac coronatus fueram, atque ad ultimum
reared and taught and crowned I-had-been and at the-last
ordinatus, pro aliquo terreno honore et potestate derelinquere,
ordained for any earthly honor and power to-abandon
nisi coactus et compulsus.' Ad quod ille ait: 'Si nec tibi
unless forced and compelled to which he said if neither to-you
hoc suppetat subire, saltem dimidiam partem servitii tui
this be-possible to-undergo at-least the-half part of-service your
mihi accommoda, ita ut per sex menses mecum fueris
to-me grant so that for six months with-me you-shall-have-been
et tantundem in Britannia.' Ad quod ego taliter respondi
and as-many in Britain to which I so answered
'Nec hoc suaviter et temerarie sine consilio meorum
nor this agreeably and rashly without the-counsel of-my-people
posse promittere.' At vero, cum illum meum servitium, sed
to-be-able to-promise but indeed since him my service but
nesciebam quare, desiderare cognoscerem, promisi, me iterum
I-knew-not why to-desire I-perceived I-promised myself again
ad eum post sex menses, sospite vita, reversurum, cum tali
to him after six months safe life about-to-return with such

responso, quod mihi et meis utile ac sibi placabile
an-answer as to-me and to-my-people useful and to-himself acceptable
esset. Cumque hoc sibi responsum videretur probabile,
should-be and-when this to-him the-answer seemed acceptable
dato revertendi pignore statuto tempore, quarto die
given of-returning a-pledge at-the-appointed time on-the-fourth day
ab eo equitantes ad patriam remeavimus. Sed, cum ab
from him riding to the-fatherland we-returned but when from
eo discesseramus, in Wintonia civitate febris infesta me
him we-had-departed in Winchester the-city a-fever troublesome me
arripuit; in qua sedule per duodecim menses et una
seized in which constantly for twelve months and one
hebdomada die noctuque sine aliqua vitae spe laboravi.
week by-day and-by-night without any of-life hope I-labored
Cumque statuto tempore ad eum, sicut promiseram, non
and-when at-the-appointed time to him as I-had-promised not
pervenissem, transmisit ad me indiculos, qui me ad eum
I-had-arrived he-sent to me letters which me to him
equitare festinarent, et causam remorationis perquirerent. Sed,
to-ride should-hasten and the-cause of-the-delay should-inquire but
cum equitare ad eum non possem, alium transmisi ad eum
when to-ride to him not I-could another I-sent to him
indiculum, qui remorationis meae causam illi patefaceret et,
letter which of-the-delay my the-cause to-him should-disclose and
si de illa infirmitate resipiscere possem, me velle implere
if from that infirmity to-recover I-could myself to-wish to-fulfill
quae promiseram, renunciaret. Discedente igitur infirmitate,
what I-had-promised should-announce departing therefore the-infirmity
ex consilio et licentia nostrorum omnium, pro utilitate
from the-counsel and leave of-our-people all for the-benefit
illius sancti loci et omnium in eo habitantium, regi, ut
of-that holy place and of-all in it dwelling to-the-king as

promiseram, eius servitio me devovi ea condicione, ut per
I-had-promised his to-service myself I-devoted on-that condition that for
sex menses omni anno cum eo commanerem, aut, si simul
six months every year with him I-should-stay or if together
possem, sex menses protelare, aut etiam per vices, ut tribus
I-could six months to-prolong or even by turns that for-three
mensibus in Britannia, ut tribus in Saxonia commanerem,
months in Britain that for-three in Saxony I-should-stay
et illa adiuvaretur per †rudimenta Sancti Degui in omni
and it should-be-helped through the-rudiments of-Saint David in every
causa, tamen pro viribus. Sperabant enim nostri, minores
cause yet according-to strength they-hoped for our-people lesser
tribulationes et iniurias ex parte Hemeid regis sustinere,
tribulations and injuries from the-side of-Hyfaidd the-king to-sustain
— qui saepe depraedabatur illud monasterium et parochiam
who often plundered that monastery and the-parish
Sancti Degui, aliquando expulsione illorum antistitum, qui
of-Saint David sometimes by-the-expulsion of-those bishops who
in eo praeessent, sicut et Nobis archiepiscopum, propinquum
in it presided as also Nobis the-archbishop kinsman
meum, et me expulit aliquando sub ipsis, — si ego
my and me he-expelled sometimes under themselves if I
ad notitiam et amicitiam illius regis qualicunque pacto
to the-knowledge and friendship of-that king by-any-kind-of agreement
pervenirem.
should-come
Illo enim tempore et multo ante omnes regiones
at-that for time and much before all the-regions
dexteralis Britanniae partis ad Ælfred regem pertinebant et
of-the-right-hand of-Britain part to Alfred the-king belonged and
adhuc pertinent: Hemeid scilicet, cum omnibus habitatoribus
still belong Hyfaidd namely with all the-inhabitants

Demeticae regionis, sex filiorum Rotri vi compulsus,
of-the-Demetian region of-the-six sons of-Rhodri by-the-force compelled
regali se subdiderat imperio; Houil quoque filius Ris, rex
to-the-royal himself had-subjected empire Hywel also son of-Rhys king
Gleguising, et Brochmail atque Fernmail filii Mouric, reges
of-Glywysing and Brochfael and Fernfael sons of-Meurig kings
Guent, vi et tyrannide Eadred, comitis, et Merciorum
of-Gwent by-the-force and tyranny of-Eadred the-ealdorman and of-the-Mercians
compulsi, suapte eundem expetivere regem, ut dominium
compelled of-their-own-accord the-same sought king that lordship
et defensionem ab eo pro inimicis suis haberent. Helised
and defense from him against enemies their they-might-have Elise
quoque filius Teudubr, rex Brecheniauc, eorundem filiorum
also son of-Tewdwr king of-Brycheiniog of-the-same sons
Rotri vi coactus, dominium regis praefati suapte
of-Rhodri by-force compelled the-lordship of-the-king aforesaid of-his-own-accord
requisivit. Anaraut quoque filius Rotri, cum suis fratribus,
sought Anarawd also son of-Rhodri with his brothers
ad postremum amicitiam Northanhymbrorum deserens, de
at the-last the-friendship of-the-Northumbrians deserting from
qua nullum bonum nisi damnum habuerat, amicitiam
which no good but loss he-had-had the-friendship
regis studiose requirens ad praesentiam illius advenit,
of-the-king zealously seeking to the-presence of-him came
cumque a rege honorifice receptus esset, et ad manum
and-when by the-king honorably received he-had-been and at the-hand
episcopi in filium confirmationis acceptus, maximisque
of-the-bishop as son of-confirmation accepted and-with-the-greatest
donis ditatus, se regis dominio cum omnibus suis
gifts enriched himself of-the-king to-the-lordship with all his-men

eadem condicione subdidit, ut in omnibus regiae voluntati
on-the-same condition subjected that in all-things to-the-royal will
sic oboediens esset, sicut Æthered cum Merciis.
so obedient he-should-be as Æthelred with the-Mercians

§§ 81–87

81–87 · ASSER AT COURT

Asser stays eight months at Leonaford reading to the king, who at Christmas gives him two monasteries, a silk cloak, and incense, and later Exeter. The army besieges Paris; Alfred restores London and entrusts it to Æthelred. When Charles dies, the Frankish kingdom splits into five, though Arnulf keeps the empire. In 887 Alfred begins to read and translate.

Nec in vanum illi omnes regis amicitiam acquisiverunt. Nam,
nor in vain they all of-the-king the-friendship acquired for
qui desideraverunt potestatem terrenam augere, invenerunt;
who desired power earthly to-increase found
qui pecuniam, pecuniam; qui familiaritatem, familiaritatem;
who money money who intimacy intimacy
qui utramque, utramque. Omnes autem habuerunt amorem et
who both both all moreover had love and
tutelam ac defensionem ab omni parte, qua rex seipsum
protection and defense from every side by-which the-king himself
cum suis omnibus defendere potuit. Cum igitur ad eum
with his all to-defend could when therefore to him
advenissem in villa regia, quae dicitur Leonaford, honorabiliter
I-had-come in the-estate royal which is-called Leonaford honorably
ab eo susceptus sum, et cum eo illa vice octo mensibus
by him received I-was and with him at-that time for-eight months
in curto mansi, in quibus recitavi illi libros quoscunque ille
in the-court I-stayed in which I-recited to-him books whatever he

vellet, et quos ad manum haberemus. Nam haec est propria
wished and which at hand we-had for this is the-proper
et usitatissima illius consuetudo die noctuque, inter omnia
and most-customary of-him habit by-day and-by-night amid all
alia mentis et corporis impedimenta, aut per se ipsum
other of-mind and of-body hindrances either by himself self
libros recitare, aut aliis recitantibus audire. Cumque ab eo
books to-recite or others reciting to-hear and-when from him
frequenter licentiam revertendi quaererem et nullo modo
often leave of-returning I-sought and in-no way
impetrare possem, tandem cum et licentiam omnino exposcere
to-obtain I-could at-last when also leave altogether to-demand
statuissem, diluculo vigiliae Natalis Domini advocatus ad
I-had-decided at-dawn of-the-vigil of-the-Nativity of-the-Lord summoned to
eum, tradidit mihi duas epistolas, in quibus erat multiplex
him he-handed-over to-me two letters in which was a-manifold
supputatio omnium rerum, quae erant in duobus monasteriis,
reckoning of-all things which were in the-two monasteries
quae Saxonice cognominantur Cungresbyri et Banuwille, et
which in-Saxon are-named Congresbury and Banwell and
mihi eodem die tradidit illa duo monasteria cum omnibus,
to-me on-the-same day he-handed-over those two monasteries with all-things
quae in eis erant, et sericum pallium valde pretiosum
which in them were and a-silk cloak very precious
et onus viri fortis de incenso, adiciens his verbis
and the-load of-a-man strong of incense adding with-these words
'non ideo dedisse parva illa, quod sequenti tempore
not therefore to-have-given small those-things that in-following time
nollet dare maiora.' Nam sequentis temporis successu ex
he-did-not-wish to-give greater for of-following time in-the-course from
improviso dedit mihi Exanceastre, cum omni parochia, quae ad
the-unforeseen he-gave me Exeter with all the-parish which to

se pertinebat, in Saxonia et in Cornubia, exceptis cotidianis
it belonged in Saxony and in Cornwall excepted daily
donis innumerabilibus in omni genere terrestris divitiae, quae
gifts countless in every kind of-earthly riches which
hoc in loco percensere longum est, ne fastidium legentibus
this in place to-enumerate long is lest disgust to-those-reading
procreent. Sed nullus existimet, pro vana aliqua gloria aut
they-produce but no-one should-think for vain any glory or
adulatione aut maioris honoris quaerendi gratia, me talia
flattery or of-greater honor of-seeking for-the-sake me such-things
hoc in loco dona commemorasse: quod coram Deo nec
this in place gifts to-have-mentioned which before God not
ideo fecisse testor, sed ut nescientibus propalarem,
for-that to-have-done I-testify but that to-those-not-knowing I-might-make-known
quam profusus in largitate ille sit. Tunc confestim dedit
how lavish in generosity he is then at-once he-gave
mihi licentiam equitandi ad illa duo monasteria omnibus
me leave of-riding to those two monasteries with-all
bonis referta, et inde ad propria revertendi.
good-things filled and thence to my-own of-returning
Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclxxxvi, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-eighty-six of-the-nativity
autem Ælfredi trigesimo octavo, saepe memoratus exercitus
moreover of-Alfred thirtieth eighth often mentioned the-army
regionem fugiens iterum et in Occidentalium Francorum
the-region fleeing again and into of-the-West Franks
regionem venit, naves suas intrans in flumen, quod Signe
the-region came ships its entering into the-river which Seine
dicitur, sursum contra longe navigans Parisiam civitatem adiit,
is-called upward against far sailing Paris the-city went-to
et ibi hiemavit, et castra metatus est in utraque parte
and there wintered and camp pitched has on each side

fluminis prope ad pontem, ut transitum pontis civibus
of-the-river near to the-bridge that the-crossing of-the-bridge to-the-citizens
prohiberet — quia illa civitas in medio fluminis sita
it-might-forbid because that city in the-middle of-the-river placed
est in insula parva — obseditque illam civitatem anno illo
is on an-island small and-it-besieged that city in-year that
integro. Sed, Deo misericorditer favente et civibus viriliter
whole but God mercifully favoring and the-citizens manfully
se defendentibus, munitionem irrumpere non potuit.
themselves defending the-fortification to-break-into not it-could
Eodem anno Ælfred, Angulsaxonum rex, post incendia
in-the-same year Alfred of-the-Anglo-Saxons king after the-burnings
urbium stragesque populorum, Lundoniam civitatem honorifice
of-cities and-slaughters of-peoples London the-city honorably
restauravit et habitabilem fecit; quam Ætheredo, Merciorum
restored and habitable made which to-Æthelred of-the-Mercians
comiti, commendavit servandam. Ad quem regem omnes
ealdorman he-entrusted to-be-kept to which king all
Angli et Saxones, qui prius ubique dispersi fuerant aut
the-Angles and Saxons who before everywhere scattered had-been or
cum paganis sub captivitate erant, voluntarie converterunt,
with the-pagans under captivity were voluntarily turned
et suo dominio se subdiderunt.
and to-his dominion themselves subjected
Anno Dominicae Incarnationis dccclxxxvii, nativitatis
in-the-year of-the-Lord's Incarnation eight-hundred-eighty-seven of-the-nativity
autem Ælfredi regis trigesimo nono, supra memoratus
moreover of-Alfred the-king thirtieth ninth above mentioned
paganorum exercitus Parisiam civitatem derelinquens
of-the-pagans army Paris the-city leaving
incolumem, eo quod aliter proficere sibimet non poterat,
unharmed for-that that otherwise to-profit for-itself not it-could

classem suam sub illo ponte sursum contra Signe longe
fleet its under that bridge upward against the-Seine far
remigando, tam diu direxit, donec ad ostium fluminis, quod
by-rowing so long directed until to the-mouth of-the-river which
Materne nominatur, pervenisset; tunc Sigonam deserentes
Marne is-named it-had-arrived then the-Seine deserting
in ostium Materne divertunt, contra quod diu ac longe
into the-mouth of-the-Marne they-turn against which long and far
navigantes, demum non sine labore usque ad locum,
sailing at-last not without labor all-the-way to the-place
qui dicitur Caziei, id est villa regia, pervenerunt. In quo
which is-called Chézy that is the-estate royal they-arrived in which
loco hiemaverunt integro anno. Sequenti anno in ostium
place they-wintered a-whole year in-the-following year into the-mouth
fluminis, quod dicitur Iona, intraverunt, non sine magno
of-the-river which is-called Yonne they-entered not without great
regionis damno, et illic remorati sunt anno uno.
of-the-region loss and there lingered they-have year one
Eodem anno Carolus, Francorum rex, viam universitatis
in-the-same year Charles of-the-Franks king the-way of-the-universe
adiit; sed Earnulf, filius fratris sui, sexta, antequam
went-to but Arnulf the-son of-brother his in-the-sixth before
defunctus esset, hebdomada, illum regno expulerat. Quo
dead he-was week him from-the-kingdom had-expelled whom
statim defuncto, quinque reges ordinati sunt, et regnum
at-once having-died five kings ordained were and the-kingdom
in quinque partibus conscissum est, sed tamen principalis
into five parts torn was but yet the-principal
sedes regni ad Earnulf iuste et merito provenit, nisi
seat of-the-kingdom to Arnulf justly and deservedly came except
solummodo quod in patruum suum indigne peccavit. Ceteri
only that against uncle his unworthily he-sinned the-other

quoque quatuor reges fidelitatem et oboedientiam Earnulfo,
also four kings fealty and obedience to-Arnulf
sicut dignum erat, promiserunt: nullus enim illorum quatuor
as fitting was promised none for of-those four
regum hereditarius illius regni erat in paterna parte,
kings heir of-that kingdom was on the-paternal side
nisi Earnulf solus. Quinque itaque reges confestim, Karolo
except Arnulf alone five and-so kings at-once Charles
moriente, ordinati sunt, sed imperium penes Earnulf remansit.
dying ordained were but the-empire with Arnulf remained
Talis ergo illius regni divisio fuit: nam Earnulf orientales
such therefore of-that kingdom the-division was for Arnulf the-eastern
regiones Hreni fluminis, Hrothuulf quoque internam partem
regions of-the-Rhine river Rudolf also the-inner part
regni accepit, Oda etiam occidentale regnum, Beorngar
of-the-kingdom received Odo also the-western kingdom Berengar
et Witha Langobardiam, nec non et illas regiones, quae in
and Guy Lombardy nor not also those regions which on
illa parte montis sunt. Nec tamen tanta et talia regna
that side of-the-mountain are nor yet so-great and such kingdoms
inter se pacifice servaverunt. Nam bis pleno proelio inter
among themselves peacefully did-they-keep for twice in-full battle among
se belligeravere, et illa regna persaepe devastaverunt
themselves they-warred and those kingdoms very-often laid-waste
invicem, et unusquisque alterum expulit de regno.
mutually and each-one the-other expelled from the-kingdom
Eodem quoque anno, quo ille exercitus Parisiam civitatem
in-the-same also year in-which that army Paris the-city
deserens Caziei adiit, Æthelhelm, comes Wiltunensium,
deserting Chézy went-to Æthelhelm ealdorman of-the-Wiltshire-men
Ælfredi regis et Saxonum eleemosynam Romam duxit.
of-Alfred the-king and of-the-Saxons the-alms to-Rome led

Eodem quoque anno saepe memoratus Ælfred, Angulsaxonum
in-the-same also year often mentioned Alfred of-the-Anglo-Saxons
rex, divino instinctu legere et interpretari simul uno eodemque
king by-divine instinct to-read and to-interpret together on-one and-the-same
die primitus inchoavit. Sed, ut apertius ignorantibus pateat,
day first began but that more-openly to-the-ignorant it-may-be-plain
causam huius tardae inchoationis expedire curabo.
the-cause of-this late beginning to-set-forth I-shall-take-care

§§ 88–90

88–90 · THE KING'S HANDBOOK

One day Alfred asks Asser to copy a passage into his little prayer book; finding no room, Asser starts a new quire, which grows into the king's handbook. Like the penitent thief, Alfred began late to learn, on Saint Martin's day. Asser compares him to a man who must bear the gallows he cannot escape.

Nam cum quodam die ambo in regia cambra resideremus,
for when on-a-certain day both in the-royal chamber we-were-sitting
undecunque, sicut solito, colloquia habentes, ex quodam
from-everywhere as usual conversations having from a-certain
quoddam testimonium libro illi evenit ut recitarem. Quod
a-certain testimony book to-him it-happened that I-should-recite which
cum intentus utrisque auribus audisset et intima mente
when intent with-both ears he-had-heard and with-inmost mind
sollicite perscrutaretur, subito ostendens libellum, quem in
anxiously was-searching suddenly showing the-little-book which in
sinum suum sedulo portabat, in quo diurnus cursus et psalmi
bosom his diligently he-carried in which the-daily course and psalms
quidam atque orationes quaedam, quas ille in iuventute sua
certain and prayers certain which he in youth his

legerat, scripti habebantur, imperavit, quod illud testimonium
had-read written were-held he-commanded that that testimony
in eodem libello literis mandarem. Quod ego audiens et
in the-same little-book to-letters I-should-commit which I hearing and
ingeniosam benevolentiam illius ex parte, atque etiam tam
the-ingenious goodwill of-him in part and also so
devotam erga studium divinae sapientiae voluntatem eius
devoted towards the-study of-divine wisdom the-will his
cognoscens, immensas Omnipotenti Deo grates, extensis ad
recognizing immense to-Almighty God thanks with-stretched to
aethera volis, tacitus quamvis, persolvi, Qui tantam erga
the-sky palms silently though paid who such towards
studium sapientiae devotionem in regio corde inseruerat. Sed,
the-study of-wisdom devotion in the-royal heart had-implanted but
cum nullum locum vacuum in eodem libello reperirem, in
when no place empty in the-same little-book I-found in
quo tale testimonium scribere possem — erat enim omnino
which such a-testimony to-write I-could it-was for altogether
multis ex causis refertus — aliquantisper distuli, et maxime
with-many from causes filled for-a-while I-delayed and most-of-all
quia tam elegans regis ingenium ad maiorem divinorum
because so elegant of-the-king the-mind to greater of-divine
testimoniorum scientiam provocare studebam. Cui, cum me,
testimonies knowledge to-provoke I-was-eager to-whom when me
ut quanto citius illud scriberem, urgeret, inquam: 'placetne
that as-much the-quicker it I-should-write he-urged I-said does-it-please
tibi, quod illud testimonium in aliqua foliuncula segregatim
you that that testimony on some little-leaf separately
scribam? Incognitum est enim, si aliquando aliquod taliter
I-should-write unknown it-is for if ever some such
aut plura reperiamus, quae tibi placuerint, testimonia; quod
or more we-may-find which to-you shall-have-pleased testimonies that

si inopinate evenerit, segregasse gaudebimus.' Quod
if unexpectedly it-shall-have-happened to-have-separated we-shall-rejoice which
ille audiens, 'ratum esse consilium' inquit. Quod ego audiens
he hearing sound to-be the-counsel said which I hearing
et gaudens festinus quaternionem promptum paravi, in cuius
and rejoicing hastily a-quire ready prepared in whose
principio illud non iniussus scripsi, ac in illa eadem die
beginning it not unbidden I-wrote and on that same day
non minus quam tria alia sibi placabilia testimonia, illo
not less than three other to-him pleasing testimonies he
imperante, in eodem quaternione, ut praedixeram, scripsi.
commanding in the-same quire as I-had-foretold I-wrote
Ac deinde cotidie inter nos sermocinando, ad haec
and then daily between us conversing to these-things
investigando aliis inventis aeque placabilibus testimoniis,
investigating others found equally pleasing testimonies
quaternio ille refertus succrevit, nec immerito, sicut scriptum
the-quire that filled grew nor undeservedly as written
est 'super modicum fundamentum aedificat iustus et
it-is upon a-small foundation builds the-just-man and
paulatim ad maiora defluit,' velut apis fertilissima longe
gradually to greater-things flows as-if a-bee most-fertile far
lateque gronnios interrogando discurrens, multimodos divinae
and-wide the-marshes by-questioning running-about the-manifold of-divine
scripturae flosculos inhianter et incessabiliter congregavit,
scripture little-flowers eagerly and unceasingly gathered
quis praecordii sui cellulas densatim replevit.
with-which of-heart his the-cells densely be-filled
Nam primo illo testimonio scripto, confestim legere et in
for at-first that testimony written at-once to-read and in
Saxonica lingua interpretari, atque inde perplures instituere
the-Saxon tongue to-interpret and thence very-many to-instruct

studuit, ac veluti de illo felici latrone cautum est, Dominum
he-was-eager and as-if about that happy thief known it-is the-Lord
Iesum Christum, Dominum suum, immoque omnium, iuxta
Jesus Christ Lord his or-rather of-all beside
se in venerabili sanctae Crucis patibulo pendentem
him on the-venerable of-the-holy Cross gibbet hanging
cognoscente; quo subnixis precibus, inclinatis solummodo
recognizing to-whom with-supported prayers bent only
corporalibus oculis, quia aliter non poterat, erat enim totus
bodily eyes because otherwise not he-could he-was for wholly
confixus clavis, submissa voce clamaret: 'Memento mei, cum
pierced with-nails with-lowered voice he-cried remember me when
veneris in regnum tuum, Christe,' qui Christianae
you-shall-have-come into kingdom your O-Christ who of-the-Christian
fidei rudimenta in gabulo primitus inchoavit discere. Hic
faith the-rudiments on the-gallows first began to-learn this-one
aut aliter, quamvis dissimili modo, in regia potestate
or otherwise though in-unlike way in royal power
sanctae rudimenta scripturae, divinitus instinctus, praesumpsit
the-holy rudiments of-scripture divinely instigated presumed
incipere in venerabili Martini solemnitate. †Quos flosculos
to-begin on the-venerable of-Martin feast which little-flowers
undecunque collectos a quibuslibet magistris discere et in
from-everywhere gathered from any teachers to-learn and into
corpore unius libelli, mixtim quamvis, sicut tunc suppetebat,
the-body of-one little-book mixed though as then it-was-possible
redigere, usque adeo protelavit quousque propemodum ad
to-reduce so far he-prolonged until almost to
magnitudinem unius psalterii perveniret. Quem enchiridion
the-size of-one psalter it-came which enchiridion
suum, id est manualem librum, nominari voluit, eo quod
his that is the-hand book to-be-named he-wished for-that that

ad manum illum die noctuque solertissime habebat; in
at hand it by-day and-by-night most-diligently he-had in
quo non mediocre, sicut tunc aiebat, habebat solatium.
which not moderate as then he-said he-had solace
Sed, sicut a quodam sapiente iamdudum scriptum est
but as by a-certain wise-man long-ago written it-is

invigilant animi, quibus est pia cura regendi,
are-watchful minds to-whom is the-pious care of-ruling

magnopere invigilandum mihi censeo in eo, quod ante aliquam,
greatly to-be-watched to-me I-think in this that before some
quamvis dissimili modo, similitudinem inter illum felicem
though in-unlike way a-likeness between that happy
latronem et regem composuerim: namque patibulum exosum
thief and the-king I-have-set for the-gibbet hateful
est unicuique, ubicunque male habet. Sed quid faciat, si non
is to-each-one wherever badly he-fares but what should-he-do if not
possit se inde eripere aut etiam effugere, vel qualicunque
he-can himself thence to-rescue or even to-escape or by-any-kind-of
arte causam suam meliorare ibidem commorando? Debet ergo,
art cause his to-improve there by-remaining he-ought therefore
velit, nolit, cum moerore et tristitia sufferre, quod patitur.
willing unwilling with sorrow and sadness to-bear what he-suffers

§§ 91–98

Despite illness and invasions Alfred governs, builds towns, halls, and estates, and drives his reluctant nobles to build forts. He founds a monastery at Athelney under John the Old Saxon, where two Gallic monks hire assassins who wound John at the altar; the conspirators are executed. He founds a nunnery at Shaftesbury under his daughter.

Erat itaque rex ille multis tribulationum clavis confossus,
was and-so king that with-many of-tribulations nails pierced
quamvis in regia potestate constitutus; nam a vigesimo
although in royal power set for from the-twentieth
aetatis anno usque ad quadragesimum quintum annum,
of-age year all-the-way to the-forty fifth year
quem nunc agit, gravissima incogniti doloris infestatione
which now he-passes by-the-most-grievous of-unknown pain attack
incessanter fatigatur, ita ut ne unius quidem horae securitatem
unceasingly he-is-wearied so that not of-one even hour the-security
habeat, qua aut illam infirmitatem non sustineat aut sub
he-has in-which either that infirmity not he-endures or under
illius formidine lugubriter prope constitutus non desperet.
of-it the-dread mournfully near set not he-despairs
Praeterea assiduis exterarum gentium infestationibus, quas
moreover by-assiduous of-foreign nations attacks which
sedulo terra marique sine ullius quieti temporis intervallo
constantly by-land and-by-sea without any of-quiet of-time interval
sustinebat, non sine materia inquietabatur. Quid loquar
he-sustained not without cause he-was-disquieted what shall-I-say
de frequentibus contra paganos expeditionibus et bellis et
about the-frequent against the-pagans expeditions and wars and

incessabilibus regni gubernaculis? †De cotidiana nationum,
the-unceasing of-the-kingdom steering about the-daily of-the-nations
quae in Tyrreno mari usque ultimum Hiberniae finem
which in the-Tyrrhenian sea all-the-way-to the-farthest of-Ireland end
habitant? Nam etiam de Hierosolyma ab El⟨ia⟩ patriarcha
dwell for even from Jerusalem by Elias the-patriarch
epistolas et dona illi directas vidimus et legimus. De
letters and gifts to-him directed we-have-seen and read about
civitatibus et urbibus renovandis et aliis, ubi nunquam ante
cities and towns to-be-renewed and others where never before
fuerant, construendis? ⟨De⟩ aedificiis aureis et argenteis
they-had-been to-be-built about buildings of-gold and of-silver
incomparabiliter, illo edocente, fabricatis? De aulis et cambris
incomparably him teaching made about halls and chambers
regalibus, lapideis et ligneis suo iussu mirabiliter constructis?
royal of-stone and of-wood by-his command wonderfully built
De villis regalibus lapideis antiqua positione motatis et in
about estates royal of-stone from-the-ancient position moved and in
decentioribus locis regali imperio decentissime constructis? †Qui
more-fitting places by-royal command most-fittingly built who
maxima, excepto illo dolore, perturbatione et controversia
with-the-greatest excepted that pain disturbance and dispute
suorum, qui nullum aut parvum voluntarie pro communi
of-his-people who no or small voluntarily for the-common
regni necessitate vellent subire laborem. Sed tamen ille
of-the-kingdom need wished to-undergo labor but yet he
solus divino fultus adminiculo susceptum semel regni
alone by-divine supported help the-undertaken once of-the-kingdom
gubernaculum, veluti gubernator praecipuus, navem suam
helm as-if a-helmsman outstanding ship his
multis opibus refertam ad desideratum ac tutum patriae
with-many riches filled to the-desired and safe of-fatherland

suae portum, quamvis cunctis propemodum lassis suis nautis,
his port though all almost weary his sailors
perducere contendit, haud aliter titubare ac vacillare, quamvis
to-bring strove not otherwise to-totter and to-waver though
inter fluctivagos ac multimodos praesentis vitae turbines,
amid the-wave-tossed and manifold of-the-present life whirlwinds
non sinebat. Nam assidue suos episcopos et comites ac
not he-allowed for assiduously his bishops and ealdormen and
nobilissimos, sibique dilectissimos suos ministros, necnon et
most-noble and-to-himself most-dear his thegns and-also also
praepositos, quibus post Dominum et regem omnis totius
reeves to-whom after the-Lord and the-king all of-the-whole
regni potestas, sicut dignum, subdita videtur, leniter docendo,
kingdom power as fitting subjected seems gently by-teaching
adulando, hortando, imperando, ad ultimum inoboedientes, post
by-flattering by-exhorting by-commanding at the-last the-disobedient after
longam patientiam, acrius castigando, vulgarem stultitiam
long patience more-sharply by-chastising the-vulgar folly
et pertinaciam omni modo abominando, ad suam voluntatem
and obstinacy in-every way abominating to his will
et ad communem totius regni utilitatem sapientissime
and to the-common of-the-whole kingdom advantage most-wisely
usurpabat et annectebat. At si inter haec regalia exhortamenta
he-took-over and joined but if amid these royal exhortations
propter pigritiam populi imperata non implentur, aut tarde
because-of the-sloth of-the-people commanded not are-fulfilled or late
incepta tempore necessitatis ad utilitatem exercentium minus
begun in-the-time of-need for the-advantage of-those-exercising less
finita non provenirent, ut de castellis ab eo imperatis
finished not should-come-about as about forts by him commanded
adhuc non inceptis loquar, aut nimium tarde inceptis ad
still not begun I-may-speak or too late begun to

perfectum finem non perductis, et hostiles copiae terra
a-perfect end not brought and hostile forces by-land
marique irrumperent, aut, ut saepe evenit, utraque parte, tunc
and-by-sea should-burst-in or as often happened on-each side then
contradictores imperialium diffinitionum inani poenitentia
the-opponents of-the-imperial decisions with-empty repentance
pene exinaniti verecundabantur. Inanem enim poenitentiam
almost emptied were-ashamed empty for repentance
scriptura teste nomino, qua homines innumerabiles
scripture witnessing I-name by-which men countless
nimio detrimento pluribus insidiis perpetratis saepe perculsi
with-excessive loss very-many plots perpetrated often struck
dolent. Sed quamvis per †hanc rem, heu, proh dolor!
grieve but although through this thing alas alas grief
eulogii miserabiliter contristentur, et perditis eorum patribus,
of-blessing miserably they-be-saddened and for-lost their fathers
coniugibus, liberis, ministris, servis, ancillis, operibus, et omni
wives children thegns slaves maidservants works and all
supellectili flebiliter commoveantur, quid detestabilis iuvat
furniture lamentably they-be-moved what hateful does-help
poenitentia, quando nec occisis suis propinquis succurrere
repentance when neither slain their kinsmen to-succor
valent, nec captivos suos a captivitate exosa redimere, nec
they-are-able nor captives their from captivity hateful to-redeem nor
etiam interdum sibimet, qui evaserint, adiuvare valent,
even sometimes themselves who shall-have-escaped to-help they-are-able
quoniam propriam unde sustentent vitam non habent. Sera
since their-own whence they-may-sustain life not they-have late
igitur poenitentia nimium attriti poenitent, et regalia ⟨se⟩
therefore repentance exceedingly worn-down they-repent and the-royal themselves
praecepta incuriose despexisse dolent, et regalem sapientiam
precepts carelessly to-have-despised grieve and the-royal wisdom

totis vocibus collaudant, et quod ante refutaverunt, totis
with-all voices they-praise and what before they-rejected with-all
viribus implere promittunt, id est de arcibus construendis
strength to-fulfill they-promise that is about citadels to-be-built
et ceteris communibus communis regni utilitatibus.
and other common of-the-common kingdom advantages
De voto quoque et proposito excellentissimae meditationis
about the-vow also and purpose of-the-most-excellent meditation
suae, quam semper inter prospera et adversa sua nullo
his which always amid prosperous and adverse his in-no
modo praetermittere poterat, praetereundum esse hoc in loco
way to-pass-over he-could to-be-passed-by to-be this in place
utiliter non existimo. Nam, cum de necessitate animae suae
usefully not I-think for when about the-need of-soul his
solito cogitaret, inter cetera diuturna et nocturna bona,
as-usual he-thought among other daily and nightly good-things
quibus assidue et maxime studebat, duo monasteria
to-which assiduously and most-of-all he-applied-himself two monasteries
construi imperavit: unum monachorum in loco, qui dicitur
to-be-built he-commanded one of-monks in the-place which is-called
Æthelingaeg, quod permaxima gronna paludosissima et
Athelney which by-very-great marsh most-swampy and
intransmeabili et aquis undique circumcingitur, ad quod nullo
impassable and waters on-all-sides is-girded to which in-no
modo aliquis accedere potest nisi cauticis, aut etiam per
way anyone to-approach can except by-boats or even through
unum pontem, qui inter duas arces operosa protelatione
one bridge which between two citadels with-laborious extension
constructus est: in cuius pontis occidentali limite arx
built is at whose of-the-bridge western end a-citadel
munitissima praefati regis imperio pulcherrima operatione
most-fortified of-the-aforesaid king by-command with-most-beautiful work

consita est; in quo monasterio diversi generis monachos
placed is in which monastery of-various kind monks
undique congregavit et in eodem collocavit.
from-everywhere he-gathered and in the-same placed
Nam primitus, quia nullum de sua propria gente nobilem
for at-first because none from his own nation a-noble
ac liberum hominem, nisi infantes, qui nihil boni eligere nec
and free man except children who nothing good to-choose nor
mali respuere pro teneritudine invalidae aetatis adhuc possunt,
evil to-reject for the-tenderness of-weak age yet can
qui monasticam voluntarie vellet subire vitam, habebat;
who the-monastic voluntarily wished to-undergo life he-had
nimirum quia per multa retroacta annorum curricula
surely because through many past of-years courses
monasticae vitae desiderium ab illa tota gente, nec non et
of-monastic life the-desire from that whole nation nor not also
a multis aliis gentibus, funditus desierat, quamvis perplurima
from many other nations utterly had-ceased although very-many
adhuc monasteria in illa regione constructa permaneant,
still monasteries in that region built remain
nullo tamen regulam illius vitae ordinabiliter tenente,
none yet the-rule of-that life in-orderly-fashion holding
nescio quare, aut pro alienigenarum infestationibus, qui
I-know-not why either because-of of-foreigners the-attacks who
saepissime terra marique hostiliter irrumpunt, aut etiam
most-often by-land and-by-sea hostilely burst-in or even
pro nimia illius gentis in omni genere divitiarum
because-of the-excessive of-that nation in every kind of-riches
abundantia, propter quam multo magis id genus despectae
abundance because-of which much more that kind of-despised

monasticae vitae fieri existimo; ideo diversi generis
monastic life to-come-about I-think therefore of-various kind
monachos in eodem monasterio congregare studuit.
monks in the-same monastery to-gather he-was-eager
Primitus Iohannem, presbyterum ⟨et⟩ monachum, scilicet
at-first John presbyter and monk namely
Eald-saxonum genere, abbatem constituit; deinde ultramarinos
of-the-Old-Saxons by-race abbot he-appointed then from-overseas
presbyteros quosdam et diaconos. Ex quibus, cum nec
presbyters certain and deacons of whom since not
adhuc tantum numerum, quantum vellet, haberet, comparavit
yet so-great a-number as he-wished he-had he-bought
etiam quamplurimos eiusdem gentis Gallicae, ex quibus
also very-many of-the-same nation Gallic of whom
quosdam infantes in eodem monasterio edoceri imperavit,
certain children in the-same monastery to-be-taught he-commanded
et subsequenti tempore ad monachicum habitum sublevari.
and in-subsequent time to the-monastic habit to-be-raised
In quo etiam monasterio unum paganicae gentis edoctum
in which also monastery one of-pagan nation taught
in monachico habitu degentem, iuvenem admodum, vidimus,
in monastic habit living a-youth very we-have-seen
non ultimum scilicet eorum.
not the-last namely of-them
Facinus quoque in eodem monasterio quodam tempore
a-crime also in the-same monastery at-a-certain time
perpetratum muti taciturnitate silentii oblivioni ⟨non⟩
perpetrated of-the-dumb by-the-taciturnity of-silence to-oblivion not
traderem, quamvis indignum facinus est, quia per totam
should-I-hand-over although unworthy crime it-is because through all
scripturam impiorum turpia facta inter venerabilia iustorum,
scripture of-the-impious the-base deeds among the-venerable of-the-just

sicut zizania et lolium in tritici segetibus, interseminantur:
as tares and darnel in the-wheat crops are-sown-among
bona scilicet ut laudentur, sequantur, aequiparentur,
the-good namely that they-may-be-praised may-be-followed may-be-equaled
sectatores quoque eorum omni honore venerabili digni
the-followers also their with-all honor venerable worthy
habeantur; mala vero ⟨ut⟩ vituperentur, execrentur, et ut
be-held the-evil but that they-may-be-blamed may-be-cursed and that
omnino effugiantur, imitatores quoque eorum omni odio et
altogether they-may-be-fled the-imitators also their with-all hatred and
despectione ac vindicta corripiantur.
contempt and vengeance may-be-rebuked
Nam quodam tempore, cum instinctu diabolico quidam
for at-a-certain time when by-instigation devilish a-certain
sacerdos et diaconus, Gallici genere, ex praefatis monachis,
priest and deacon Gallic by-race of the-aforesaid monks
invidia quadam excitati contra suum abbatem praefatum
by-envy certain stirred against their abbot the-aforesaid
Iohannem, nimium latenter in tantum amaricati sunt, ut
John exceedingly secretly in so-much embittered were that
Iudaico more dominum suum dolo circumvenirent et
in-Jewish manner lord their by-guile they-should-circumvent and
proderent. Nam duos eiusdem gentis Gallicae servulos praemio
betray for two of-the-same nation Gallic little-slaves by-reward
conductos ita fraudulenter docuerunt, ut nocturno tempore,
hired so deceitfully they-taught that in-the-night time
cum omnes delectabili corporis quiete graviter dormirent,
when all with-the-delightful of-the-body rest heavily slept
patefactam armati intrarent ecclesiam; quam post se iterum
the-opened armed they-should-enter church which behind them again
solito more clauderent et unicum abbatis adventum in
in-the-usual manner they-should-close and the-sole of-the-abbot coming in

ea absconditi praestolarentur. Cumque solus solito ⟨more⟩
it hidden they-should-await and-when alone in-usual manner
orandi causa ecclesiam latenter intraret, et ante sanctum
of-praying for-the-sake the-church secretly he-entered and before the-holy
altare flexis ad terram genubus se inclinaret, hostiliter
altar bent to the-earth knees himself should-bow hostilely
irruentes in eum, tunc eum ibidem occiderent. Cuius corpus
rushing upon him then him there they-should-kill whose body
exanime inde trahentes ante ostium cuiusdam meretricis,
lifeless thence dragging before the-door of-a-certain harlot
quasi illic occisus esset in meretricando, iactarent.
as-if there slain he-had-been in whoring they-should-throw
Quod etiam machinaverunt, crimen crimini addentes, sicut
which also they-contrived crime to-crime adding as
dictum est: 'Et erit novissimus error peior priore.' Sed
said it-is and shall-be the-last error worse than-the-first but
divina misericordia, quae semper innocentibus solet subvenire,
divine mercy which always the-innocent is-wont to-succor
impiam impiorum meditationem maxima ex parte frustrata
the-impious of-the-impious design for-the-greatest in part frustrated
est, quo non per omnia evenirent, sicut proposuerant.
has so-that not in all-things it-should-turn-out as they-had-proposed
Omni itaque mala doctrina a malis doctoribus malis auditoribus
all and-so evil teaching by evil teachers to-evil hearers
elucubratim exposita et condicta, nocte adveniente atque
laboriously expounded and agreed-upon night arriving and
suppetenti, et impunitate promissa, latrunculi duo armati in
being-available and impunity promised the-little-robbers two armed in
ecclesia ⟨se⟩ concluserunt, adventum abbatis praestolantes.
the-church themselves shut the-coming of-the-abbot awaiting
Cumque media nocte Iohannes solito ⟨more⟩ furtim,
and-when in-the-middle-of the-night John in-usual manner stealthily

nemine sciente, orandi gratia ecclesiam intrasset et flexis
no-one knowing of-praying for-the-sake the-church had-entered and with-bent
genibus ante altare incurvaret, tunc duo illi latrunculi ex
knees before the-altar was-bowing then two those little-robbers from
improviso dispoliatis gladiis in eum irrumpunt et crudelibus
the-unforeseen drawn swords upon him burst and with-cruel
afficiunt vulneribus. Sed ille ut solito ac semper acris ingenio
afflict wounds but he as usual and always keen in-wit
et, ut audivimus de eo a quibusdam referentibus, bellicosae
and as we-have-heard about him from some relating of-the-warlike
artis non expers, si in meliori disciplina non studeret,
art not without-experience if in a-better discipline not he-had-studied
statim ut sonitus latronum audivit, priusquam videret, insurgens
at-once as the-sound of-the-robbers he-heard before he-saw rising
acriter in eos, antequam vulneratur, et vociferans, quantum
fiercely against them before he-is-wounded and shouting as-much-as
poterat reluctabatur, inclamitans daemones esse et non
he-could resisted crying-out demons they-were and not
homines; non enim aliter sciebat, quia nec hoc homines
men not for otherwise he-knew because not-even this men
ausos esse existimabat. Vulneratus est tamen antequam
dared to-have he-thought wounded was yet before
sui advenirent. Sui ergo hoc rumore expergefacti
his-people arrived his-people therefore by-this noise awakened
et etiam, audito daemonum nomine, perterriti utrique et
and also heard of-demons the-name terrified both and
inexpertes, et etiam illi, Iudaico more, domini sui proditores,
inexperienced and also those in-Jewish manner of-lord their the-betrayers
hinc inde ad ecclesiae ostia concurrunt, sed antequam
from-this-side and-that to of-the-church the-doors run-together but before
advenirent, latrunculi praecipiti cursu ad proximantia sibi
they-arrived the-little-robbers with-headlong course to the-nearby to-them

gronnae latibula, semivivum abbatem relinquentes, confugiunt.
of-the-marsh hiding-places the-half-alive abbot leaving flee
Monachi vero seniorem suum semivivum colligentes, cum
the-monks but elder their half-alive gathering with
gemitu et moerore domum reportaverunt, sed nec etiam
groaning and sorrow home carried but not even
illi dolosi minus lachrymabantur innocentibus. Sed Dei
those deceitful less wept than-the-innocent but of-God
misericordia tantum facinus impunitum fieri non permittente,
the-mercy so-great a-crime unpunished to-be not permitting
latrunculi, qui hoc perpetraverunt, omnes tanti sceleris
the-little-robbers who this perpetrated all of-so-great crime
persuasores capti ligatique per varia tormenta morte
the-persuaders seized and-bound through various torments by-death
turpissima periere. His ita relatis, ad incepta redeamus.
most-shameful perished these-things so told to the-things-begun let-us-return
Aliud quoque monasterium iuxta orientalem portam Sceftesburg,
another also monastery beside the-eastern gate of-Shaftesbury
habitationi sanctimonialium habile, idem praefatus rex aedificari
for-the-dwelling of-nuns suitable the-same aforesaid king to-be-built
imperavit; in quo propriam filiam suam Æthelgeofu, devotam
commanded in which his-own daughter his Æthelgifu a-devoted
Deo virginem, abbatissam constituit, cum qua etiam aliae
to-God virgin abbess he-appointed with whom also other
multae nobiles moniales in monastica vita Deo servientes in
many noble nuns in monastic life God serving in
eodem monasterio habitant. Quae duo monasteria terrarum
the-same monastery dwell which two monasteries of-lands
possessionibus et omnibus divitiis locupletatim ditavit.
with-possessions and all riches abundantly he-enriched

§§ 99–102

Alfred vows half his service and wealth to God. He divides his revenue: half for secular uses, split among his thegns, who serve one month in three, his craftsmen, and foreign visitors; and half for God, split among the poor, his two monasteries, his school, and churches throughout Britain and beyond.

His ita diffinitis, solito suo more intra semetipsum
these-things so defined in-usual his manner within himself
cogitabat, quid adhuc addere potuisset, quod plus placeret
he-thought what still to-add he-could which more might-please
ad piam meditationem; non inaniter incepta, utiliter inventa,
to pious meditation not emptily begun usefully found
utilius servata est. Nam iamdudum in lege scriptum audierat,
more-usefully kept was for long-ago in the-law written he-had-heard
†Dominum decimam sibi multipliciter redditurum promisisse
the-Lord the-tenth to-him manifold about-to-repay to-have-promised
atque fideliter servasse, decimamque sibi multipliciter
and faithfully to-have-kept and-the-tenth to-him manifold
redditurum fuisse. Hoc exemplo instigatus et antecessorum
about-to-repay to-have-been this by-example urged and of-the-ancestors
morem volens transcendere, dimidiam servitii sui partem,
the-custom wishing to-surpass the-half of-service his part
diurni scilicet et nocturni temporis, nec non etiam
of-the-daytime namely and of-the-nighttime time nor not also
dimidiam partem omnium divitiarum, quae annualiter ad eum
the-half part of-all riches which yearly to him
cum iustitia moderanter acquisitae pervenire consueverant, Deo
with justice moderately acquired to-come had-been-wont to-God
devote et fideliter toto cordis affectu pius meditator se
devoutly and faithfully with-the-whole of-heart affection the-pious meditator himself

daturum spopondit; quod et quantum potest humana discretio
about-to-give promised which also as-much-as can human discretion
discernere et servare, subtiliter ac sapienter adimplere studuit.
to-discern and to-keep subtly and wisely to-fulfill he-was-eager
Sed ut solito suo more cautus evitaret, quod in alio divinae
but that in-usual his manner cautious he-might-avoid what in another of-divine
scripturae loco cautum est: 'Si recte offeras, recte autem non
scripture place warned is if rightly you-offer rightly but not
dividas, peccas,' quod Deo libenter devoverat quomodo recte
you-divide you-sin what to-God gladly he-had-vowed how rightly
dividere posset, cogitavit, et, ut dixit Salomon, 'Cor regis
to-divide he-could he-thought and as said Solomon the-heart of-the-king
in manu Domini,' id est consilium; consilio divinitus invento
in the-hand of-the-Lord that is counsel by-counsel divinely found
omnium uniuscuiusque anni censuum successum bifarie
of-all of-each year of-the-revenues the-income in-two-ways
primitus ministros suos dividere aequali lance imperavit.
first thegns his to-divide in-equal balance he-commanded
His ita divisis, partem primam secularibus negotiis pertinere
these-things so divided the-part first to-secular affairs to-pertain
addixit, quam etiam in tribus partibus sequestrari praecepit,
he-assigned which also into three parts to-be-separated he-commanded
cuius primam divisionis partem suis bellatoribus annualiter
of-which the-first of-the-division part to-his warriors yearly
largiebatur, item suis ministris nobilibus, qui in curto regio
he-bestowed likewise to-his thegns noble who in the-court royal
vicissim commorabantur, in pluribus ministrantes ministeriis.
by-turns stayed in many serving ministries
Ita enim ordinabiliter agebatur regalis familiaritas tribus
so for in-orderly-fashion was-conducted the-royal household in-three
omni tempore vicissitudinibus: in tribus namque cohortibus
at-every time alternations in three for cohorts

praefati regis satellites prudentissime dividebantur, ita ut
of-the-aforesaid king the-attendants most-prudently were-divided so that
prima cohors uno mense in curto regio die noctuque
the-first cohort for-one month in the-court royal by-day and-by-night
administrans commoraretur, menseque finito et adveniente
serving stayed and-the-month finished and arriving
alia cohorte, prima domum redibat, et ibi duobus,
the-other cohort the-first home returned and there for-two
propriis quivis necessitatibus studens, commorabatur mensibus.
its-own each needs attending stayed months
Secunda itaque cohors mense peracto, adveniente tertia,
the-second and-so cohort the-month completed arriving the-third
domum redibat, ut ibi duobus commoraretur mensibus.
home returned that there for-two it-might-stay months
Sed et illa, finito unius mensis ministerio et adveniente
but also that finished of-one month the-service and arriving
prima cohorte, domum redibat, ibidem commoratura duobus
the-first cohort home returned there about-to-stay for-two
mensibus. Et hoc ordine omnibus vitae praesentis temporibus
months and in-this order in-all of-life present times
talium vicissitudinum in regali curto rotatur administratio.
of-such alternations in the-royal court is-rotated the-administration
Talibus itaque primam de tribus praedictis partibus partem,
to-such and-so the-first of the-three aforesaid parts part
unicuique tamen secundum propriam dignitatem et etiam
to-each-one yet according-to his-own dignity and also
secundum proprium ministerium, largiebatur; secundam
according-to his-own ministry he-bestowed the-second
autem operatoribus, quos ex multis gentibus collectos et
moreover to-the-workmen whom from many nations gathered and
comparatos propemodum innumerabiles habebat, in omni
bought almost countless he-had in every

terreno aedificio edoctos: tertiam autem eiusdem partem
earthly building skilled the-third moreover of-the-same part
advenis ex omni gente ad eum advenientibus longe
to-foreigners from every nation to him coming far
propeque positis et pecuniam ab illo exigentibus, etiam et
and-near placed and money from him demanding also and
non exigentibus, unicuique secundum propriam dignitatem,
not demanding to-each-one according-to his-own dignity
mirabili dispensatione laudabiliter et, sicut scriptum est
with-wonderful dispensation praiseworthily and as written it-is
'Hilarem datorem diligit Deus,' hilariter impendebat.
a-cheerful giver loves God cheerfully he-paid-out
Secundam vero partem omnium divitiarum suarum, quae
the-second but part of-all riches his which
annualiter ad eum ex omni censu perveniebant et in
yearly to him from every revenue came and in
fisco reputabantur, sicut iam paulo ante commemoravimus,
the-treasury were-reckoned as already a-little before we-have-mentioned
plena voluntate Deo devovit, et in quatuor partibus
with-full will to-God he-vowed and into four parts
aequis etiam curiose suos ministros illam dividere imperavit,
equal also carefully his thegns it to-divide he-commanded
ea condicione, ut prima pars illius divisionis pauperibus
on-that condition that the-first part of-that division to-the-poor
uniuscuiusque gentis, qui ad eum veniebant, discretissime
of-each nation who to him came most-discreetly
erogaretur. Memorabat etiam in hoc, quantum humana
should-be-paid-out he-remembered also in this as-much-as human
discretio custodire poterat, illius sancti papae Gregorii
discretion to-keep could of-that holy pope Gregory
observandam esse sententiam, qua discretam mentionem
to-be-observed to-be the-sentence by-which discreet mention

dividendae eleemosynae ita dicens agebat: 'Nec parvum
to-be-divided of-alms so saying he-made not little
cui multum, nec multum cui parvum, nec nihil cui
to-whom much nor much to-whom little nor nothing to-whom
aliquid, nec aliquid cui nihil.' Secundam autem duobus
something nor something to-whom nothing the-second moreover to-the-two
monasteriis, quae ipse fieri imperaverat, et servientibus in
monasteries which he to-be-made had-commanded and to-those-serving in
his Deo, de quibus paulo ante latius disseruimus; tertiam
them God about which a-little before more-widely we-have-discoursed the-third
scholae, quam ex multis suae propriae gentis nobilibus et
to-the-school which from many of-his own nation nobles and
etiam pueris ignobilibus studiosissime congregaverat; quartam
also boys commoners most-zealously he-had-gathered the-fourth
circum finitimis in omni Saxonia et Mercia monasteriis,
round-about to-the-neighboring in all Saxony and Mercia monasteries
et etiam quibusdam annis per vices in Britannia et Cornubia,
and also in-some years by turns in Britain and Cornwall
Gallia, Armorica, Northanhymbris, et aliquando etiam in
Gaul Armorica Northumbria and sometimes also in
Hybernia, ecclesiis et servis Dei inhabitantibus, secundum
Ireland to-the-churches and servants of-God dwelling according-to
possibilitatem suam, aut ante distribuit, aut sequenti tempore
possibility his either before he-distributed or in-following time
erogare proposuit, vita sibi et prosperitate salva.
to-pay-out he-proposed life to-him and prosperity safe

§§ 103–106

103–106 · THE CANDLES AND THE JUDGES

To measure the half of his time vowed to God, Alfred has six candles made to burn twenty-four hours, sheltered in a lantern of wood and horn. He also attends carefully to judgments, questioning unjust judges and ordering ealdormen and reeves to learn to read or give up office; many, old and young, take up reading.

His ita ordinabiliter ab eodem rege dispositis, memor
these-things so in-orderly-fashion by the-same king arranged mindful
illius divinae scripturae sententiae, qua dicitur: 'Qui vult
of-that of-divine scripture sentence by-which is-said who wishes
eleemosynam dare, a semet ipso debet incipere,' etiam
alms to-give from himself self ought to-begin also
quid a proprio corporis sui et mentis servitio Deo
what from the-proper of-body his and of-mind service to-God
offerret, prudenter excogitavit; nam non minus de hac
he-should-offer prudently he-devised for not less about this
re quam de externis divinis Deo offerre proposuit,
thing than about external divine-things to-God to-offer he-proposed
quin etiam dimidiam partem servitii mentis et corporis,
but also the-half part of-the-service of-mind and of-body
in quantum infirmitas et possibilitas atque suppetentia
in as-much-as infirmity and possibility and means
permitteret, diurno scilicet ac nocturno tempore, suapte
should-permit in-daytime namely and in-nighttime time of-his-own-accord
totisque viribus se redditurum Deo spopondit. Sed quia
and-with-all strength himself about-to-render to-God he-promised but because
distantiam nocturnarum horarum omnino propter tenebras,
the-distinction of-the-night hours altogether because-of the-darkness
et diurnarum propter densitatem saepissime pluviarum et
and of-the-day because-of the-density most-often of-rains and

nubium aequaliter dignoscere non poterat, excogitare coepit,
of-clouds equally to-discern not he-could to-devise he-began
qua ratione fixa et sine ulla haesitatione hunc promissum
by-what method fixed and without any hesitation this promised
voti sui tenorem leto tenus incommutabiliter, Dei fretus
of-vow his course to-death as-far-as unchangeably of-God relying
misericordia, conservare posset.
on-the-mercy to-keep he-might-be-able
His aliquandiu excogitatis, tandem, invento utili et
these-things for-some-time devised at-last found a-useful and
discreto consilio, suos capellanos ceram offerre sufficienter
discreet counsel his chaplains wax to-offer sufficiently
imperavit, quam adductam ad denarios pensari in
he-commanded which brought by pennies to-be-weighed in
bilibri praecepit; cumque tanta cera mensurata fuisset,
a-two-pound-scale he-ordered and-when so-much wax measured had-been
quae septuaginta duos denarios pensaret, sex candelas,
as seventy two pennies weighed six candles
unamquamque aequa lance, inde capellanos facere iussit, ut
each-one in-equal balance thence the-chaplains to-make he-ordered that
unaquaeque candela duodecim uncias pollicis in se signatas
each candle twelve inches of-the-thumb on itself marked
in longitudine haberet. Itaque hac reperta ratione, sex illae
in length should-have and-so this found method six those
candelae per viginti quatuor horas die nocteque sine
candles through twenty four hours by-day and-by-night without
defectu coram sanctis multorum electorum Dei reliquiis, quae
failure before the-holy of-many chosen of-God relics which
semper eum ubique comitabantur, ardentes lucescebant. Sed
always him everywhere accompanied burning shone but
cum aliquando per diem integrum et noctem ad eandem
when sometimes through a-day whole and night to the-same

illam horam, qua anteriori vespera accensae fuerant,
that hour in-which on-the-previous evening lit they-had-been
candelae ardendo lucescere non poterant, nimirum ventorum
the-candles by-burning to-shine not could surely of-winds
violentia inflante, quae aliquando per ecclesiarum ostia
the-violence blowing which sometimes through of-churches the-doors
et fenestrarum, maceriarum quoque atque tabularum, vel
and of-windows of-walls also and of-boards or
frequentes parietum rimulas, nec non et tentoriorum tenuitates,
the-frequent of-walls little-cracks nor not also of-tents the-thinness
die noctuque sine intermissione flabat, exardescere citius
by-day and-by-night without intermission blew to-burn-out more-quickly
plus debito ante eandem horam finiendo cursum suum
more than-due before the-same hour by-finishing course their
cogebantur, excogitavit, unde talem ventorum sufflationem
they-were-compelled he-devised whence such of-winds blowing
prohibere potuisset, consilioque artificiose atque sapienter
to-prevent he-could and-counsel skillfully and wisely
invento, laternam ex lignis et bovinis cornibus pulcherrime
found a-lantern from wood and of-oxen horns most-beautifully
construere imperavit. Bovina namque cornua alba ac in una
to-construct he-commanded oxen's for horns white and in one
tenuiter dolabris erasa non minus vitreo vasculo elucent.
thinly with-planes shaved not less than-a-glass little-vessel shine
Quae itaque laterna mirabiliter ex lignis et cornibus, ut
which and-so lantern wonderfully from wood and horns as
ante diximus, facta, noctuque candela in eam missa, exterius
before we-have-said made and-by-night a-candle into it put outwardly
ut interius tam lucida ardebat, nullis ventorum flaminibus
as inwardly so bright burned by-no of-winds blasts
impedita, quia valvam ad ostium illius laternae ex cornibus
hindered because a-door at the-opening of-that lantern from horns

idem fieri imperaverat. Hoc itaque machinamento ita
the-same to-be-made he-had-commanded this and-so contrivance so
facto, sex candelae, unaquaeque post alteram, per viginti
made six candles each after the-other through twenty
quatuor horas sine intermissione nihil citius, nihil tardius
four hours without intermission nothing quicker nothing slower
lucescebant. Quibus extinctis, aliae incendebantur.
shone which extinguished others were-lit
His ita ordinabiliter per omnia digestis, dimidiam, sicut
these-things so in-orderly-fashion through all-things arranged the-half as
Deo devoverat, servitii sui partem custodire cupiens, et
to-God he-had-vowed of-service his part to-keep desiring and
eo amplius augere, in quantum possibilitas aut suppetentia,
by-that more to-increase in as-much-as possibility or means
immo etiam infirmitas, permitteret, taediosus examinandae in
or-rather even infirmity should-permit painstaking of-to-be-examined in
iudiciis veritatis arbiter existebat, et in hoc maxime propter
judgments of-truth the-arbiter he-stood-forth and in this most-of-all because-of
pauperum curam, quibus die noctuque inter cetera praesentis
of-the-poor the-care to-whom by-day and-by-night among other of-the-present
vitae debita mirabiliter incumbebat. Nam in toto illo regno
life duties wonderfully he-applied-himself for in all that kingdom
praeter illum solum pauperes aut nullos aut etiam paucissimos
besides him alone the-poor either none or even very-few
habebant adiutores; nimirum quia etiam pene omnes illius
had helpers surely because even almost all of-that
regionis potentes et nobiles ad secularia magis quam ad
region the-powerful and nobles to secular more than to
divina mentem declinaverant negotia: magis enim unusquisque
divine the-mind had-turned affairs more for each-one
†speciali etiam in secularibus negotiis, quam communi.
special even in secular affairs than common

Studebat ⟨is⟩ quoque in iudiciis etiam propter nobilium et
he-applied-himself he also in judgments also for of-the-nobles and
ignobilium suorum utilitatem, qui saepissime in contionibus
of-the-commoners his the-benefit who most-often in the-assemblies
comitum et praepositorum pertinacissime inter se
of-the-ealdormen and of-the-reeves most-obstinately among themselves
dissentiebant, ita ut pene nullus eorum, quicquid a comitibus
disagreed so that almost none of-them whatever by the-ealdormen
et praepositis iudicatum fuisset, verum esse concederet.
and reeves judged had-been true to-be would-grant
Qua pertinaci dissensione obstinatissime compulsi, regis
by-which obstinate dissension most-stubbornly compelled of-the-king
subire iudicium singuli subarabant, quod et confestim
to-undergo the-judgment each pledged which also at-once
ab utraque parte implere festinabant. Sed tamen ille, qui
on each side to-fulfill they-hastened but yet he who
in sua parte aliquam de illa causa iniustitiam fieri
on his side some in that cause injustice to-be-done
cognosceret, ad talis iudicis iudicium, contra voluntatem
knew to such of-a-judge the-judgment against will
tamen, quamvis per vim †lege et stipulatione venire coactus
yet though by force by-law and stipulation to-come compelled
esset, voluntarie nolebat accedere. Sciebat enim ibidem
he-had-been voluntarily was-unwilling to-approach he-knew for there
nihil ex sua malitia confestim posse delitescere; nimirum
nothing of his malice at-once to-be-able to-lie-hidden surely
erat namque rex ille in exequendis iudiciis, sicut in ceteris
was for king that in executing judgments as in the-rest
aliis omnibus rebus, discretissimus indagator. Nam omnia
other all things a-most-discerning investigator for all
pene totius suae regionis iudicia, quae in absentia sua
almost of-the-whole his region the-judgments which in absence his

fiebant, sagaciter investigabat, qualia fierent, iusta aut etiam
were-made shrewdly he-investigated of-what-sort they-were just or even
iniusta, aut vero si aliquam in illis iudiciis iniquitatem
unjust or indeed if any in those judgments iniquity
intelligere posset, leniter utens suatim illos ipsos iudices,
to-understand he-could gently using in-his-way those very judges
aut per se ipsum aut per alios suos fideles quoslibet
either through himself self or through others his faithful any
interrogabat, quare tam nequiter iudicassent, utrum per
he-asked why so wickedly they-had-judged whether through
ignorantiam aut propter aliam quamlibet malevolentiam, id
ignorance or because-of other any malevolence that
est utrum pro aliquorum amore vel timore aut aliorum odio
is whether for of-some love or fear or of-others hatred
aut etiam pro alicuius pecuniae cupiditate. Denique si illi
or even for of-some money greed finally if those
iudices profiterentur propterea se talia ita iudicasse,
judges professed for-that-reason themselves such-things so to-have-judged
eo quod nihil rectius de his rebus scire poterant,
for-that that nothing more-rightly about these things to-know they-could
tunc ille, discrete et moderanter illorum imperitiam et
then he discreetly and moderately their inexperience and
insipientiam redarguens, aiebat, ita inquiens: 'Nimium admiror
folly rebuking spoke so saying exceedingly I-wonder-at
vestram hanc insolentiam, eo quod, Dei dono et meo,
your this insolence for-that that of-God by-the-gift and mine
sapientium ministerium et gradus usurpastis, sapientiae autem
of-the-wise the-ministry and rank you-have-usurped of-wisdom but
studium et operam neglexistis. Quapropter aut terrenarum
the-study and labor you-have-neglected wherefore either of-earthly
potestatum ministeria, quae habetis, illico dimittatis, aut
powers the-ministries which you-have at-once you-should-give-up or

sapientiae studiis multo devotius †docere ut studeatis,
of-wisdom to-the-studies much more-devoutly to-teach that you-be-eager
impero.' Quibus auditis verbis, perterriti ⟨ac⟩ veluti pro
I-command which heard words terrified and as-if for
maxima vindicta correcti, comites et praepositi ad aequitatis
the-greatest punishment corrected the-ealdormen and reeves to of-equity
discendae studium totis viribus se vertere nitebantur, ita
to-be-learned the-study with-all strength themselves to-turn strove so
ut mirum in modum illiterati ab infantia comites pene
that in-wonderful in manner unlettered from infancy the-ealdormen almost
omnes, praepositi ac ministri literatoriae arti studerent,
all reeves and thegns to-the-literary art applied-themselves
malentes insuetam disciplinam quam laboriose discere, quam
preferring the-unaccustomed discipline than laboriously to-learn than
potestatum ministeria dimittere. Sed si aliquis litteralibus
of-powers the-ministries to-give-up but if anyone in-literary
studiis aut pro senio vel etiam pro nimia inusitati
studies either for old-age or even for the-excessive of-unaccustomed
ingenii tarditate proficere non valeret, suum, si haberet, filium,
wit slowness to-advance not was-able his if he-had son
aut etiam aliquem propinquum suum, vel etiam, si aliter non
or even some kinsman his or even if otherwise not
habeat, suum proprium hominem, liberum vel servum, quem
he-had his own man free or slave whom
ad lectionem longe ante promoverat, libros ante se die
to reading long before he-had-promoted books before him by-day
nocteque, quandocunque unquam ullam haberet licentiam,
and-by-night whenever ever any he-had leisure
Saxonicos imperabat recitare. Et suspirantes nimium intima
Saxon he-commanded to-recite and sighing exceedingly in-inmost
mente dolebant, eo quod in iuventute sua talibus studiis
mind they-grieved for-that that in youth their in-such studies

non studuerant, felices arbitrantes huius temporis iuvenes,
not they-had-studied happy judging of-this time the-youths
qui liberalibus artibus feliciter erudiri poterant, se vero
who in-the-liberal arts happily to-be-taught could themselves but
infelices existimantes, qui nec hoc in iuventute didicerant,
unhappy thinking who neither this in youth had-learned
nec etiam in senectute, quamvis inhianter desiderarent,
nor even in old-age though eagerly they-desired
poterant discere. Sed hanc senum iuvenumque in discendis
could to-learn but this of-the-old and-of-the-young in learning
literis solertiam ad praefati regis notitiam explicavimus.
letters diligence to of-the-aforesaid king the-knowledge we-have-set-forth

---